









As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol **NOTICE**. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols   or    on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 or   is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

➤ **Safety Labels** P. 104


A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

  **WARNING**

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Owner's Manual Application Terms and Conditions*

General

This application allows your Display Audio to automatically search for owner's manual updates that are specific to your vehicle and Display Audio every time the power mode of the vehicle is set to ON. This application periodically transmits a limited amount of vehicle and device information to our servers: Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Display Audio hardware serial number, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, transaction log (alerts for or views of updates, update downloads and installation, usage of the owner's manual application), etc. When the application finds an update from the server, it prompts you to download and install.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update the owner's manual. We will also maintain a log of the updates that are installed on our servers.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy policy are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy policy. Our privacy policy sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the utility. (See the Honda website for further details.)

Honda collects, uses, and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

Where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.

- to deliver owner's manual updates to you;
- to allow us to improve and optimize the owner's manual application and services;
- to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights. This includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements.

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the owner's manual, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of the owner's manual.

Honda may share this data with Honda's world wide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

* Not available on all models

System Updates Terms & Conditions

General

Your vehicle has an application that allows your Display Audio to automatically search for Honda software updates that are specific to your Display Audio and its connected devices (initially every one (1) week via Wi-Fi or every four (4) weeks via Telematics Control Unit (TCU)*, queries may occur more or less frequently due to internet outages, retries, direct user action, WAP push from the server or a change in query policy on the Honda servers). This application periodically transmits to our servers a limited amount of vehicle and device information (Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), the Model Type (MT) Identification Number, Hardware and Software Part Number, Serial Number, Software Version, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, Transaction Log (alert or update viewing, update download and installation, software status), etc.). When the application finds an update from the server, the application initially asks permission to download and install the update. Where available, in your settings menu you may elect to automatically download and install these updates or you may elect to manually update the system.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates or alerts, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update your devices or transmit the update or alert directly to your Display Audio. We will also maintain on our servers a log of the updates or alerts that are installed.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy notice are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy notice. Our privacy notice sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the application. See the Honda website for further details.

Honda collects, uses and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

- to deliver the system updates and related services to you;
- to allow us to improve and optimize the system updates products and services;
- to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.
- where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.
- as otherwise described in Honda's Privacy Notice and Vehicle Data Privacy Notice.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements.

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the system updates, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of the system updates.

Honda may share this data with Honda's worldwide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

* Not available on all models

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) that depict features, equipment, and audio/information screen, meter screens are only examples and may not be representative of your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the right-hand drive models.

Safe Driving P. 43

For Safe Driving P. 44 Seat Belts P. 48 Airbags P. 60
Safety Labels P. 104

Instrument Panel P. 105

Indicators P. 106 Gauges and Driver Information Interface P. 126

Controls P. 167

Clock P. 168 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 169
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 196
Interior Convenience Items P. 226

Features P. 245

Audio System P. 246 Display Audio without Google built-in P. 249

Driving P. 455

Before Driving P. 456 Towing a Trailer P. 460 When Driving P. 461
Multi-View Rear Camera P. 587 Refueling P. 589

Maintenance P. 593

Before Performing Maintenance P. 594
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 626
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 642 Cleaning P. 644

Handling the Unexpected P. 653

Tools P. 654 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 656 Handling of the Jack P. 677
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 687 Overheating P. 689
If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door P. 712

Information P. 715

Specifications P. 716 Identification Numbers P. 718

Contents

Quick Reference Guide P. 6

Safe Driving P. 43

Instrument Panel P. 105

Controls P. 167

Features P. 245

Driving P. 455

Maintenance P. 593

Handling the Unexpected P. 653

Information P. 715

Index P. 611

Pop-up Hood System* P. 72

Child Safety P. 75

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 103

Opening and Closing the Boot P. 186
Mirrors P. 213
Climate Control System P. 238

Security System P. 188
Seats P. 216

Windows P. 190

Sunroof* P. 194

Audio Error Messages P. 438

General Information on the Audio System P. 440

Honda SENSING* P. 506 Braking P. 570
Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions P. 592

Parking Your Vehicle P. 580

Maintenance Schedule P. 597
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 628
Accessories and Modifications P. 650

Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 604
12-Volt Battery P. 634

Replacing Light Bulbs P. 618
Remote Transmitter Care P. 639

Power System Won't Start P. 678
Indicator Coming On/Blinking P. 691
If You Cannot Open the Boot P. 713

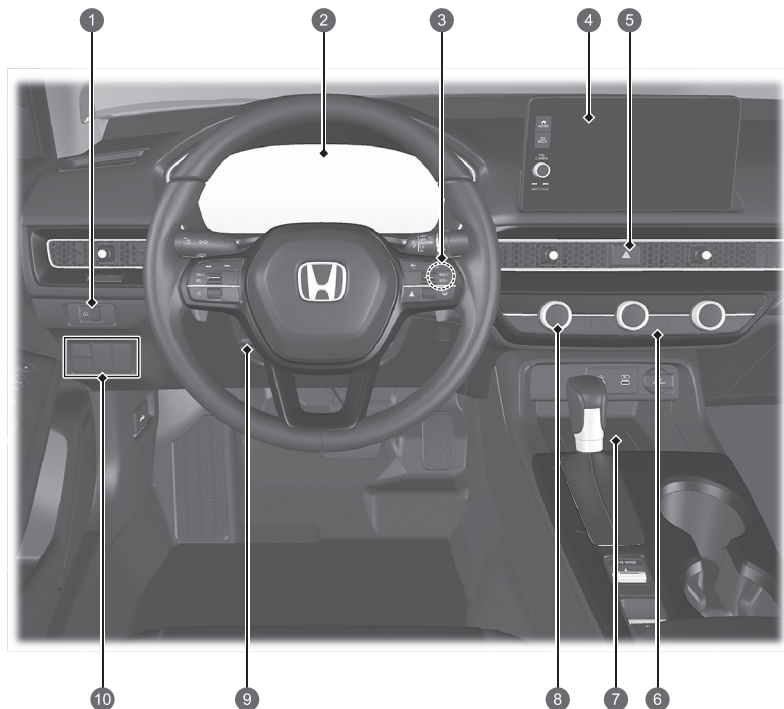
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 684
Fuses P. 699 Emergency Towing P. 711

Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 719

Open Source Licence P. 732

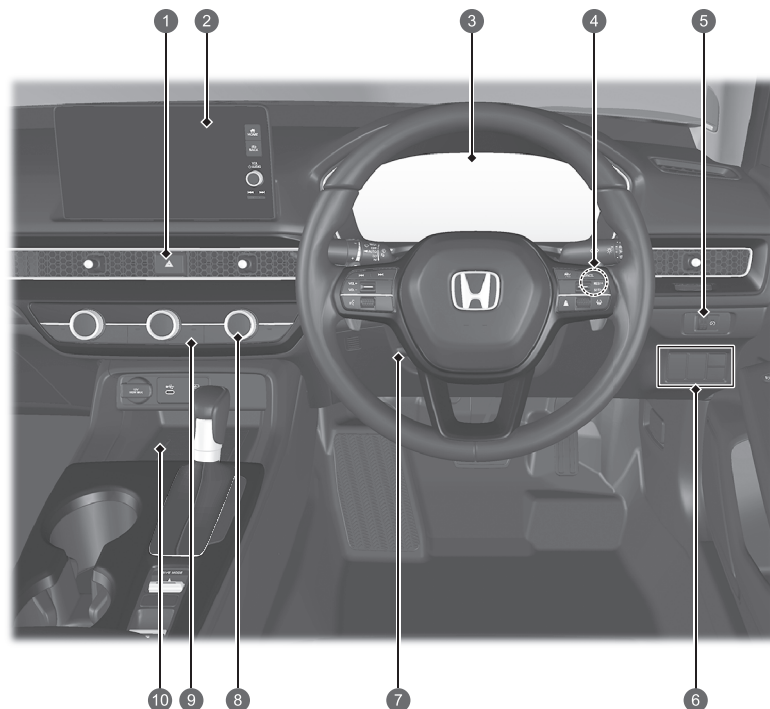
Visual Index

Left-hand Drive Type



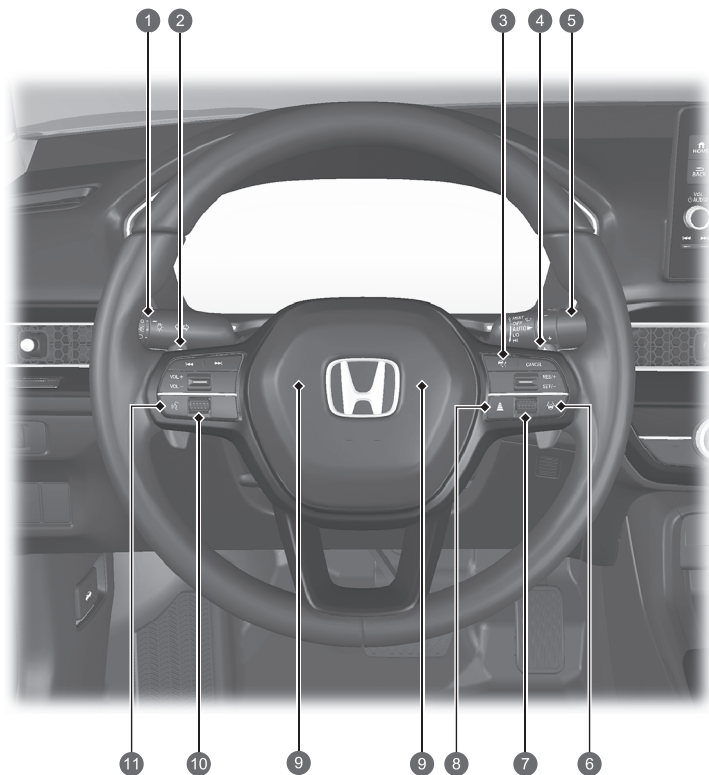
- ① **Brightness Control** ➡ P. 210, 211
- ② **System Indicators** ➡ P. 106
Gauges ➡ P. 126
Driver Information Interface
➡ P. 130, 144, 147
- ③ **POWER Button** ➡ P. 196
- ④ **Audio System** ➡ P. 246
Navigation System*
➡ See the Navigation System Manual
- ⑤ **Hazard Warning Button** 
- ⑥ **Rear Demister Button** ➡ P. 209
- ⑦ **Wireless Charger*** ➡ P. 234
- ⑧ **Climate Control System** ➡ P. 238
- ⑨ **Steering Wheel Adjustments** ➡ P. 212
- ⑩ **(Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button** ➡ P. 494
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button ➡ P. 476

Right-hand Drive Type



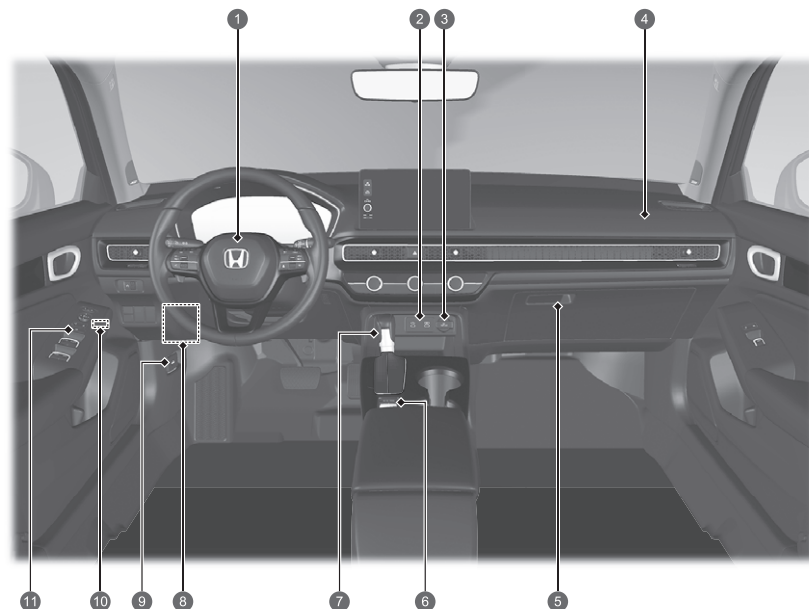
- ① **Hazard Warning Button**
- ② **Audio System** ➡ P. 246
Navigation System*
➡ See the Navigation System Manual
- ③ **System Indicators** ➡ P. 106
Gauges ➡ P. 126
Driver Information Interface
➡ P. 130, 144, 147
- ④ **POWER Button** ➡ P. 196
- ⑤ **Brightness Control** ➡ P. 210, 211
- ⑥ **(Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button** ➡ P. 494
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button* ➡ P. 476
- ⑦ **Steering Wheel Adjustments** ➡ P. 212
- ⑧ **Climate Control System** ➡ P. 238
- ⑨ **Rear Demister Button** ➡ P. 209
- ⑩ **Wireless Charger*** ➡ P. 234

Visual Index



- ① Wipers/Washers* ➔ P. 207
 Headlights/ Turn Signals* ➔ P. 200, 199
 Rear Fog Light* ➔ P. 203
 LaneWatch* ➔ P. 501
- ② Deceleration Paddle Selector ➔ P. 473
- ③ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons ➔ P. 507, 531
- ④ Deceleration Paddle Selector ➔ P. 473
- ⑤ Headlights/ Turn Signals* ➔ P. 200, 199
 Wipers/Washers* ➔ P. 207
 LaneWatch* ➔ P. 501
- ⑥ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button ➔ P. 507, 555
- ⑦ Right Selector Wheel* ➔ P. 147
- ⑧ Interval Button ➔ P. 507, 546
- ⑨ Horn (Press an area around .)
- ⑩ Left Selector Wheel ➔ P. 130, 252, 346
- ⑪ (Talk) Button ➔ P. 293, 299, 321, 383, 388
 (Home) Button* ➔ P. 130, 252, 346
 Audio Remote Controls ➔ P. 252, 346

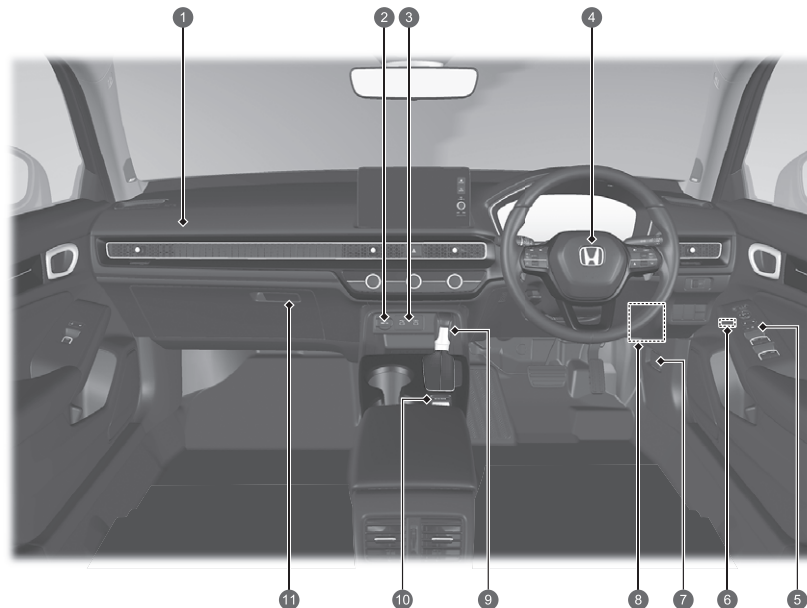
Left-hand Drive Type



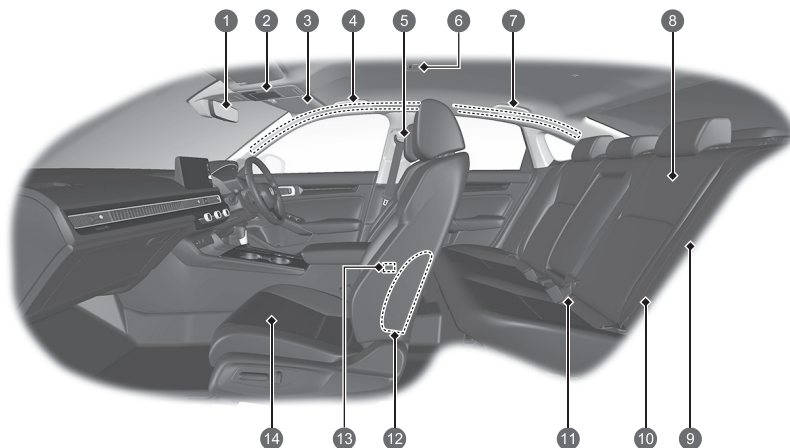
- ① Driver's Front Airbag ➡ P. 62
- ② USB Ports ➡ P. 247
- ③ Accessory Power Socket ➡ P. 233
- ④ Passenger's Front Airbag ➡ P. 62
- ⑤ Glove Box ➡ P. 228
- ⑥ Drive Mode Switch ➡ P. 477
- Electric Parking Brake Switch ➡ P. 570
- Automatic Brake Hold Button ➡ P. 574
- ⑦ Shift Lever ➡ P. 471
- ⑧ Interior Fuse Box ➡ P. 704
- ⑨ Bonnet Release Handle ➡ P. 605
- ⑩ Boot Opener ➡ P. 186
- ⑪ Door Mirror Controls ➡ P. 214
- Master Door Lock Switch ➡ P. 183
- Power Window Switches ➡ P. 190

Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type

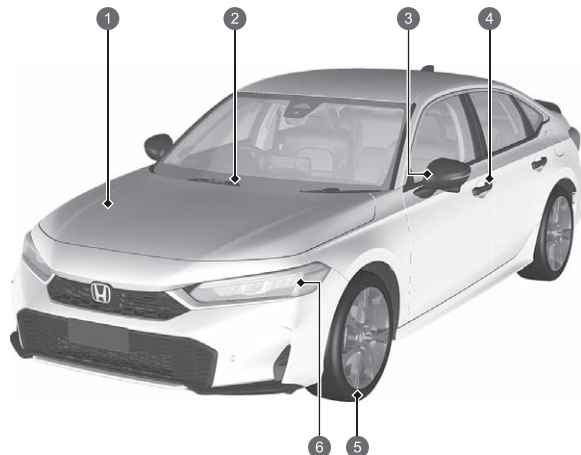


- 1 Passenger's Front Airbag ➞ P. 62
- 2 Accessory Power Socket ➞ P. 233
- 3 USB Ports ➞ P. 247
- 4 Driver's Front Airbag ➞ P. 62
- 5 Door Mirror Controls ➞ P. 214
Master Door Lock Switch ➞ P. 183
Power Window Switches ➞ P. 190
- 6 Boot Opener ➞ P. 186
- 7 Bonnet Release Handle ➞ P. 605
- 8 Interior Fuse Box ➞ P. 704
- 9 Shift Lever ➞ P. 471
- 10 Drive Mode Switch ➞ P. 477
Electric Parking Brake Switch ➞ P. 570
Automatic Brake Hold Button ➞ P. 574
- 11 Glove Box ➞ P. 228

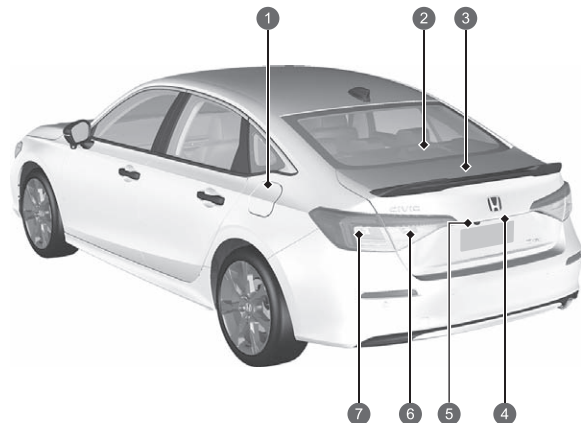


- ① Rearview Mirror ➡ P.213
- ② Map Lights ➡ P.227
- ③ Sun Visors
Vanity Mirrors
- ④ Side Curtain Airbags ➡ P.68
- ⑤ Seat Belts ➡ P.48
- ⑥ Ceiling Light ➡ P.226
- ⑦ Grab Handle
Coat Hook ➡ P.231
- ⑧ Rear Seat ➡ P.220
- ⑨ Rear Side Airbags* ➡ P.65
- ⑩ Seat Belt (Installing a Child Restraint
System) ➡ P.96
Seat Belt to Secure a Child Restraint System
➡ P.98
- ⑪ Lower Anchorage Points to Secure a Child
Restraint Systems ➡ P.91
- ⑫ Front Side Airbags ➡ P.65
- ⑬ USB Ports* ➡ P.247
- ⑭ Front Seat ➡ P.216

Visual Index



- ① Maintenance Under the Bonnet ➡ P. 604
- ② Windscreen Wipers ➡ P. 207, 626
- ③ Power Door Mirrors ➡ P. 214
- Side Turn Signal Lights ➡ P. 199, 618
- ④ Door Lock/Unlock Control ➡ P. 173
- ⑤ Tyres ➡ P. 628, 656
- ⑥ Headlights ➡ P. 200, 618
- Position/Daytime Running Lights ➡ P. 200, 203, 618
- Front Turn Signal Lights ➡ P. 199, 618



- ① How to Refuel ➡ P. 590
- ② High-Mount Brake Light ➡ P. 623
- ③ Opening/Closing the Boot ➡ P. 186
- ④ Rear Licence Plate Light ➡ P. 200, 623
- ⑤ Multi-View Rear Camera ➡ P. 587
- ⑥ Taillights ➡ P. 200, 622
- Back-Up Lights ➡ P. 622
- Rear Fog Light* ➡ P. 203, 622
- ⑦ Taillights ➡ P. 200, 619
- Brake Lights ➡ P. 619
- Rear Turn Signal Lights ➡ P. 199, 619

e:HEV

Your e:HEV vehicle uses both an electric motor and a petrol engine as propulsion sources, with the electric motor receiving electricity from an internal High Voltage battery and/or internal generator. The High Voltage battery is charged from the generator driven by the engine or regenerative braking.

When driving, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor, exclusively by the petrol engine, or by a combination of the two. The system selects which propulsion source is most appropriate and automatically switches to it.

● Energy efficiency

As with a petrol-powered vehicle, hybrid vehicle fuel efficiency and driving range is most impacted by your driving style. Aggressive acceleration and high-speed driving can easily trigger the system to switch the propulsion source to the petrol-powered engine. In addition, heavy climate control system use negatively affects vehicle range and efficiency. Either of these use patterns will more quickly reduce the High Voltage battery's state of charge.

● Battery types

There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle; a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems; and a High Voltage battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

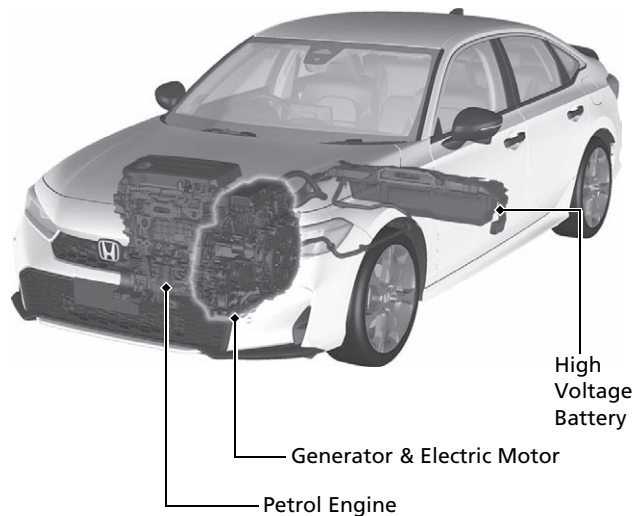
e:HEV MAIN COMPONENTS

Petrol Engine– Runs the generator and under certain conditions, drives the wheels directly.

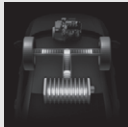
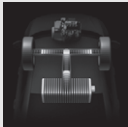

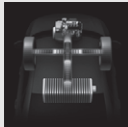

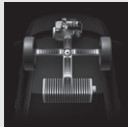

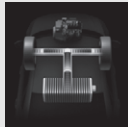
Generator– Starts the engine and generates electric power when driven by the petrol engine to supply electricity to power the electric motor and/or to charge the High Voltage battery.

Electric Motor– Provides propulsion to drive the wheels in conjunction with the petrol engine in certain conditions and provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.

High Voltage Battery– Provides electrical storage and serves as a power source for the electric motor. Learning about the High Voltage battery's characteristics will help you get the best handling and maximize the range of your electric vehicle. ➡ P.500





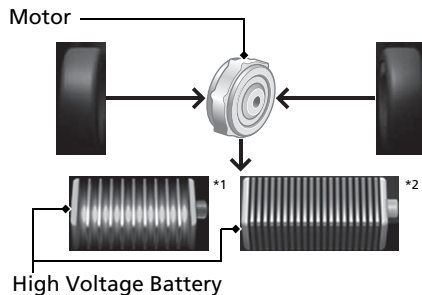
Operating mode	Electric Vehicle (EV)	Hybrid (HV)	Engine (Direct Drive)	Regeneration
Driving state	Stopped or driven at low speeds: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Only the electric motor provides propulsion to the wheels. 	Driven in high-load conditions (e.g., when accelerating, going uphill): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Electric Motor provides propulsion to the wheels. The petrol engine drives the generator, supplying electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion or to the High Voltage battery for charging. 	Driven in high-speed, low-load conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The petrol engine provides propulsion to the wheels. The High Voltage battery supplies electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion. The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking. 	The accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is decelerating. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.
Power Flow Monitor	 	 	 	 
Electric motor	Stopped/Running	Running	Generating/Running	Regenerating
Generator	Stopped	Generating	No Output	Stopped/No Output
Engine	Stopped	Running	Running	Stopped/No Output
High Voltage battery	Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging

*1: Models with A-type meter

*2: Models with B-type meter

● Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking

When regenerative braking is in operation



When decelerating without the accelerator being depressed or the brake pedal being applied, or while driving downhill, the electric motor acts as a generator that recovers a portion of the electrical energy that was used to accelerate the vehicle. This regenerative braking slows the vehicle in a manner similar to engine braking in a petrol-powered vehicle. You can control the rate of deceleration by using the deceleration paddle selector.

● Auto Engine Stop/Start

Your vehicle's petrol engine automatically stops running during vehicle operation or restarts while the vehicle is stationary when it is appropriate. In the following cases, however, auto engine stop may not activate.

- The vehicle momentarily needs additional power for aggressive acceleration, or driving uphill or at high speed.
- The climate control system is in heavy use.
- The High Voltage battery temperature is high or low.
- The High Voltage battery is too low on charge.

● Sounds Unique to the e:HEV

When you first start driving this vehicle, you will likely hear some unfamiliar sounds, particularly when you turn on the power system, or while you are driving or accelerating from a stop. Some of these sounds are unique to this vehicle's powertrain, fuel, climate control systems, and High Voltage battery cooling system; others are similar to sounds generated by conventional automobiles that typically are masked by louder noises absent from a vehicle of this design. These sounds are not a cause for concern, and you will soon recognise them as normal and thus be able to detect any new or unusual noise should one develop.

Brazilian models

After shutting off the engine, you may hear certain noises coming from the vehicle. Here's the lowdown:

- **Noise from Under Vehicle:** This noise is caused by the vacuum pump inside the fuel evaporation leakage check module (ELCM). Depending on conditions, the pump will come on for about **15 minutes** about **5 to 10 hours** after engine shutoff. This noise is just normal vehicle operation and doesn't indicate a vehicle problem.

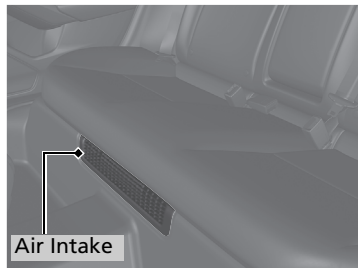
*1: Models with A-type meter

*2: Models with B-type meter

Safety Precautions



Do not cover the air intake.



If the air intake is obstructed during vehicle operation, the High Voltage battery can become too hot. To protect the battery, the system may start to limit the battery's output and cause the power system and 12-volt battery charging system indicators to come on.

Do not touch the High Voltage system

Attempting to take a High Voltage system component apart or disconnect one of its wires can cause severe electrical shock. Make sure that any maintenance or repairs to the High Voltage system are performed by a Honda dealer.

If a crash occurs

- Be careful of electric shock hazard.

► If a severe crash damages your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.

- Avoid contact with High Voltage battery fluid.

► The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that could leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally come into contact with the electrolyte, rinse the exposed skin or flush your eyes with copious amounts of water for at least five minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.

- Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.

► Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with even a small quantity of water, from a garden hose for instance, can be dangerous.

- Any time the vehicle is damaged in a crash, have it repaired by a dealer.

Emergency Shutdown System for the High Voltage System

If the vehicle is involved in a crash, the emergency shutdown system will activate depending on the severity of the impact. When the system activates, the High Voltage system automatically shuts down, and the vehicle can no longer move under its own power. To return the High Voltage system back to normal operation, consult a dealer.

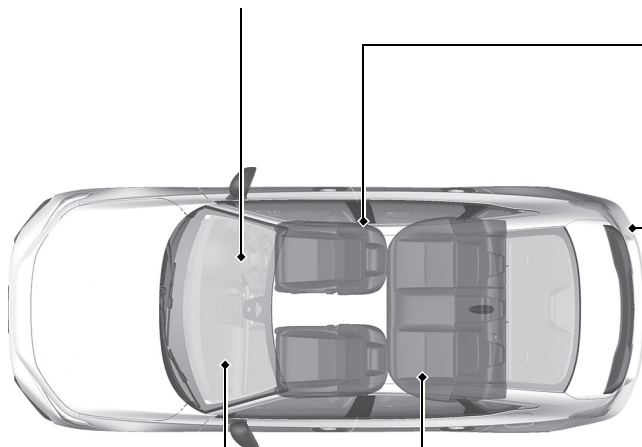
When the vehicle is disposed

- The High Voltage battery is a Lithium ion battery. Honda collects and recycles used High Voltage batteries – consult with your dealer for proper battery disposal in the event your vehicle is not repairable.

Safe Driving ➡ P.43

Before Driving Checklist ➡ P.47

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.



Seat Belts ➡ P.48

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

Exhaust Gas Hazard ➡ P.103

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Child Safety ➡ P.75

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

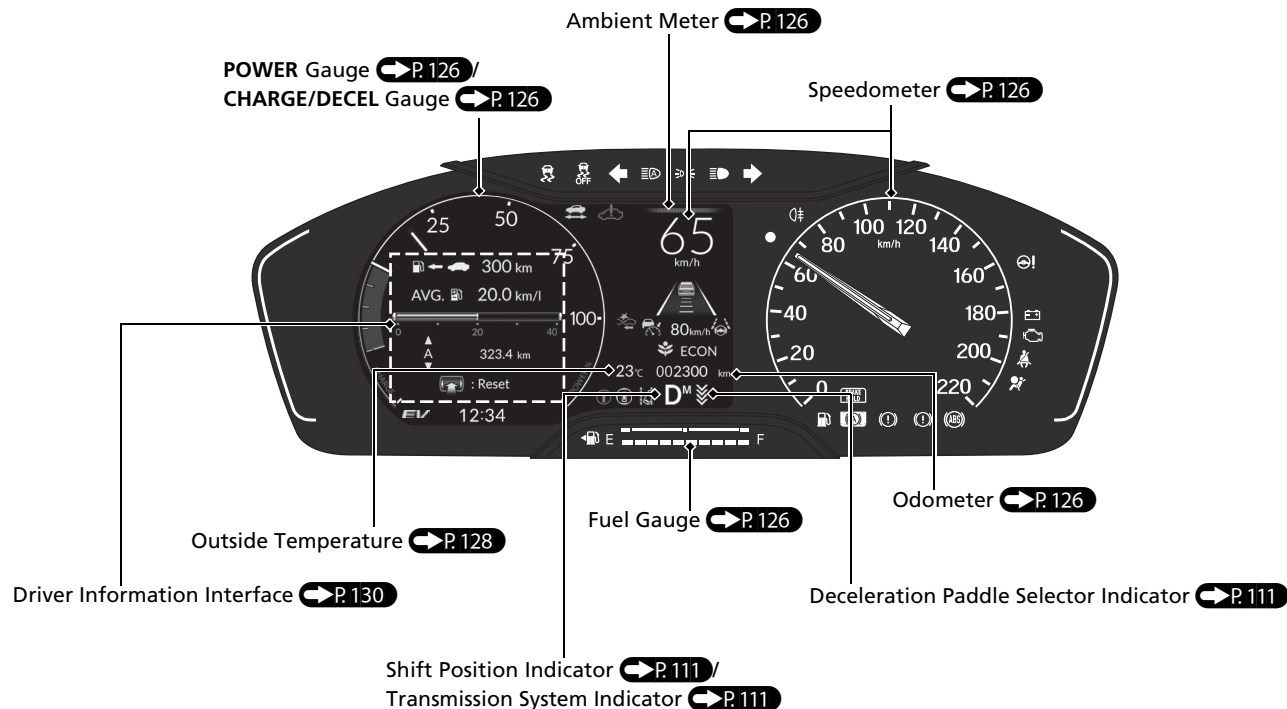
Airbags ➡ P.60

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Instrument Panel ➡ P. 105

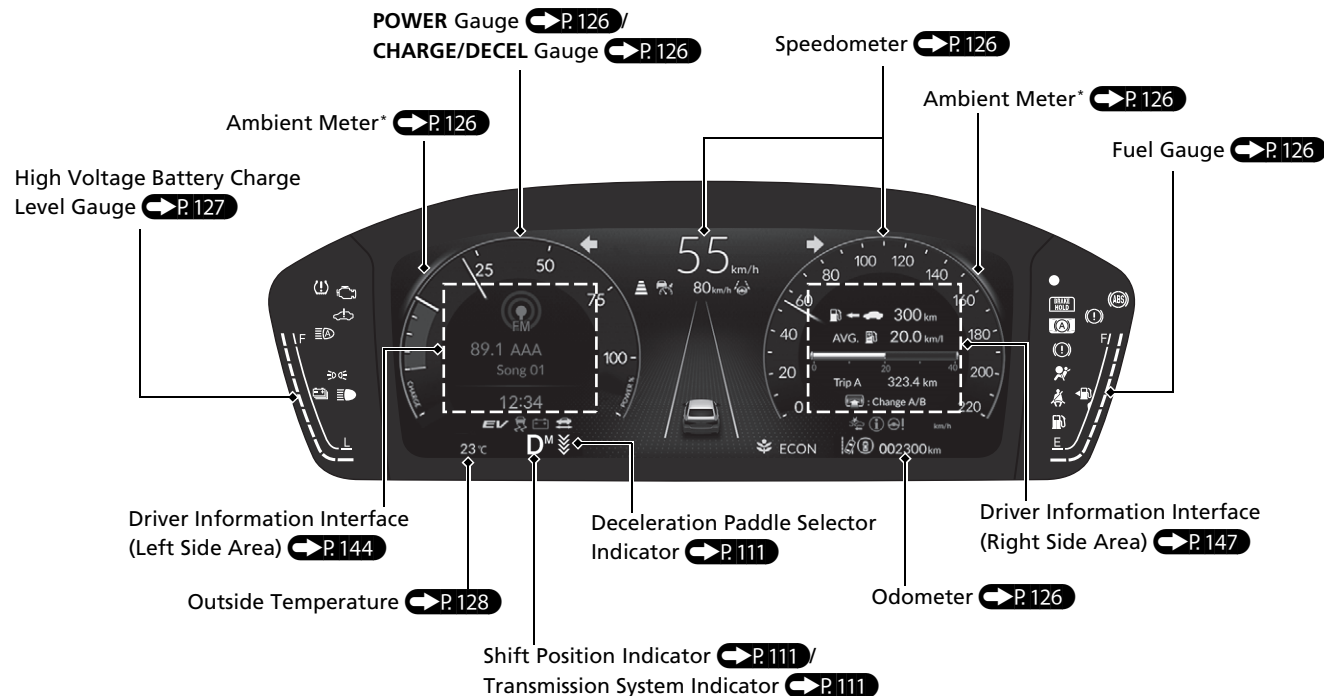
Indicators ➡ P. 106 / Gauges ➡ P. 126 / Driver Information Interface ➡ P. 130, 144, 147

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter

- You can change the gauge design.
 - Change gauge design ➡ P.164



Controls ➡ P. 167

Clock ➡ P. 168

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.

➡ P. 262

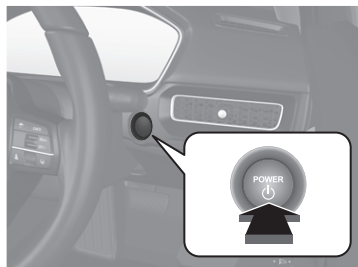
Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.

➡ P. 357

POWER Button ➡ P. 196

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



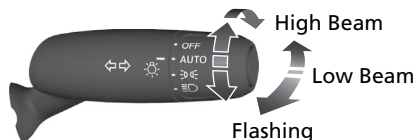
Turn Signals ➡ P. 199

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights ➡ P. 200

Light Control Switches



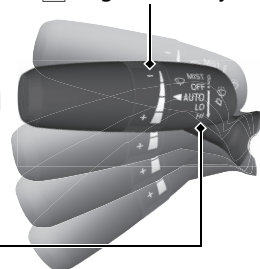
Wipers and Washers

➡ P. 207

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

Adjustment Ring
[-]: Low sensitivity
[+]: High sensitivity

Pull toward you to spray washer fluid.



MIST
OFF

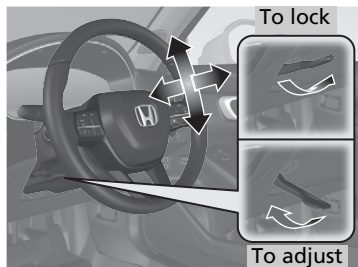
AUTO: Wiper speed varies automatically
LO: Low speed wipe
HI: High speed wipe

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel P. 212

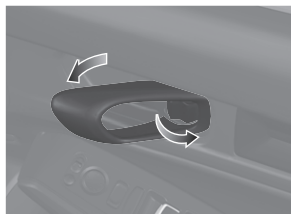
- To adjust, push the adjustment lever down, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

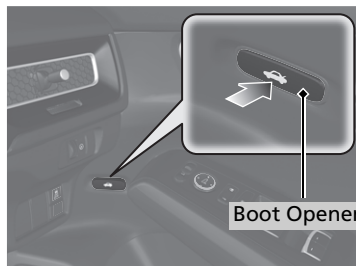
 P. 183

- Pull either driver's door or passenger's door* inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



Boot P. 186

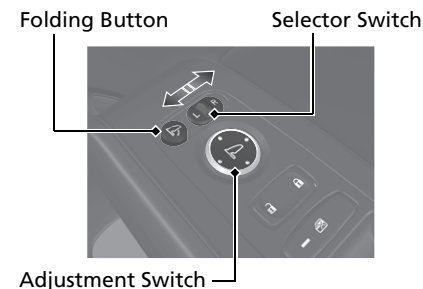
- Press and hold the boot opener on the driver's door to unlock and open the boot.
- Press the boot release button on the keyless remote to unlock and open the boot.
- Push up the boot release button on the boot lid to unlock and open the boot.



Power Door Mirrors

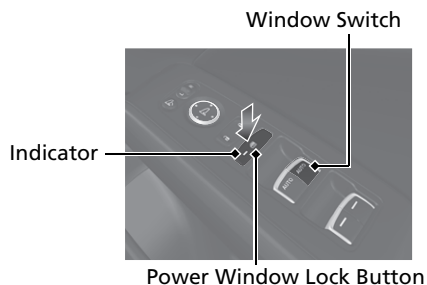
 P. 214

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.





Power Windows

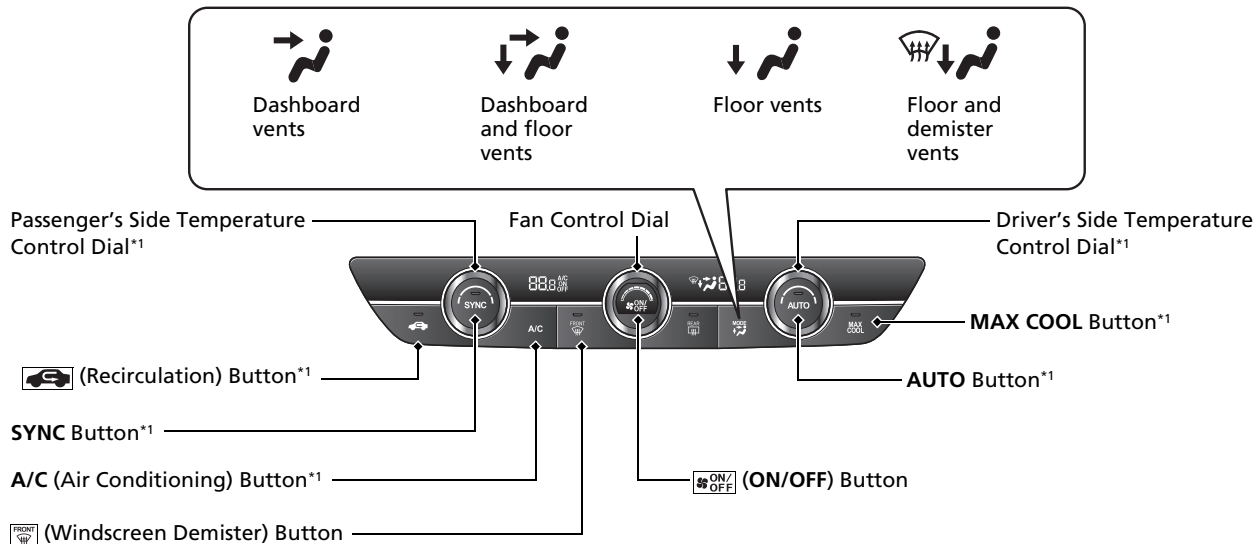
- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the ON position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



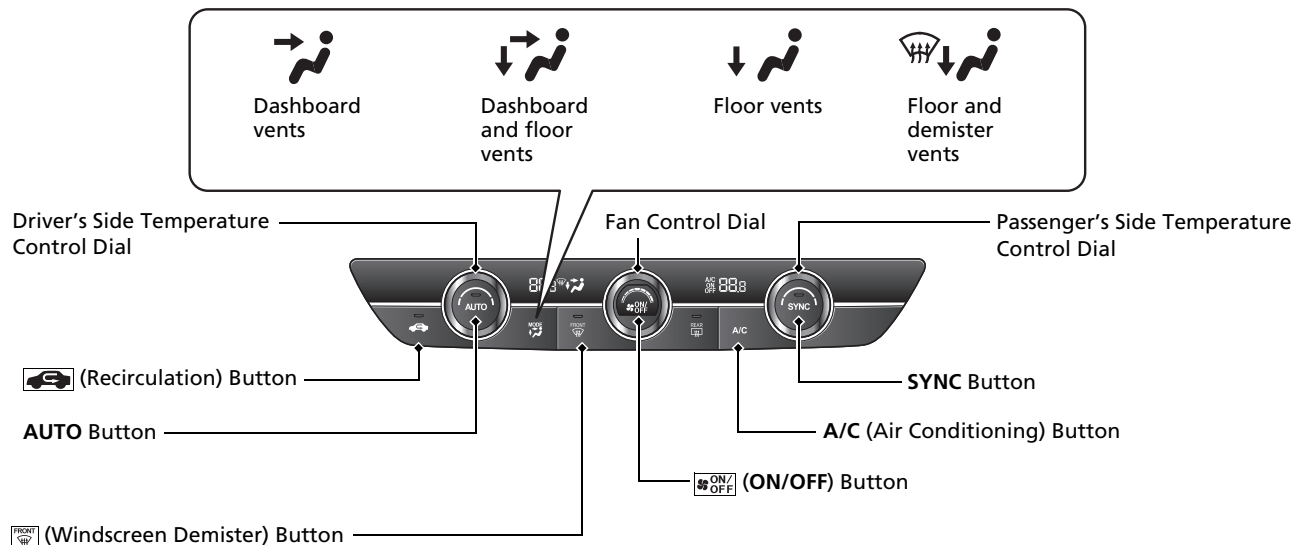
Climate Control System

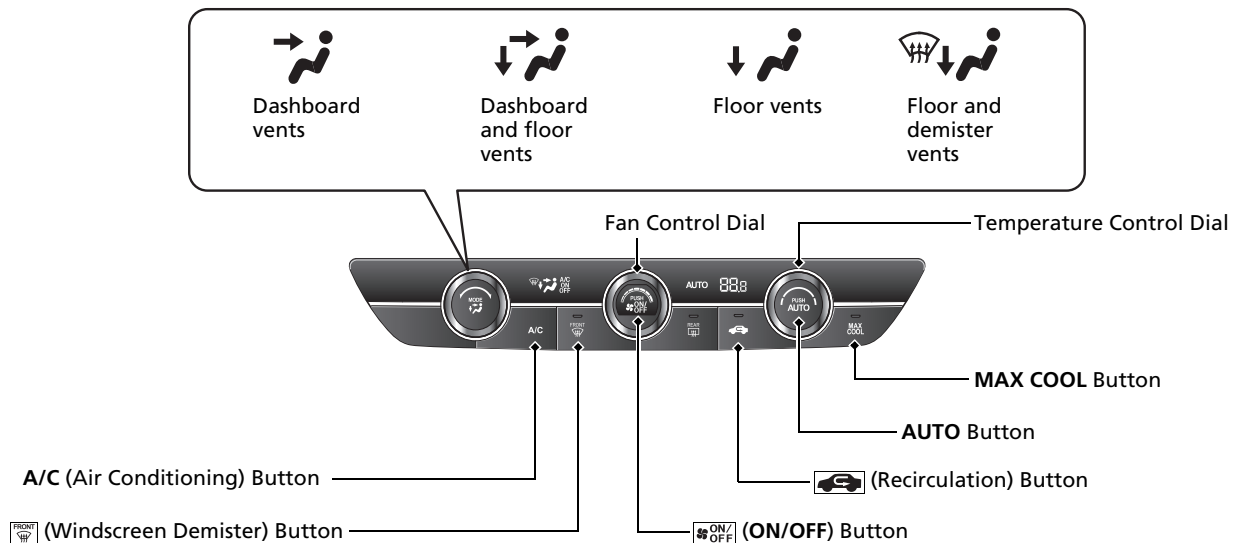
- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the  button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the  button to defrost the windscreen.

Models with SYNC button and MAX COOL button



*1: Right-hand drive types shown. For the left-hand drive types, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive type.



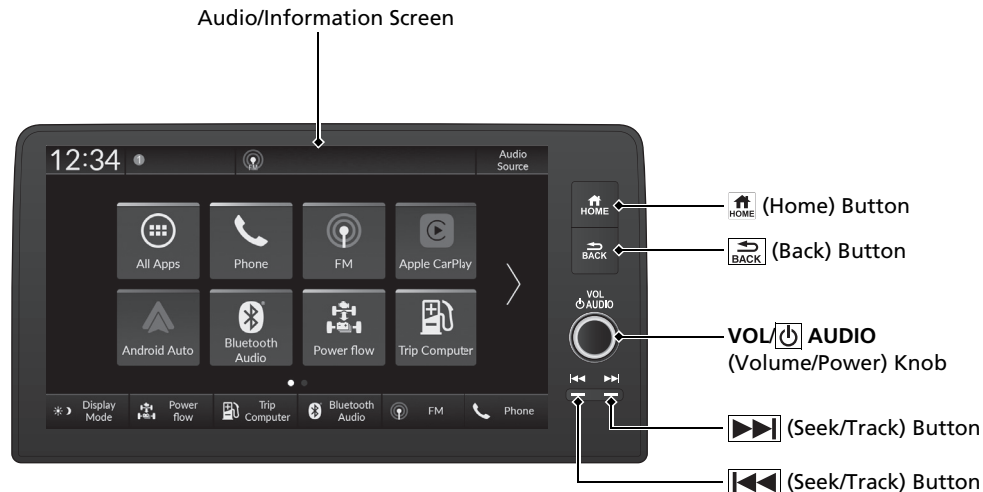


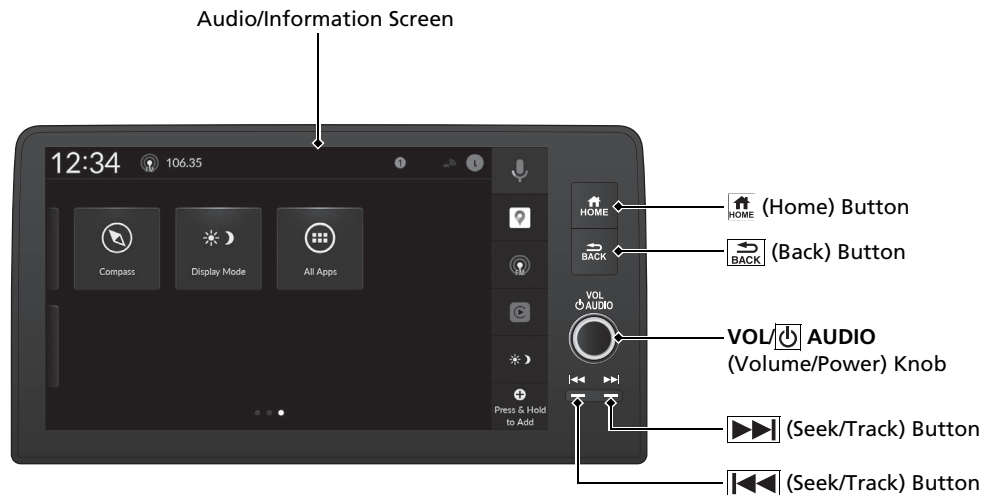
Features ➡ P.245

Audio System ➡ P.246

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

For navigation system operation ➡ See the Navigation System Manual

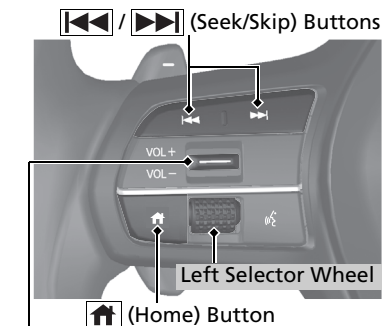




Audio Remote Controls

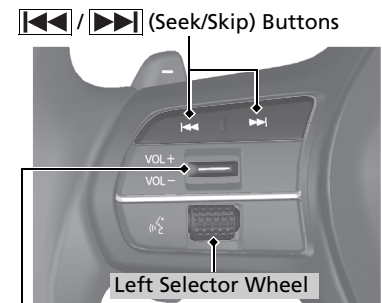
➡ P. 252

Models with A-type meter



VOL + / VOL - (Volume) Switch

Models with B-type meter



VOL + / VOL - (Volume) Switch

- VOL + / VOL - (Volume) Switch
Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
Radio:
Press ◀◀ / ▶▶ to change the preset radio station. Press and hold ◀◀ / ▶▶ to change the strong station.
A wired connection, USB flash drive, Bluetooth® Audio, or Smartphone Connection:
Press ◀◀ / ▶▶ to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
USB flash drive:
Press and hold ◀◀ / ▶▶ to change a folder.

Models with A-type meter

- Left Selector Wheel
When selecting the audio mode
Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select **Audio** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.
Roll up or down: To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:
FM/AM/USB/Bluetooth/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto
▶ Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

Models with B-type meter

- Left Selector Wheel
Roll up or down:
To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:
Back/Phone/FM/AM/USB/Bluetooth/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto/Customize display
▶ Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

About System Updates

When a software update is available for your vehicle, a notification will be displayed on the audio/information screen.

Instructions for performing updates via the audio/information screen are included in this manual.

For details on other methods of performing an update, please refer to the Honda Connect app manual*, or ask a dealer.

System updates that change specifications may result in some discrepancies with the information in this owner's manual.

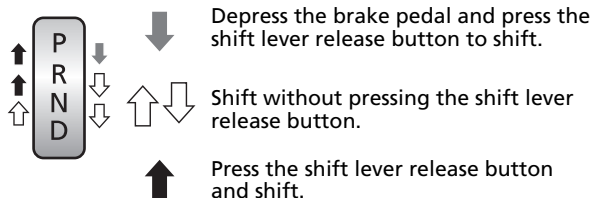
■ Instructions

➤ System Updates ➡ P.267

Driving ➡ P. 455

Transmission ➡ P. 469, 470

- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when turning the power system on.
- **Shift selection**



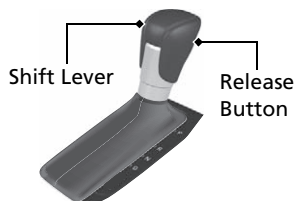
P Park
Used when parking or turning the power on or off.

R Reverse
Used when reversing.

N Neutral
Transmission is not locked.

D Drive
Used for normal driving.

- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used when **SPORT** mode is ON.

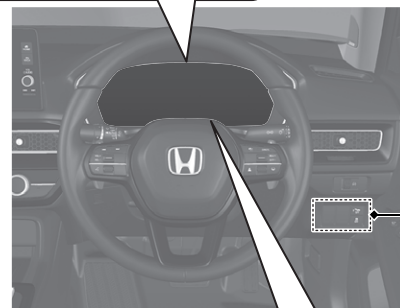


READY Indicator

On: You can start to drive.

READY

(VSA OFF) Button



Shift Position Indicator


The shift position indicator and the shift button indicator indicate the current shift selection.

D

Shift Position Indicator

Deceleration Paddle Selector P. 473

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without removing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through four stages of deceleration.

Pull the  selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

- **When in a mode other than *SPORT* mode**


If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the gauge.

- **When *SPORT* mode is ON**

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the gauge.

 Paddle
Shifter



 Paddle
Shifter



When in a mode other than **SPORT** mode, the deceleration stage appears.




When **SPORT** mode is ON, the deceleration stage and **M** appear.



CMBS On and Off * P. 514

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) can reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you turn the power system on.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, use the safety support of the driver information interface.

VSA On and Off P. 494

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you turn the power system on.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the  (VSA OFF) button until you hear a beep.

Cruise Control * P. 487

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the **CRUISE** button, then press the **RES/+SET/-** switch down once you have achieved the desired speed (above 40 km/h).

Deflation Warning System * P. 496

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The Deflation Warning System is turned on automatically every time you turn the power system on.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

Refueling P.589

Fuel recommendation:

Brazilian models

Unleaded petrol

Thai and Paraguayan models



Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher

Models for other countries

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Fuel tank capacity:

40L

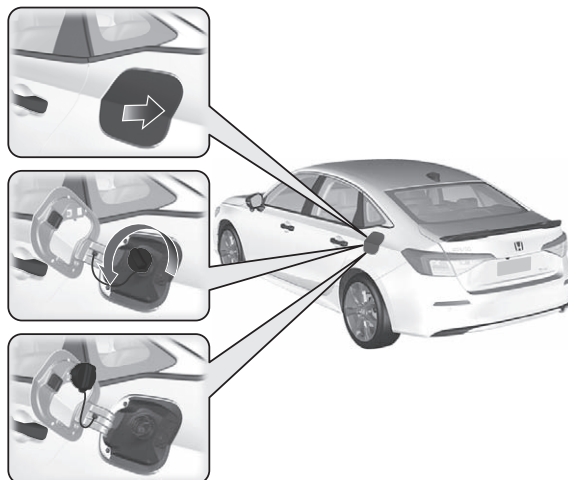
- 1 Unlock the driver's door.
 **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside**
 **P.182**

- 2 Press and release the area indicated by the arrow to release the fuel fill door. You will hear a click and the lid will open slightly.

- 3 Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.

- 4 Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.

- 5 After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



Honda SENSING*

➡ P. 506

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda SENSING has the following functions:

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

➡ P. 509

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Road Departure Mitigation System

➡ P. 523

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

➡ P. 530

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

➡ P. 551

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible* and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

➡ P. 564

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.

Auto High-Beam P. 204

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

Parking Sensor System *

 P. 582

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

Driver Attention Monitor

 P. 138, 158

The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.

Maintenance ➡ P.593

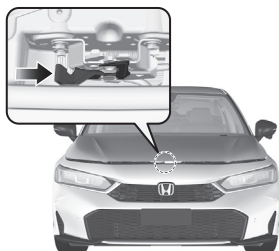
Under the Bonnet ➡ P.604

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid and high voltage system coolant.
- Check the 12-volt battery condition monthly.

- 1 Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



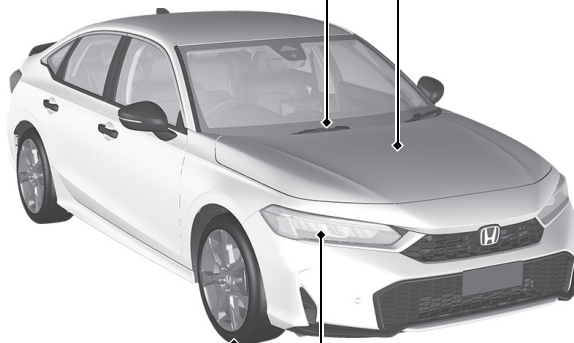
- 2 Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



- 3 When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades ➡ P.626

- When lifting the front wiper arms, move them into the maintenance position before lifting them.
- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen or become noisy.



Tyres ➡ P.628

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Lights ➡ P.618

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Handling the Unexpected ➡ P. 653

Flat Tyre ➡ P. 656, 665

Models with spare tyre

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre in the boot.

Models with tyre repair kit

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit in the boot.



Power System Won't Start ➡ P. 678

- If the 12-volt battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



Overheating ➡ P. 689

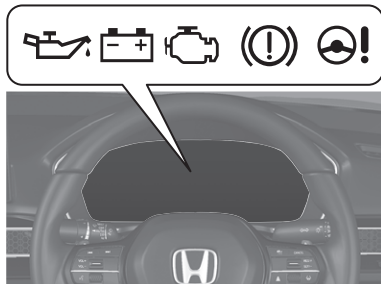
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the Power System cool down.



Indicators Come On ➡ P. 691

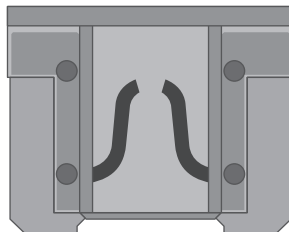
➡ P. 691

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



Blown Fuse ➡ P. 699

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing

➡ P. 711

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q **Except Latin American models**
The power mode does not change from **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)** to **ACCESSORY**.
Why?

- A**
- The steering wheel may be locked.
 - Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **POWER** button.



Q The power mode does not change from **ACCESSORY** to **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)**.
Why?

- A** The shift lever should be moved to **P**.



Q Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

- A** This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

➤ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ➡ P. 577

Q The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



Q Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

A The beeper sounds when:

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

Q Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?

A The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.

❑ Locking the doors (Walk away auto lock) ➡ P. 176

Q Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

A The beeper sounds when the driver, the front passenger, and/or the rear passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

Q Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?

A Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Q Models with deflation warning system
I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?

A The deflation warning system needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.
🔧 Deflation Warning System* ➡ P. 496

Q Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?

A

- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in **P** or **N**. If so, select any other position.

Q Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions.....	44
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	46
Safety Checklist	47

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts	48
Fastening a Seat Belt	54
Seat Belt Inspection.....	58
Anchorage Points.....	59

Airbags

Airbag System Components	60
Types of Airbags	62

Front Airbags (SRS)	62
Side Airbags.....	65
Side Curtain Airbags	68
Airbag System Indicators.....	70
Airbag Care	71

Pop-up Hood System*

About the Pop-up Hood System.....	72
Pop-up Hood System Care	74

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers	75
Safety of Infants and Small Children...	78
Safety of Larger Children	100

Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	103
--------------------------	-----

Safety Labels

Label Locations	104
-----------------------	-----

* Not available on all models

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

» Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

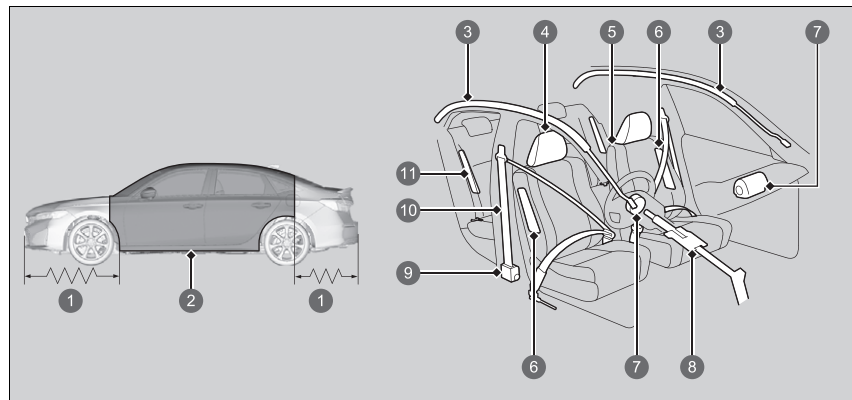
■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



- ① Crush Zones
- ② Safety Cage
- ③ Side Curtain Airbags
- ④ Head Restraints
- ⑤ Seats and Seat-Backs
- ⑥ Front Side Airbags
- ⑦ Front Airbags
- ⑧ Collapsible Steering Column
- ⑨ Seat Belt Tensioners
- ⑩ Seat Belts
- ⑪ Rear Side Airbags*

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

►► Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.

📖 **Seats** P. 216

- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.

📖 **Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions** P. 223

- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.

📖 **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 54

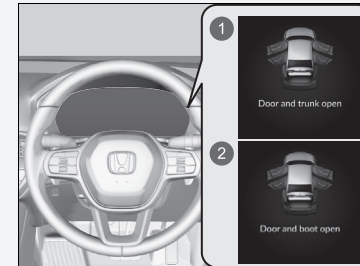
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height, and weight.

📖 **Child Safety** P. 75

📖 Safety Checklist

If the door and/or boot open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the boot is not completely closed. Close all doors and the boot tightly until the message disappears.

📖 **Warnings** P. 143, 165



① Latin American and Philippine models

② Except Latin American and Philippine models

About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

About Your Seat Belts

WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

🔧 **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 96

🔧 About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

Seat Belt Reminder



■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator will come on.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

⌘ Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

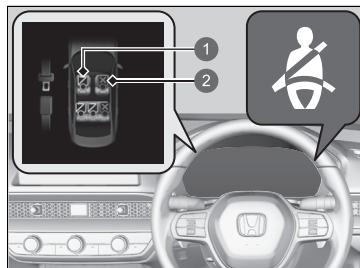
- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor.

Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



- ① Fastened
- ② Unfastened

■ Rear seats

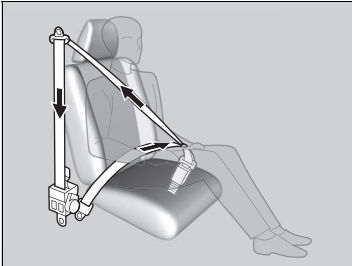
Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. The driver information interface notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are not used.

The display appears when:

- Any of the rear passenger seat belts are unfastened when the power mode is set to ON.
- A rear door is opened and then closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fasten or unfasten their seat belt.

The seat belt reminder indicator blinks and the beeper sounds if any rear passenger seat belts are unfastened while driving.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners



The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioners on both sides of the vehicle also activate.

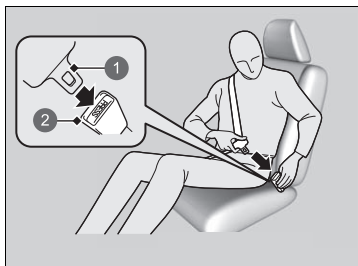
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat (see illustrations for correct seating posture):

► **Seats** P. 216



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

► Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

- ① Latch Plate
- ② Buckle

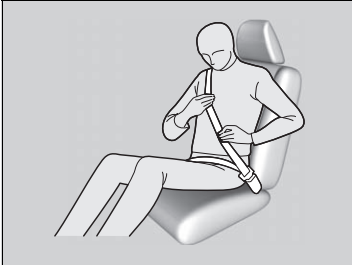
► Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in. Then, smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

► **About Your Seat Belts** P. 48

► **Seat Belt Inspection** P. 58



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips (see illustration), then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

► Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchorages to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchorage up and down while holding the release button.
2. Position the anchorage so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

► Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

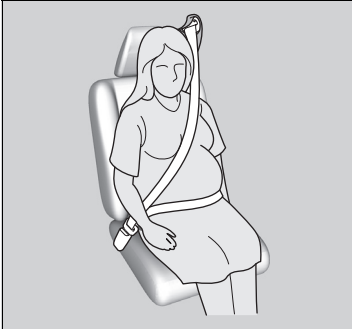
After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchorage position is secure.

The shoulder anchorage height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

Advice for Pregnant Women

Consider alternative:

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips. (See illustration.)



Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
 - If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

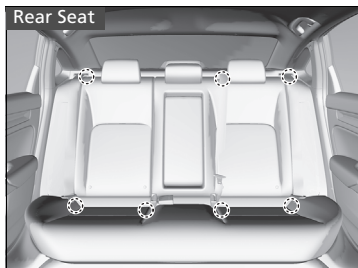
WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Anchorage Points



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

Airbag System Components

The front, front side, rear side*, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS**

AIRBAG.

- Four side airbags. One for the driver, one for the front passenger, and two for the rear outboard seating positions*. The front airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs and the rear airbags* are stored next to the outer rear seating positions.

All are marked **SIDE AIRBAG.**

- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG.**

- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event, the unit can record such information.
- Automatic front seat belt tensioners.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

■ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

▣ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's outer seat-backs and next to the outer rear seating positions*.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbag is designed to supplement seat belt not replace it. Seat belt is the occupant primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

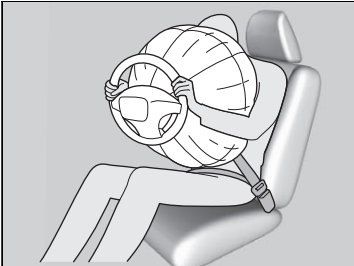
After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest. The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

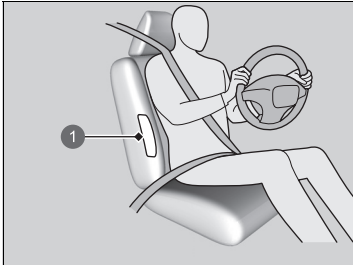
■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

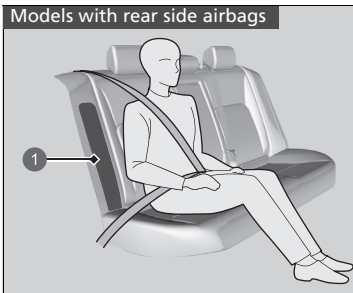
Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver, front passenger, or an outer rear seat occupant* during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



① Side Airbag Location



① Side Airbag Location

The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs and next to the outer rear seating positions*.

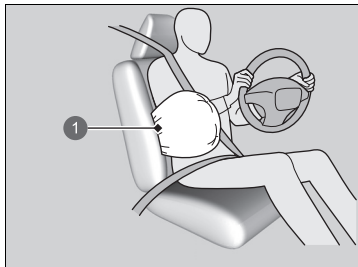
Each is marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

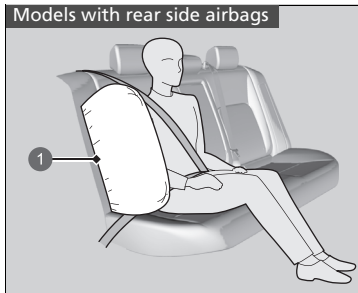
* Not available on all models

Operation



① Deployed Side Airbag

Models with rear side airbags



① Deployed Side Airbag

When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Side Airbags

Do not cover or replace the front and rear* seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front and rear* seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front and rear passengers lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

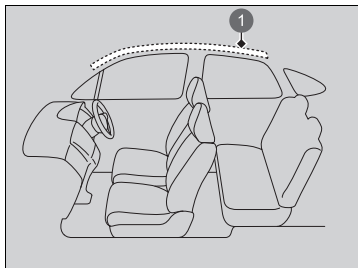
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



1 Side Curtain Airbag Location

The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

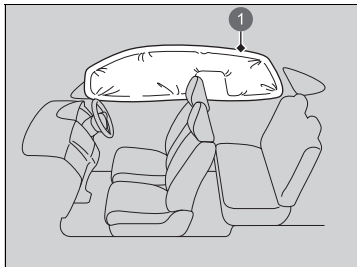
Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

■ Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

① Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



- 1 Latin American and Philippine models
- 2 Except Latin American and Philippine models

■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

►► Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

✎ Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Pop-up Hood System*

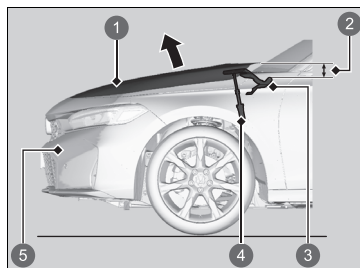
About the Pop-up Hood System

The pop-up hood system is designed to help to reduce the possible head injuries of a pedestrian if they experience a frontal impact with your vehicle.

The system activates when

Your vehicle strikes a pedestrian or other objects at moderate or higher speed.

How the system works



- ① Bonnet
- ② Raises about 100 mm
- ③ Hinge
- ④ Power Unit Component
- ⑤ Pedestrian Impact Sensors

When the pedestrian impact sensors detect a certain amount of impact, the pop-up hood system is activated and the rear of the bonnet will raise.

The raised bonnet can help to reduce pedestrian head injuries.

The power units are located in the vehicle front side of the hinges.

About the Pop-up Hood System

⚠ WARNING

After the pop-up hood is activated, the power unit components become extremely hot and can cause burns. Do not touch the power unit components until they have cooled.

NOTICE

Do not attempt to open the bonnet after the pop-up hood system has been activated. After the system activation, make sure the raised bonnet does not interfere with visibility, and then drive slowly and carefully.

If the bonnet is not fully closed, it may not work properly. Make sure the bonnet is fully closed before driving.

The following conditions may also activate the system.

- A severe impact on the underside of your vehicle.
- Driving over speed bumps at high speed, or over a large pothole.
- When the objects impact the pedestrian impact sensors.

The system may not activate if your vehicle is:

- Impacted from the rear or side.
- Tipped over or rolled over.
- A pedestrian is struck at an angle.

Other factors, such as where, at which angle, or at what vehicle speed the impact has occurred, may prevent the pop-up hood system from activating.

⌘ About the Pop-up Hood System

For the pop-up hood system to work properly:

- Always use the same size tyres as the original. The system may not read your vehicle speed correctly with the different size tyres.
- Never apply force to the system's power unit. It can be damaged if you slam the bonnet shut.
- Do not impact the pedestrian impact sensors in the front bumper.

■ System Warning Message for Pop-up Hood



■ When the power mode is set to ON

A system warning message appears on the driver information interface if there is a potential problem with the pop-up hood system.

Pop-up Hood System Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any pop-up hood system components yourself.

However, if the pop-up hood system has ever activated, you need to have the control unit, and other related parts replaced by a dealer.

⚠ System Warning Message for Pop-up Hood

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the pop-up hood message can result in a malfunction of the pop-up hood. This can result in serious injury or death if your vehicle impacts a pedestrian.

If the pop-up hood message comes on, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

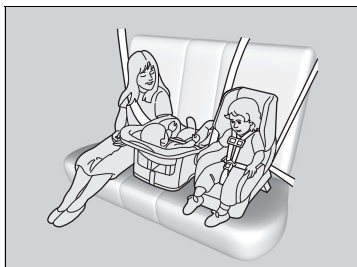
⚠ Pop-up Hood System Care

If the front bumper is damaged, have the vehicle checked by a dealer even if the pop-up hood system did not activate.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.



Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:

- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

⚠ WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an **ACTIVE AIRBAG** in front of it, **DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY** to the **CHILD** can occur.

⚠ WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.

► Protecting Child Passengers

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

► **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 81

Malaysian models

Front Passenger's Doorjamb

⚠ WARNING



Extreme Hazard!

DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

► Protecting Child Passengers

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

► Opening/Closing the Power Windows

P. 190

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle has the warning labels on the passenger's side sun visor and front passenger's doorjamb*.

Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

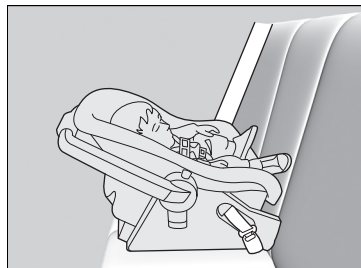
► Safety Labels P. 104

* Not available on all models

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it. If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

► Protecting Infants

⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

✕ Protecting Infants

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

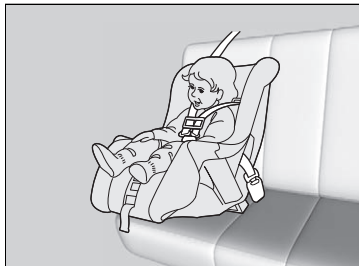
Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

►► Protecting Smaller Children

⚠ WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129*, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

▶▶ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

We recommend a rear-facing or a front-facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

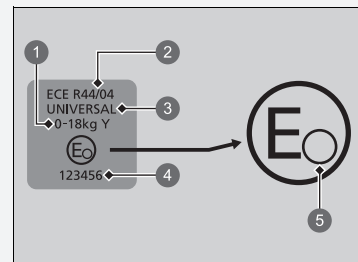
* Not available on all models

■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size*/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

► Selecting a Child Restraint System

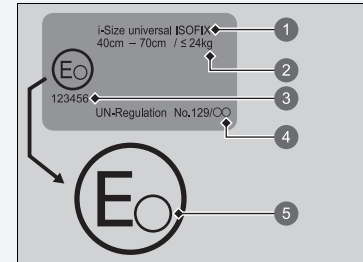
Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



- ① "Mass group"
- ② Regulation number
- ③ Category
- ④ Approval number
- ⑤ Country code

►► Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label*



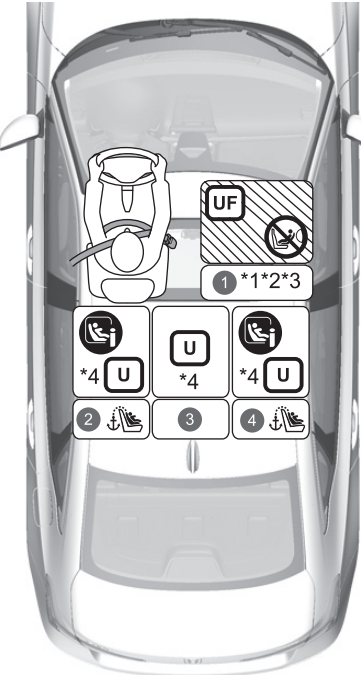
- ① Category
- ② Size and weight indication
- ③ Approval number
- ④ Regulation number
- ⑤ Country code

* Not available on all models

Except African and Middle Eastern models

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Left-hand Drive Type



Right-hand Drive Type



	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

- *1: When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position. If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked. If you cannot fix the booster seat stably, adjust the seat back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- *2: Only forward facing child restraint system can be installed.
- *3: For installing the universal child restraint system installed with safety belt, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- *4: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.
 - Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the centre seat is excluded.
 - The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

Southeast Asian models

Detail information for CRS installation

Seat position number	Seating position and Seat position number					
	Size groups Weight Stature		①	②	③	④
			Front passenger ^{*1, *2}	2nd row ^{*4}		
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes ^{*3}	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg				
	Group III	22-36kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤ 150cm		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	No	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤ 150cm		B3	B3	B3	B3

►► Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

- *1: When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position. If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked. If you cannot fix the booster seat stably, adjust the seat back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- *2: Only forward facing child restraint system can be installed.
- *3: For installing the universal child restraint system installed with safety belt, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- *4: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.
 - Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the centre seat is excluded.
 - The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

Latin American models

Detail information for CRS installation

Seat position number	Seating position and Seat position number					
	Size groups Weight Stature		①	②	③	④
			Front passenger ^{*1, *2}	2nd row ^{*4}		
			Left	Centre	Right	
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes ^{*3}	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg				
	Group III	22-36kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤ 150cm		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	No	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤ 150cm		B3	B3	B3	B3

- *1: When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position. If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked. If you cannot fix the booster seat stably, adjust the seat back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- *2: Only forward facing child restraint system can be installed.
- *3: For installing the universal child restraint system installed with safety belt, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- *4: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.
 - Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the centre seat is excluded.
 - The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

Southeast Asian models

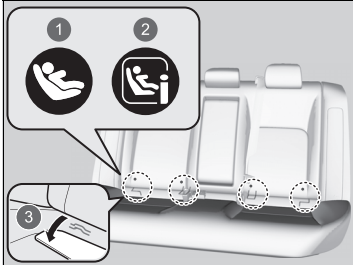
■ **Genuine CRS List**

R129

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
Under 100cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)
Over 71cm and 15 months to 100cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX

■ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors (see illustrations).



- ❶ Mark for Middle Eastern and African models
- ❷ Mark for except Middle Eastern and African models
- ❸ Covers

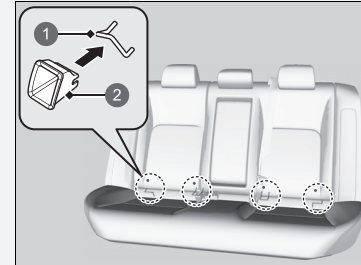
1. Locate the anchorage marks affixed to the base of the seat cushion.
2. Pull out the anchorage covers under the marks to expose the lower anchorages.

►► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

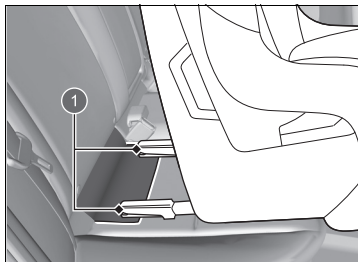
⚠ WARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

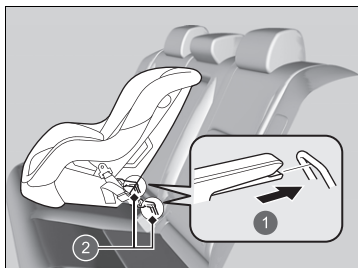
Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.



- ❶ Lower Anchorage
- ❷ Guide-cup



1 Probes



1 Rigid Type

2 Lower Anchorages

3. Place the child restraint system so that the probes are on the cover.

4. Attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

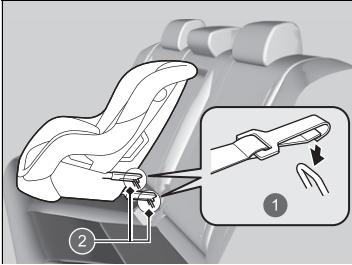
- When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

►► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

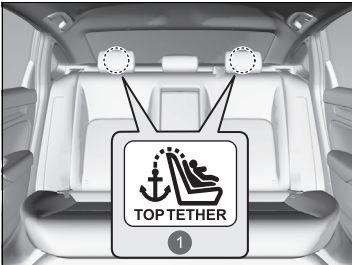
For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.



- ❶ Flexible Type
- ❷ Lower Anchorages



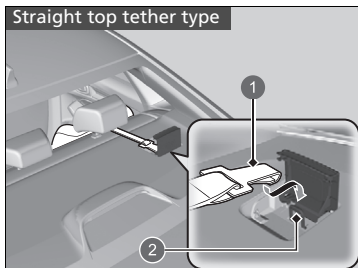
- ❶ Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

Child restraint system with tether strap

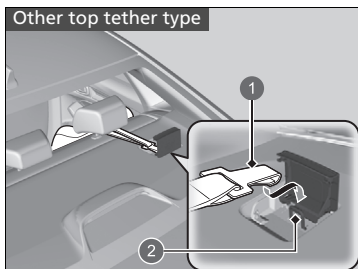
5. Open the tether anchorage cover behind the head restraint.

►► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

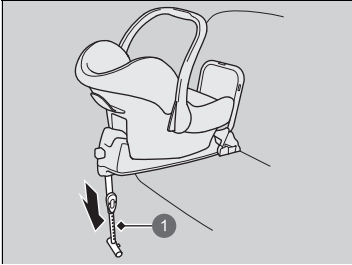


- ① Tether Strap Hook
- ② Anchorage



- ① Tether Strap Hook
- ② Anchorage

6. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
7. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
8. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
9. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
10. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



1 Support Leg

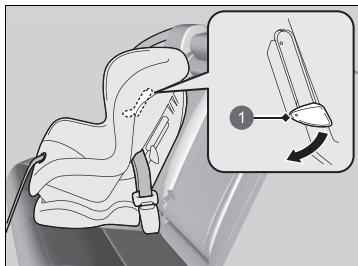
Except Middle Eastern and African models

Child restraint system with support leg

5. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

- Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.
- Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



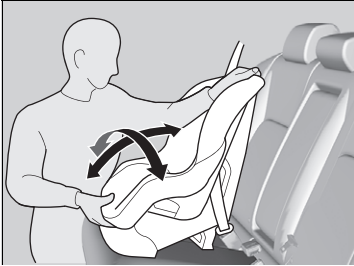
1 Tab

1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
► Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.

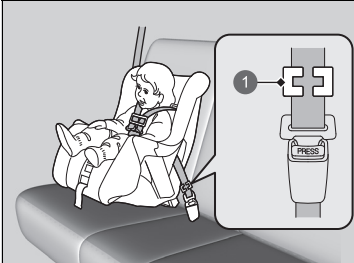
3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
► When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
► When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

►► Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.



6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



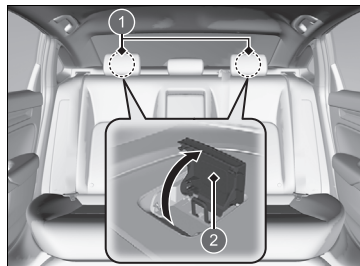
1 Locking Clip

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

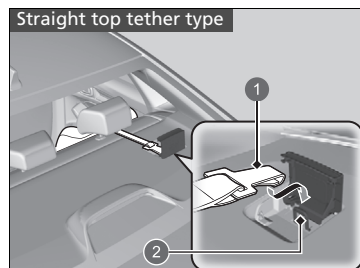
After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

3. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
4. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

■ Adding Security with a Tether



- ① Tether Anchorage Points
- ② Cover



- ① Tether Strap Hook
- ② Anchorage

A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear outer seating position.

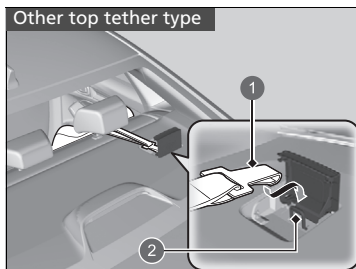
If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point and lift the cover.
2. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

► Adding Security with a Tether

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.



- ❶ Tether Strap Hook
- ❷ Anchorage

Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

►► Safety of Larger Children

⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats



1 Guide

If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.

A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.


Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the boot open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the boot open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

⚠ WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

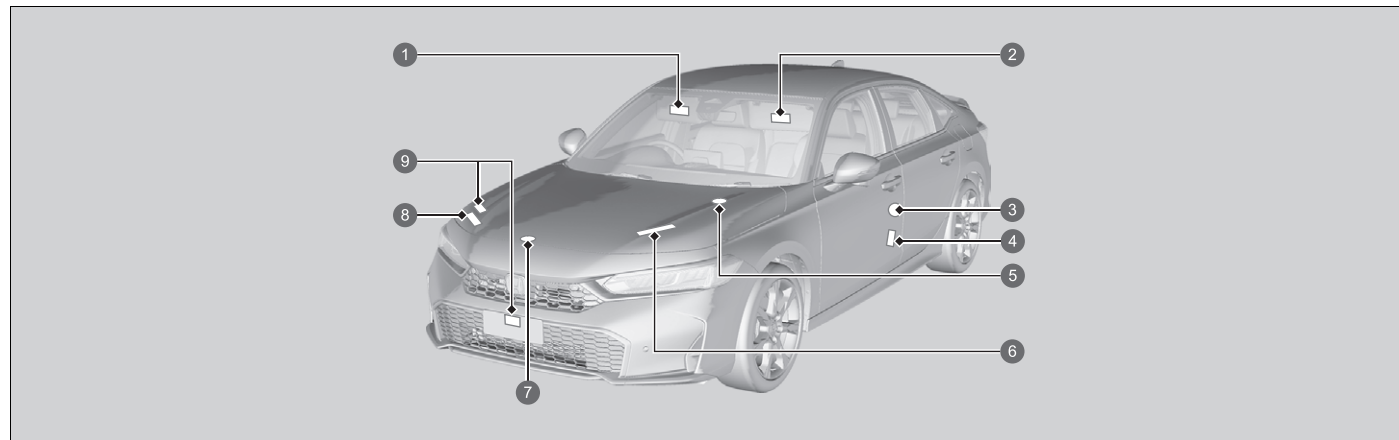
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



- ① Protecting Child Passenger (Left-hand drive type) ➡ P. 75
- ② Protecting Child Passenger (Right-hand drive type) ➡ P. 75
- ③ Child Safety* ➡ P. 76
- ④ Information for Painting ➡ P. 649
- ⑤ Inverter Coolant Reserve Tank Cap
- ⑥ 12-Volt Battery ➡ P. 638
- ⑦ Radiator Cap
- ⑧ Front Bulkhead Cover* ➡ P. 606
- ⑨ Pop-up Hood System*

Instrument Panel






















This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.



Indicators	106
Gauges and Driver Information Interface	
Gauges.....	126
Driver Information Interface (A-type Meter)	130
Driver Information Interface Left Side Area (B-type Meter).....	144
Driver Information Interface Right Side Area (B-type Meter)	147

Indicators




























Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may display on the driver information interface at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.

 *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	→ P. 108
 *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 110
 *1	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	→ P. 110
 *1	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	→ P. 110
 *1	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	→ P. 110
 *1	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	→ P. 110
 D	Shift Position Indicator	→ P. 111
	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	→ P. 111
	Transmission System Indicator	→ P. 111
 *1, *2	POWER SYSTEM Indicator*2	→ P. 111
 *1, *3	Power System Indicator*3	
 *2	READY Indicator*2	→ P. 112
 *3	Ready Indicator*3	
 *1	EV Indicator	→ P. 112
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	→ P. 112
	Low Fuel Indicator	→ P. 113
 *1	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	→ P. 113
 *1	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	→ P. 113
 *1	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	→ P. 114
 *1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	→ P. 114
 *1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator	→ P. 114

*1 : When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.


*2 : Latin American and Philippine models


*3 : Except Latin American and Philippine models






 *1	Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator*	→ P. 115
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	→ P. 116
	Lights On Indicator	→ P. 116
	High Beam Indicator	→ P. 116
 *1	Auto High-Beam Indicator*	→ P. 116
	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	→ P. 116
	System Message Indicator	→ P. 117
	INDIVIDUAL Mode Indicator	→ P. 118
	SPORT Mode Indicator	→ P. 118
	NORMAL Mode Indicator	→ P. 118
	ECON Mode Indicator	→ P. 118
	CRUISE MAIN Indicator*	→ P. 120
	CRUISE CONTROL Indicator*	→ P. 120
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator*	→ P. 121
	Immobilizer System Indicator	→ P. 119
	Security System Alarm Indicator	→ P. 119
 *1	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 120
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green)*	→ P. 120
 *1	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 121
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)*	→ P. 121
 *1	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 122
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)*	→ P. 122
 *1	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 122
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator*	→ P. 122
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)*	→ P. 122
 *1	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 123
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)*	→ P. 125

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.







* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake applied.Comes on for about 30 seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then goes off.Stays on for about 30 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none">Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Comes on while driving - Make sure the parking brake is released. Stop in a safe place and check the brake fluid level. ➤ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving P. 695

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on along with the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ❏ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On P. 696 Comes on along with the ABS indicator - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ❏ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks P. 695 Blinks and the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) comes on at the same time - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ❏ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On P. 696



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 (Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Avoid high speeds and sudden braking. Take the vehicle to a dealer immediately.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on. 	<p>➤ Automatic Brake Hold P. 574</p>
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated. 	<p>➤ Automatic Brake Hold P. 574</p>
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems or electric vehicle system*1. Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected. 	<p>➤ If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks P. 694</p>
	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stop in a safe place and contact a dealer immediately. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Checking the 12-Volt Battery P. 634 ➤ If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 692

*1:Argentine, Brazilian, Colombian, Singaporean, Thai, and Vietnamese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Shift Position Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates the current shift position. 	 Shifting P. 470
	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the paddle selector is pulled. Blinks when deceleration does not occur while pulling the paddle selector. Comes on with M when SPORT mode is selected and the paddle selector is pulled. 	 Deceleration Paddle Selector P. 473
	Transmission System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if the transmission system has a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. Do not drive displays on the driver information interface - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.
POWER SYSTEM ^{*1}	POWER SYSTEM Indicator ^{*1}	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system. 	Argentine, Brazilian, Colombian, Singaporean, Thai, and Vietnamese models <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
	Power System Indicator ^{*2}		Except Argentine, Brazilian, Colombian, Singaporean, Thai, and Vietnamese models <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. All models <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do not drive displays on the driver information interface - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.





*1:Latin American and Philippine models




*2:Except Latin American and Philippine models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
READY *1	READY Indicator*1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the vehicle is ready to drive. 	<p>➤ Turning on the Power P. 461</p>
 *2	Ready Indicator*2		
EV	EV Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the vehicle is moved by the motor, and the engine is not operating. 	—
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. Comes on for a while when the rear seat belt is unfastened while the power mode in ON. Blinks while driving if you and/or any passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the passengers fasten their seat belts. Stays on after you and/or the passengers have fastened the seat belt(s) - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <p>➤ Seat Belt Reminder P. 51</p>



*1:Latin American and Philippine models











*2:Except Latin American and Philippine models






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Low Fuel Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 6.0 Liter left). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 577
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Supplemental Restraint System Side airbag system Side curtain airbag system Seat belt tensioner 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.










Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system or Driver Attention Monitor System*1. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Do not drive displays on the driver information interface - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On P. 697
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when VSA is active. Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, hill start assist system or agile handling assist. Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected. 	<p>—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System P. 493 ➤ Hill start assist system P. 466 ➤ Agile Handling Assist P. 495 Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you partially disable VSA. <p>Models with A-type meter</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ VSA On and Off P. 494 Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

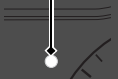




*1:Except Argentine, Brazilian, Colombian, Indonesian, Thai, and Vietnamese models










Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been calibrated. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on while driving - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. • Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures - The system needs to be calibrated.  Deflation Warning System Calibration P. 497
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system, or when a compact spare tyre is temporarily installed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blinks and remains on - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare tyre, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blinks along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does not blink or blinks rapidly  Replacing Light Bulbs P. 618
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blinks along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving. 	 Emergency Stop Signal P. 579
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on. 	 Lights P. 200
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the high beam headlights are on. 	—
	Auto High-Beam Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met. 	 Auto High-Beam* P. 204
	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the rear fog light is on. 	 Fog Light* P. 203

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	System Message Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message. <p>Models with A-type meter</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> While the indicator is on, press the  (home) button, and select Information to see the message again. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Switching the Display P. 130 The driver information interface will not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the  (home) button is pressed. <p>Models with B-type meter</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> While the indicator is on, roll the right selector wheel to see the message again. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Switching the Display P. 147 The driver information interface will not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the right selector wheel is rolled.






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	INDIVIDUAL Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Comes on when you set the drive mode to INDIVIDUAL.	 Drive Mode Switch P. 477
	SPORT Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Comes on when you set the drive mode to SPORT.	<div>Models with A-type meter<ul style="list-style-type: none">The ambient meter remains lit up in red as long as SPORT mode is selected. Drive Mode Switch P. 477</div> <div>Models with B-type meter<ul style="list-style-type: none">The ambient meter* goes off and gauges in the instrument panel light up in red as long as SPORT mode is selected. Drive Mode Switch P. 477</div>
	NORMAL Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Comes on when you set the drive mode to NORMAL.	 Drive Mode Switch P. 477
	ECON Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Comes on when you set the drive mode to ECON.	 Drive Mode Switch P. 477



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
<div>Models with A-type meter</div> <div>Indicator</div>  <div>Models with B-type meter</div> <div>Indicator</div> 	Immobilizer System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks - You cannot start the power system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again. Repeatedly blinks - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.
<div>Models with A-type meter</div> <div>Indicator</div>  <div>Models with B-type meter</div> <div>Indicator</div> 	Security System Alarm Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when the security system alarm has been set. 	<div>  Security System Alarm P. 189 </div>


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	CRUISE MAIN Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the CRUISE button. 	 Cruise Control* P. 487
	CRUISE CONTROL Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if you have set a speed for cruise control. 	 Cruise Control* P. 487
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected. Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight.  Load Limit P. 459 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lights up in white when you press the . Lights up in green while the system is in operation. 	 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 530


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow indicator comes on. 	<p>➤ To Set or Change Following-interval P. 546</p>
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS. Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Load Limit P. 459 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lights up in white when you press the LKAS button. Lights up in green when the LKAS is in operation. 	<p>➤ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 551</p>

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Safety Support Indicator (Amber) P. 123
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the CMBS is off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Safety Support P. 142, 162
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation System or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Safety Support Indicator (Amber) P. 123
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Road Departure Mitigation System P. 523
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System is off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Safety Support P. 142, 162

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation system or CMBS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		Models with parking sensor system <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the parking sensor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.
		Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight.  Load Limit P. 459 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected and then reconnected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow <ul style="list-style-type: none">Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS shuts itself off.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Stays on - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➤ Front Wide View Camera P. 568
			<ul style="list-style-type: none">Stays on - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth.Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera. ➤ Front Wide View Camera P. 568It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lights up in green when the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, and parking sensor system* are on. • Lights up in green and grey when one or more of the systems above are off. • Lights up in grey when all systems above are off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Road Departure Mitigation System P. 523 ➤ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 509 ➤ Parking Sensor System* P. 582
		Models without ACC with Low Speed Follow <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lights up in green when the parking sensor system is on. • Lights up in grey when the parking sensor system is off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Parking Sensor System* P. 582

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, fuel gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Ambient Meter*

Changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel-efficient manner with **SPORT** mode off.

■ POWER Gauge

Shows the output of the electric motor.

■ CHARGE/DECEL Gauge

Shows the degree to which the High Voltage battery is being charged. When the deceleration paddle selector is being used, it shows the strength of deceleration.

» Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches **E**. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

After lightly refueling, or depending on your vehicle's condition, the actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Models with B-type meter

■ High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Shows the remaining High Voltage battery charge level.

⌘ High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

The High Voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:

- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- When the High Voltage battery control system corrects its reading.

The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.

Changes in the temperature of the High Voltage battery can increase or decrease the battery's charging capacity. If temperature changes cause the battery's capacity to change, the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge may also change, even if the amount of charge remains the same.

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the **Outside temperature low** message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading by up to $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$ if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

■ Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and the LKAS*

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and the LKAS.

► **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 530

► **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 551

■ Cruise Control Set Vehicle Speed*

Shows the vehicle speed set in cruise control.

► **Cruise Control*** P. 487

► Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilised.

You can adjust the temperature reading.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

► **Customized Features** P. 303

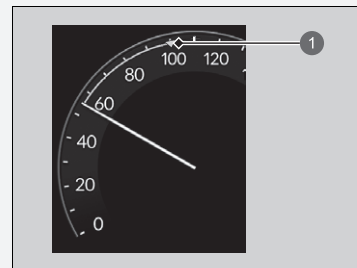
Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

► **Customized Features** P. 401

► Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and the LKAS*

Models with B-type meter

When you set speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow, a set speed mark will be displayed on the speedometer.



① Set Speed

Models with A-type meter

Clock

Shows the clock.

Clock

You can adjust the time manually and change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

 **Clock Setup** P. 262

Driver Information Interface (A-type Meter)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the


Engine oil pressure low, **Engine temperature too hot** or **Reduced stopping power** message is displayed.

➤ **If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears** P. 691

➤ **Overheating** P. 689

➤ **If the Reduced stopping power Warning Appears** P. 693

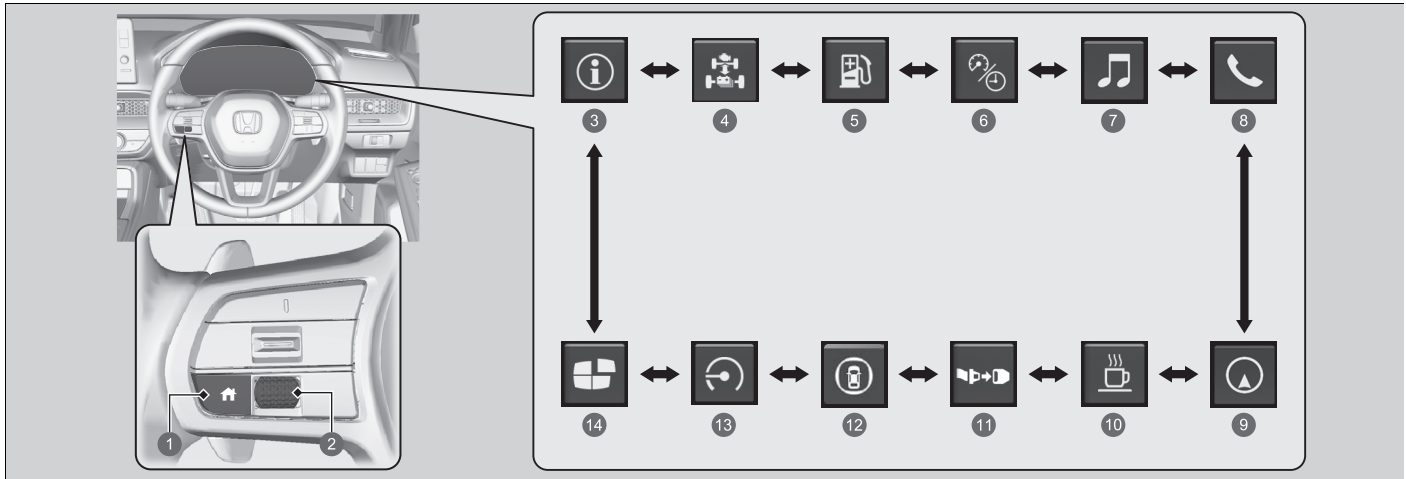
Switching the Display

Press the  (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

Switching the Display

You can add or delete the meter contents.

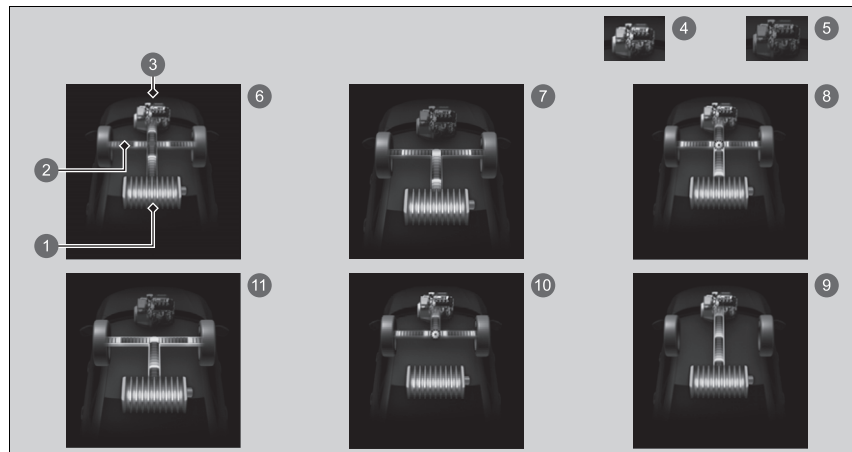
➤ **Customize Display** P. 143



- ① (home) Button
- ② Left Selector Wheel
- ③ **Information** P. 143
- ④ **Power flow** P. 132
- ⑤ **Range & fuel** P. 133
- ⑥ **Speed & time** P. 135
- ⑦ **Audio** P. 136
- ⑧ **Phone** P. 136
- ⑨ **Navigation** P. 137
- ⑩ **Driver attention** P. 138
- ⑪ **Seat belts** P. 141
- ⑫ **Safety support** P. 142
- ⑬ No content
- ⑭ **Customize display** P. 143

■ Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Displays the power flow of the motor and engine, indicating the vehicle's power source, remaining battery level, and whether the battery is being charged.



- ① High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge
- ② Power Flow ③ Engine ④ Engine ON ⑤ Engine OFF
- ⑥ **Hybrid (HV):** Power is supplied by the motor and the engine.
- ⑦ **Electric Vehicle (EV):** Power is supplied by the motor.
- ⑧ **Engine (Direct Drive):** The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.
- ⑨ The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.
- ⑩ Power is being supplied by the engine only.
- ⑪ **Regeneration:** The motor is charging the High Voltage battery.

► Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

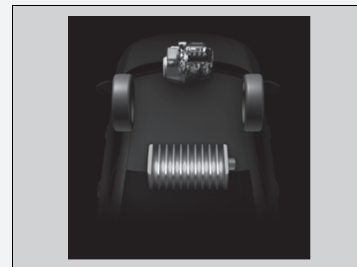
The High Voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:

- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- When the High Voltage battery control system corrects its reading.

The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.

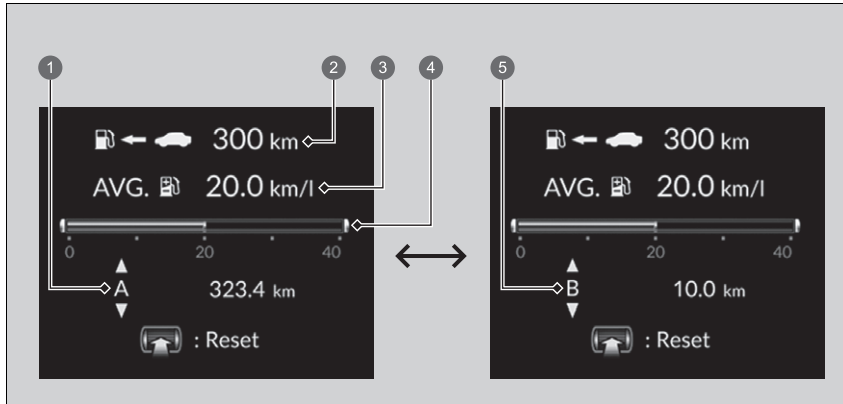
Changes in the temperature of the High Voltage battery can increase or decrease the battery's charging capacity. If temperature changes cause the battery's capacity to change, the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge may also change, even if the amount of charge remains the same.

While the vehicle is stationary with the engine running, the following may appear on the driver information interface.



Range/Fuel/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



- ① Trip Meter A
- ② Range
- ③ Average Fuel Economy
- ④ Instant Fuel Economy
- ⑤ Trip Meter B

■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel, and then select **Reset**.

- The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l* or l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l* or l/100 km.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power and fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

» Range/Fuel/Trip Meter

Thai models

You can change the unit of fuel consumption in either km/l and l/100km.

- **Customized Features** P. 303

» Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

- **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

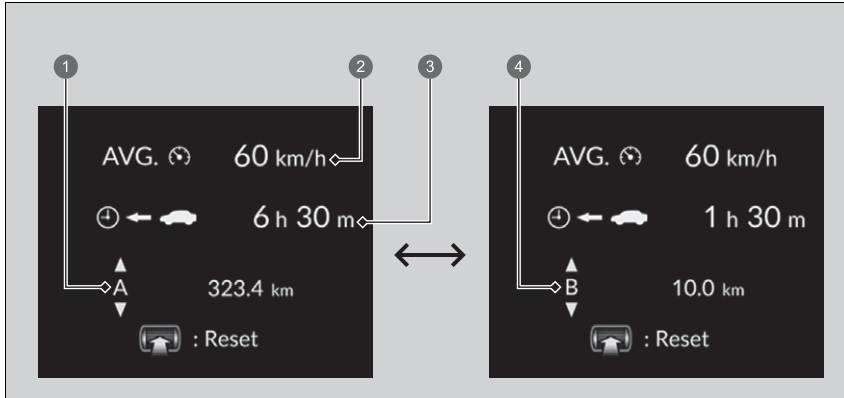
- **Customized Features** P. 401

» Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

■ Speed/Time/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



- ❶ Trip Meter A
- ❷ Average Speed
- ❸ Elapsed Time
- ❹ Trip Meter B

■ Trip meter

➤ **Trip meter** P. 134

■ Elapsed time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Basic Operation** P. 250

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Basic Operation** P. 344

■ Phone

Shows the current phone information.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 321

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System** P. 421

» Elapsed time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

» Average speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

Navigation

■ Compass

Shows the compass screen.

■ Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system*, Google Maps*, Apple CarPlay, or Android Auto, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

➤ **Apple CarPlay** P. 288

➤ **Android Auto™** P. 294

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Apple CarPlay** P. 379

➤ **Android Auto™** P. 384

➤ **Google built-in** P. 392

Navigation

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

You can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by scrolling the left selector wheel.

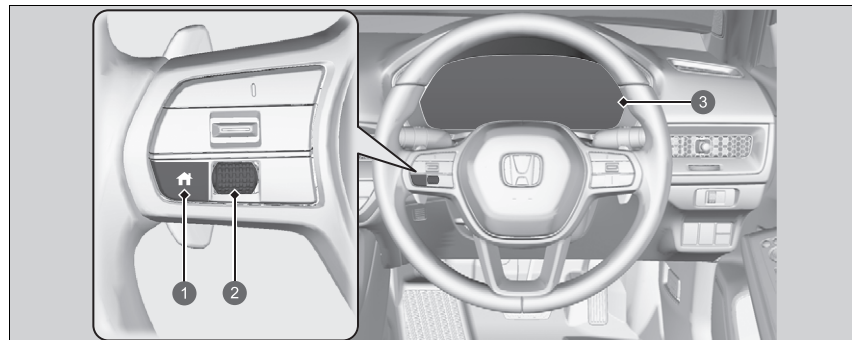
➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**


Turn-by-turn directions may not be available for all apps.

* Not available on all models

■ Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.



- ①  (home) Button
- ② Left Selector Wheel
- ③ Driver Information Interface

▣ Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.

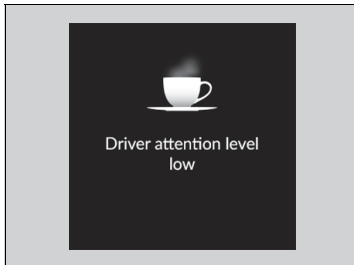
Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.



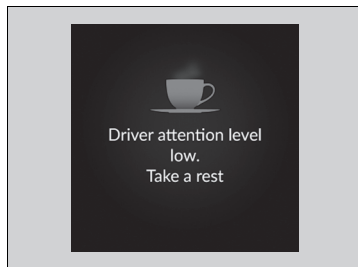
When you select **Driver attention** on the driver information interface, bars on it light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

➤ **Switching the Display** P. 130

① Level




If two bars light up, the **Driver attention level low** message will appear.



If one bar lights up, the **Driver attention level low. Take a rest** message will appear, a beep will sound, and the steering wheel will vibrate.

If this message appears, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.

The message will disappear when the  (home) button is pressed or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.

If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the message will appear again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.

The message does not appear when the travelling time is 30 minutes or less.

■ The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:

- The power system is turned off.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

■ For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

- The vehicle must be travelling above 40 km/h.
- The electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances:

- The steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* is active.
 ➤ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 551
- The condition of the road is poor; e.g., the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- It is windy.
- The driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner, such as changing lanes or accelerating.

■ Customizing

You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile and audible alert**, **Tactile alert only** or **OFF**.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

■ Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

➤ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 51

* Not available on all models

⌘ For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

The bars on the driver information interface remain greyed-out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

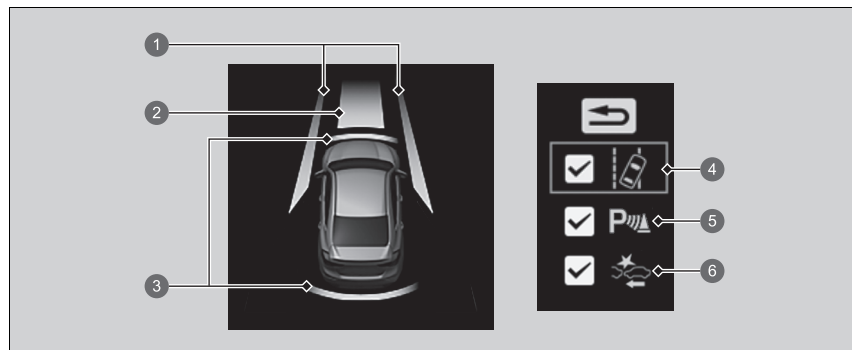
Continued

■ Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system*, CMBS*, and parking sensor system, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:

- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



- 1 Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System*
- 2 Area Info for CMBS*
- 3 Area Info for the Parking Sensor System
- 4 Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and Status Info*
- 5 Parking Sensor System Icon and Status Info
- 6 CMBS Icon and Status Info*

► Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn each system on or off, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.

- **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 523
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 509
- **Parking Sensor System*** P. 582

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.

- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)*** P. 122
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)*** P. 122
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)*** P. 122
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)*** P. 122
- **Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator*** P. 122
- **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 123
- **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)** P. 125

Even when the parking sensor system icon is green, if the **Rear sensor setting** is turned off, the rear parking sensor will not operate when reversing.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

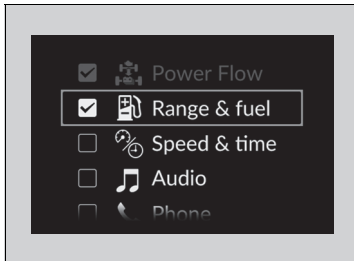
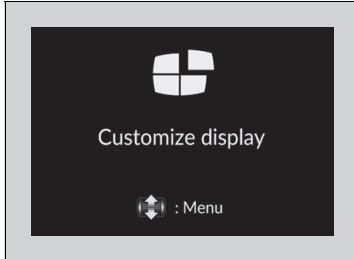
- **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

- **Customized Features** P. 401

■ Customize Display

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel.
3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

■ Information

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

⌘ Customize Display

Icons that are grey cannot be removed from the home screen.

When you customize settings, shift to **P**.

⌘ Information

If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

Driver Information Interface Left Side Area (B-type Meter)

Shows the current mode for audio and phone information, etc.

➤ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 252

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 321

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System** P. 421

Clock

Shows the clock.

⌚ Clock

You can adjust the time manually and change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

➤ **Clock Setup** P. 262

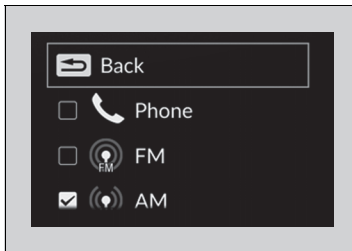
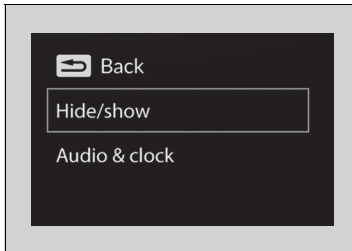
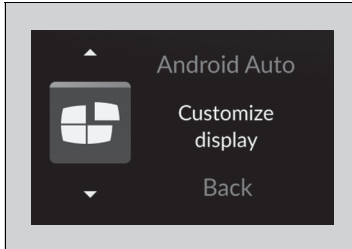
You can choose whether the clock is displayed on the driver information interface.

➤ **Customize Display** P. 145

■ Customize Display

■ Arrange audio source on the left side area

You can choose which sources to display on the audio source screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.

2. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the left selector wheel.

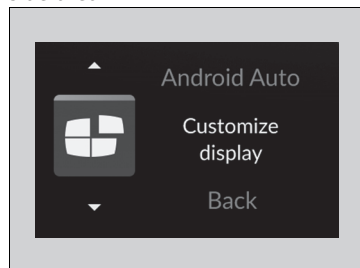
3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between audio sources, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

» Customize Display

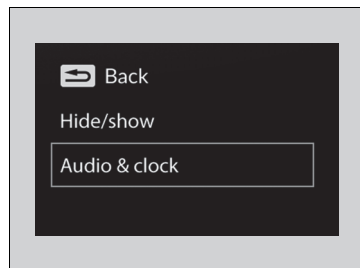
When you customize settings, shift to **P**.

■ Turn the displaying on the left side area on and off

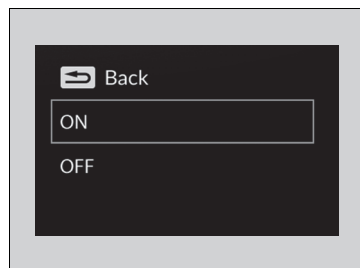
You can select whether the current audio information and clock appear on the left side area.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.



2. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Audio & clock**, then press the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the left selector wheel.

Driver Information Interface Right Side Area (B-type Meter)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine oil pressure low**, **Engine temperature too hot** or **Limited stopping power**^{*1}/**Reduced stopping power**^{*2} message is displayed.

- 🔧 **If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears** P. 691
- 🔧 **Overheating** P. 689
- 🔧 **If the Reduced stopping power Warning Appears** P. 693

Switching the Display

Roll the right selector wheel to view different types of content.

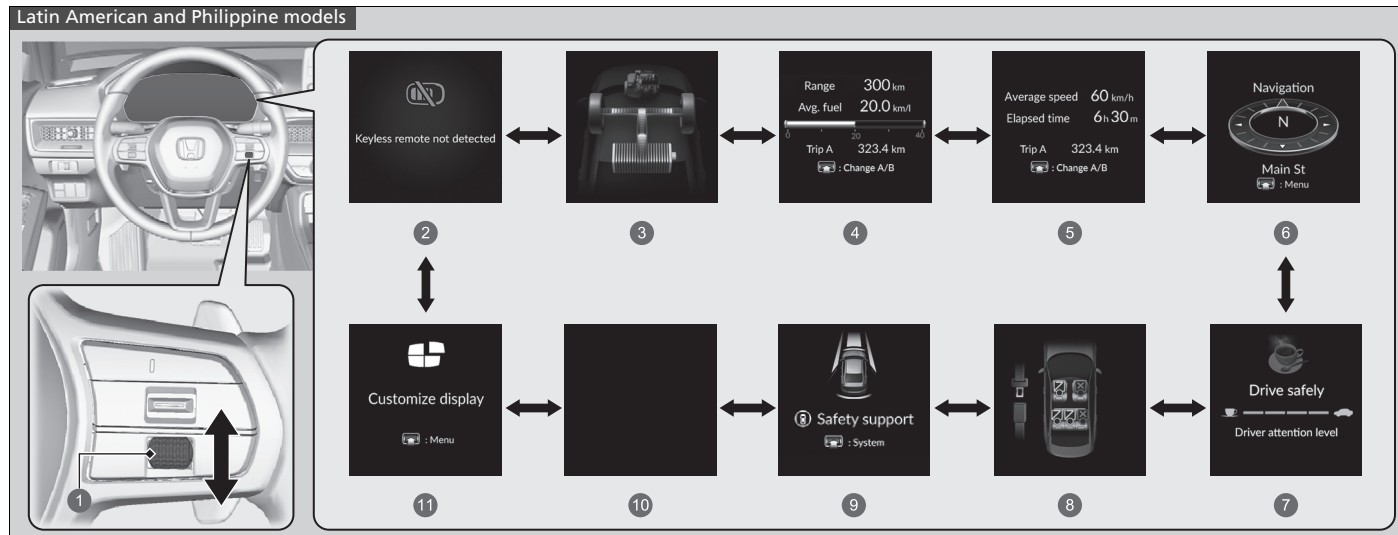
Switching the Display

You can add or delete the meter contents.

- 🔧 **Customize Display** P. 163

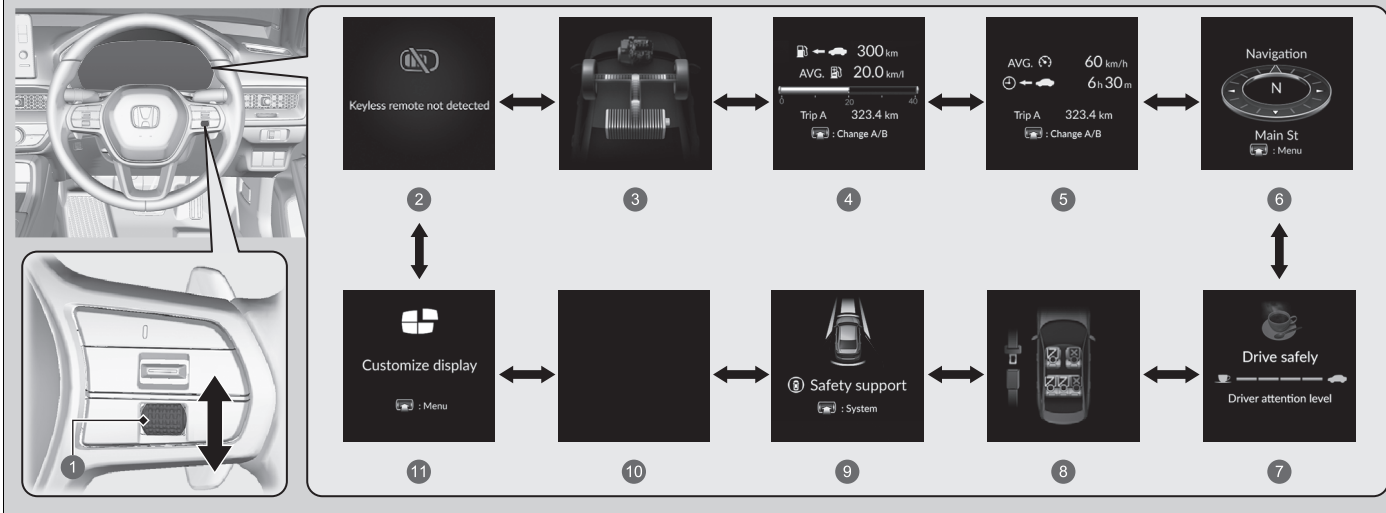
*1: Latin American and Philippine models

*2: Except Latin American and Philippine models



- 1 Right Selector Wheel
- 2 Warning Messages
- 3 Power Flow
- 4 Range/Fuel/Trip Meter
- 5 Speed/Time/Trip Meter
- 6 Navigation
- 7 Driver Attention Monitor
- 8 Seat Belts
- 9 Safety Support
- 10 No Content
- 11 Customize Display

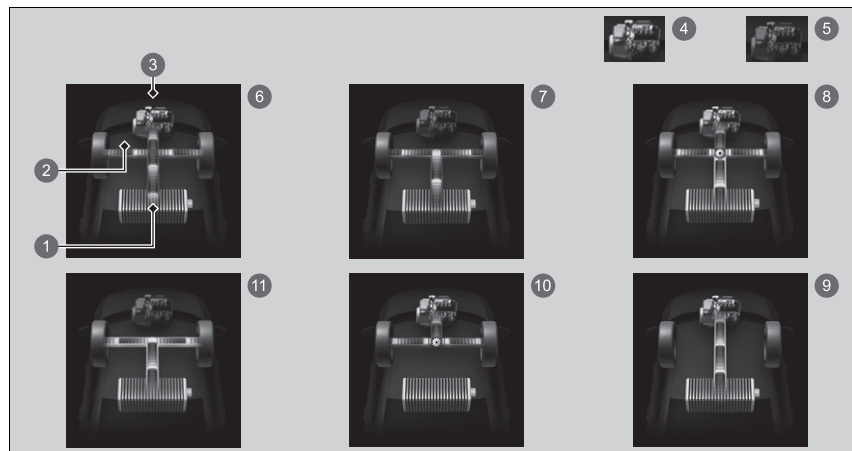
Except Latin American and Philippine models



- ① Right Selector Wheel
- ② Warning Messages ➡ P. 165
- ③ Power Flow ➡ P. 150
- ④ Range/Fuel/Trip Meter ➡ P. 151
- ⑤ Speed/Time/Trip Meter ➡ P. 154
- ⑥ Navigation ➡ P. 157
- ⑦ Driver Attention Monitor ➡ P. 158
- ⑧ Seat Belts ➡ P. 161
- ⑨ Safety Support ➡ P. 162
- ⑩ No Content
- ⑪ Customize Display ➡ P. 163

■ Power Flow Monitor

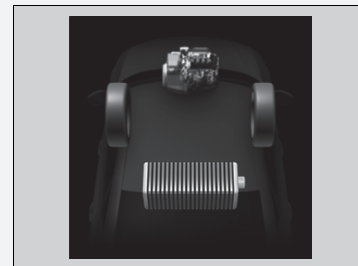
Displays the power flow of the motor and engine, indicating the vehicle's power source and whether the battery is being charged.



- ❶ High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge
- ❷ Power Flow ❸ Engine ❹ Engine ON ❺ Engine OFF
- ❻ **Hybrid (HV):** Power is supplied by the motor and the engine.
- ❼ **Electric Vehicle (EV):** Power is supplied by the motor.
- ❽ **Engine (Direct Drive):** The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.
- ❾ The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.
- ❿ Power is being supplied by the engine only.
- ⓫ **Regeneration:** The motor is charging the High Voltage battery.

▶ Power Flow Monitor

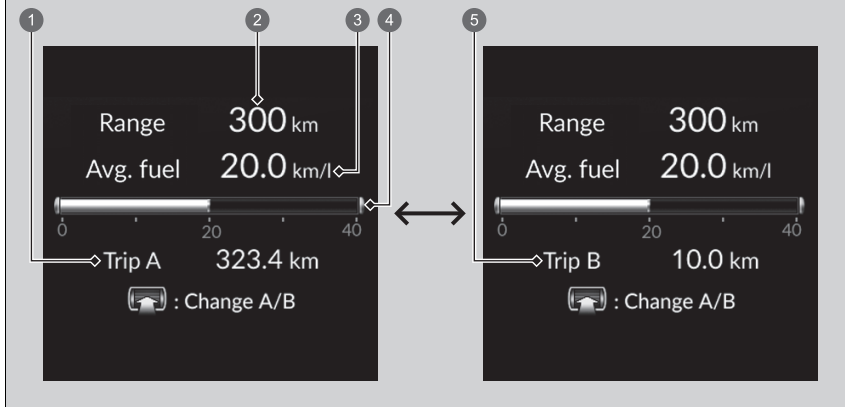
While the vehicle is stationary with the engine running, the following may appear on the driver information interface.



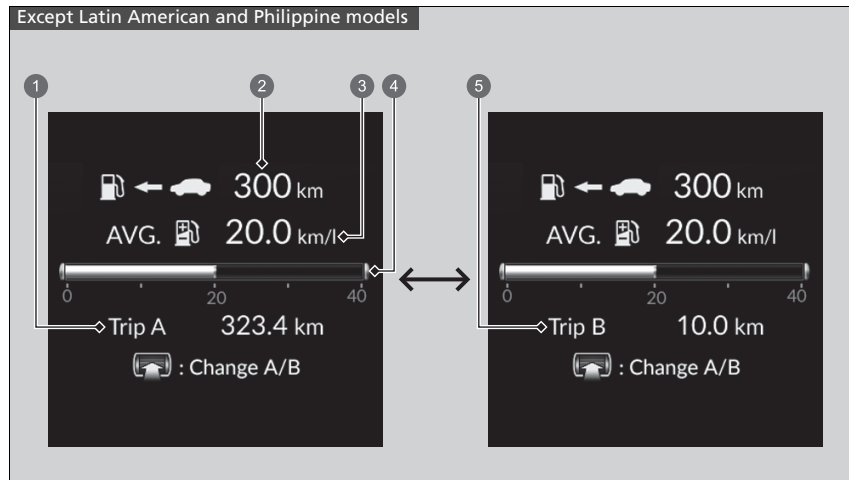
Range/Fuel/Trip Meter

Press the right selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.

Latin American and Philippine models



- ① Trip Meter A
- ② Range
- ③ Average Fuel Economy
- ④ Instant Fuel Economy
- ⑤ Trip Meter B



- ① Trip Meter A
- ② Range
- ③ Average Fuel Economy
- ④ Instant Fuel Economy
- ⑤ Trip Meter B

■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press and hold the right selector wheel, and then select **Reset**.

- The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

■ Average fuel economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l or l/100 km*. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l or l/100 km*.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power and fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

» Range/Fuel/Trip Meter

Except Latin American models

You can change the unit of fuel consumption in either km/l and l/100km.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

» Average fuel economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

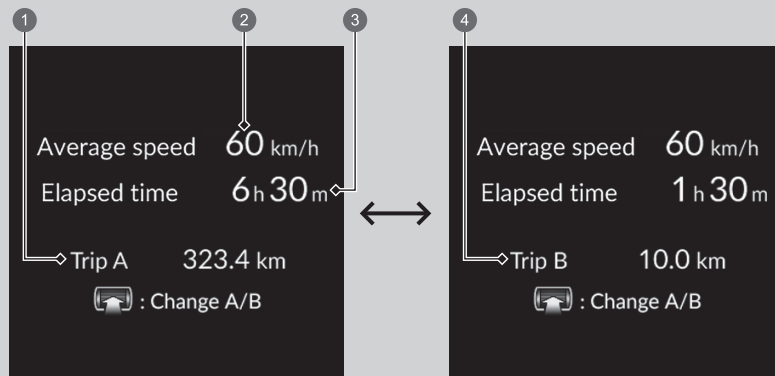
» Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

■ Speed/Time/Trip Meter

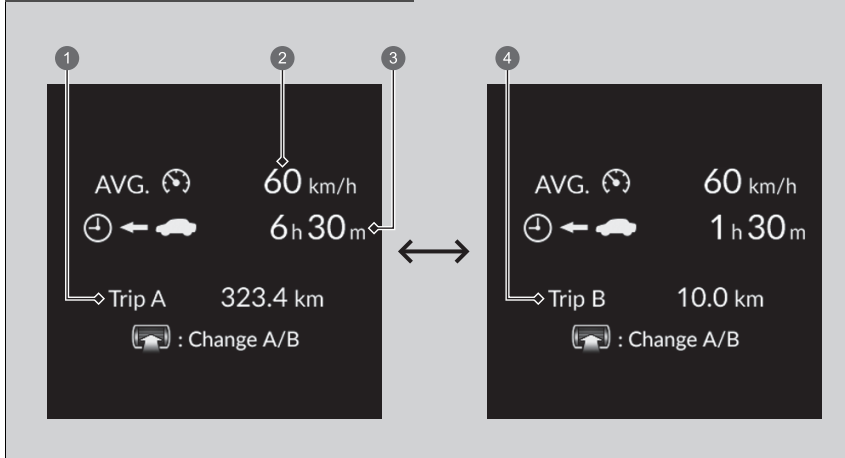
Press the right selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.

Latin American and Philippine models



- ① Trip meter A
- ② Average Speed
- ③ Elapsed Time
- ④ Trip meter B

Except Latin American and Philippine models



- ① Trip meter A
- ② Average Speed
- ③ Elapsed Time
- ④ Trip meter B

■ Trip meter

➤ **Trip meter** P. 153

■ Elapsed time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

» Elapsed time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

» Average speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

Navigation

Compass

Shows the compass screen.

Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system*, Google Maps*, Apple CarPlay, or Android Auto, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

Models with navigation system

➤ Refer to the Navigation System Manual

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ Apple CarPlay P. 288

➤ Android Auto™ P. 294

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ Apple CarPlay P. 379

➤ Android Auto™ P. 384

➤ Google built-in P. 392

Navigation

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ Customized Features P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ Customized Features P. 401

Turn-by-turn directions may not be available for all apps.

Models with navigation system

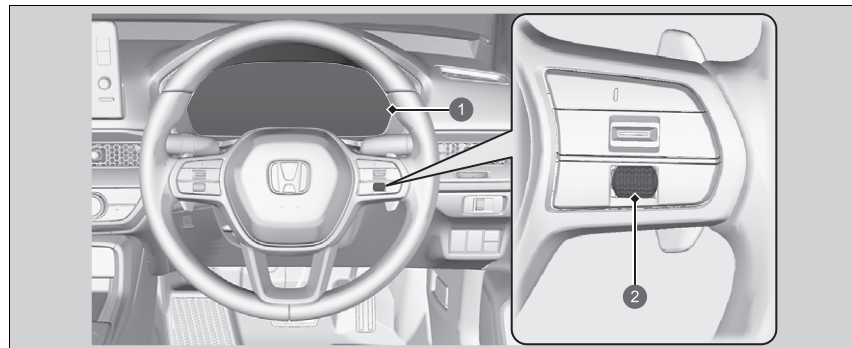
You can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by pressing the right selector wheel.

➤ Refer to the Navigation System Manual

* Not available on all models

■ Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.



- ① Driver Information Interface
- ② Right Selector Wheel

▣ Driver Attention Monitor

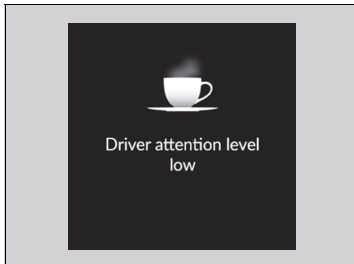
The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive. Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.



When you select Driver Attention Monitor on the driver information interface, bars on it light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

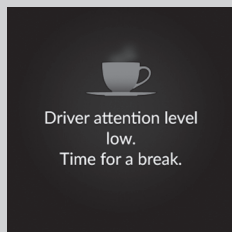
☑ **Switching the Display** P. 147

① Level



If two bars light up, the **Driver attention level low** message will appear.

Latin American and Philippine models



Except Latin American and Philippine models



If one bar lights up, the **Driver attention level low. Time for a break.*¹/Driver attention level low. Take a rest*²** message

will appear, a beep will sound, and the steering wheel will vibrate.

If this message appears, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.

The message will disappear when the right selector wheel is rolled or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.

If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the message will appear again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.

The message does not appear when the travelling time is 30 minutes or less.

*1 : Latin American and Philippine models

*2 : Except Latin American and Philippine models

■ The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:

- The power system is turned off.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

■ For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

- The vehicle must be travelling above 40 km/h.
- The electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances:

- The steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active.
 ➤ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 551
- The condition of the road is poor; e.g., the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- It is windy.
- The driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner, such as changing lanes or accelerating.

■ Customizing

You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile And Audible Alert**, **Tactile Alert**^{*1}/**Tactile alert only**^{*2} or **OFF**.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

■ Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

➤ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 51

*1: Latin American and Philippine models

*2: Except Latin American and Philippine models

☒ For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

The bars on the driver information interface remain greyed-out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, and parking sensor system*, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:

- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



- 1 Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System
- 2 Area Info for CMBS
- 3 Area Info for the Parking Sensor System*
- 4 Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and Status Info
- 5 Parking Sensor System Icon and Status Info*
- 6 CMBS Icon and Status Info

Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn each system on or off, first press the right selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.

- **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 523
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 509
- **Parking Sensor System*** P. 582

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.

- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)*** P. 122
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)*** P. 122
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)*** P. 122
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)*** P. 122
- **Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator*** P. 122
- **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 123
- **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)*** P. 107

Models with parking sensor system

Even when the parking sensor system icon is green, if the **Rear Sensor Setting** is turned off, the rear parking sensor will not operate when reversing.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

- **Customized Features** P. 303

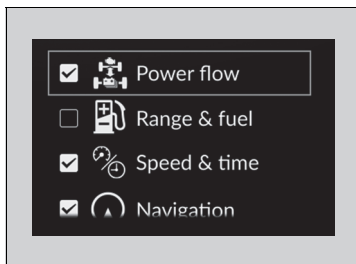
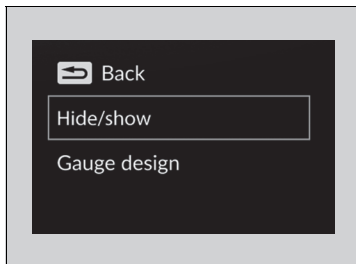
Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

- **Customized Features** P. 401

Customize Display

■ Arrange content on the right side area

You can choose which contents to display on the right side area.



1. Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Customize display** on the driver information interface.
2. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the right selector wheel.
3. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll between contents, then press the right selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

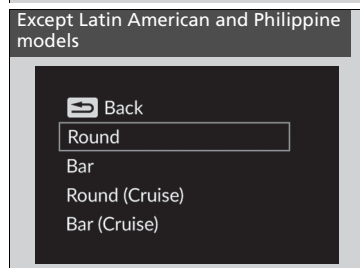
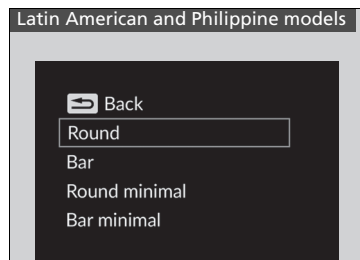
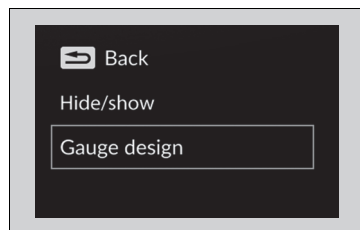
► Arrange content on the right side area

Contents that are grey cannot be removed from the right side area.

When you customize settings, shift to **[P]**.

■ Change gauge design

You can change the gauge design.



*1 : Latin American and Philippine models

*2 : Except Latin American and Philippine models

⌘ Change gauge design

When using the **Round minimal***¹/**Round (Cruise)***² or **Bar minimal***¹/**Bar (Cruise)***² gauge design, a simplified display is used when ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation.

1. Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Customize display** on the driver information interface.
2. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Gauge design**, then press the right selector wheel.
3. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the right selector wheel.

■ Warnings

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

⌘ Warnings

If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the right selector wheel to see other warnings.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Clock	168
Locking and Unlocking the Doors	
Key	169
Low Keyless Remote/Card Key* Signal Strength.....	172
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside	173
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside	182
Childproof Door Locks	184
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*	185
Opening and Closing the Boot	186

Security System	
Immobilizer System	188
Security System Alarm.....	189
Windows	190
Sunroof*	194
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel	
POWER Button.....	196
Turn Signals	199
Lights.....	200
Auto High-Beam*	204
Wipers and Washers	207
Rear Demister Button	209

Models with A-type meter	
Brightness Control	210
Models with B-type meter	
Brightness Control	211
Adjusting the Steering Wheel	212
Mirrors	
Interior Rearview Mirror	213
Power Door Mirrors	214
Seats	216
Interior Convenience Items	226
Climate Control System	238

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Clock Setup** P. 262

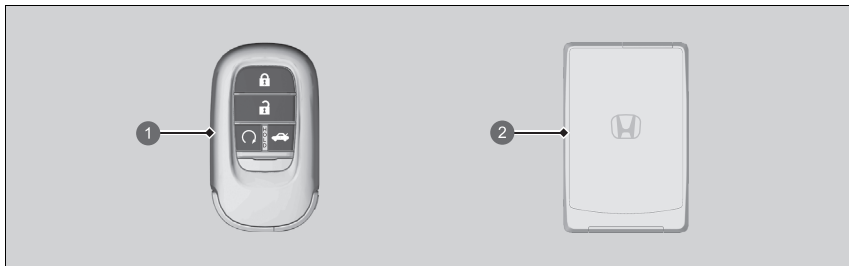
Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Clock Setup** P. 357

Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys:



① Keyless Remote

② Card Key*

Use the keys to start and stop the power system, lock and unlock all the doors, and fuel fill door.

* Not available on all models

Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

➤ **Immobilizer System** P. 188

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust, and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except to replace the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the power system may not activate, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

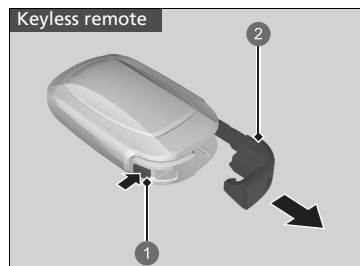
You can remotely turn the power system on using the remote engine start.

➤ **Remote Engine Start** P. 463

Continued

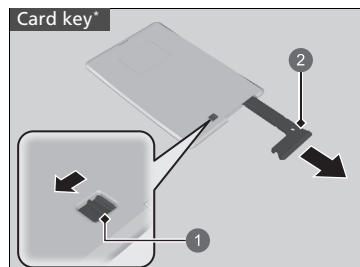
■ Built-in Key

The built-in key can be used to unlock the doors when the keyless remote or card key* battery becomes weak and the power door unlock operation is disabled.



- ① Release Button
- ② Built-in Key

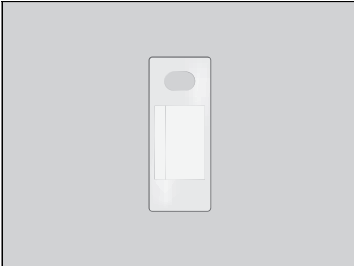
To remove the built-in key, push the release button and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.



- ① Release Knob
- ② Built-in Key

To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the card key until it clicks.

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

▣ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Remote/Card Key* Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote or card key* to activate the power system; lock and unlock all the doors and the fuel fill door, and open the boot.

In the following cases, activating the power system, locking/unlocking the doors/fuel fill door, or opening the boot may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote or card key* together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote or card key*.
- The card key* is in a cover or case that blocks radio waves.

Low Keyless Remote/Card Key* Signal Strength

Communication between the keyless remote or card key* and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote or card key* battery.

Battery life is about 2^{*1} or 1.5^{*2} years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote or card key* is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

Keyless remote

It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off.

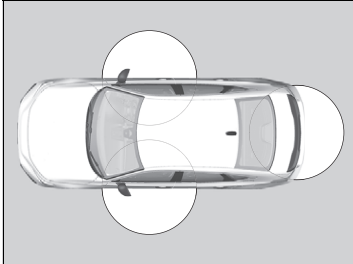
If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.

*1 : Keyless remote

*2 : Card key

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote or card key*, you can lock/unlock the doors, fuel fill door, and open the boot. You can lock/unlock the doors and fuel fill door within a radius of about 80 cm from the outside door handle or boot release button.

* Not available on all models

Continued

▣ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors relocked: The light goes off immediately.

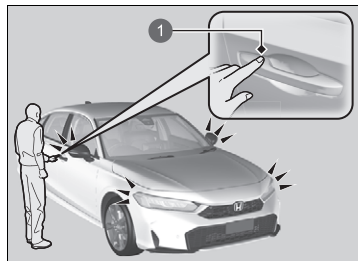
➤ **Interior Lights** P. 226

▣ Using the Keyless Access System

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and boot will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

■ Locking the doors and boot



① Door Lock Sensor

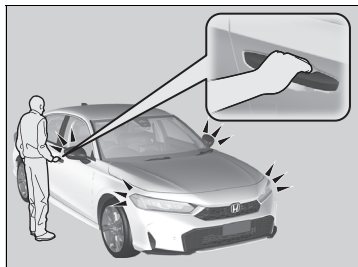
Touch the door lock sensor on the front door.

- All the doors and boot lock and the security system sets.
- Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds once.

▣ Using the Keyless Access System

- Do not leave the keyless remote or card key* in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote or card key*, you can lock/unlock the doors while someone else with the keyless remote or card key* is within range.
- The door may be locked or unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote or card key* is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the keyless remote or card key* if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote or card key* may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

■ Unlocking the doors and boot



Latin American models

Grab the driver's door handle:

- ▶ The driver's door and fuel fill door unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

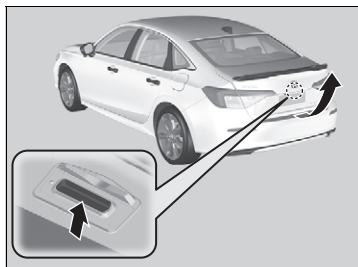
Grab the front passenger's door handle:

- ▶ All doors and fuel fill door unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Except Latin American models

Grab the front door handle:

- ▶ All doors and fuel fill door unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.



Press the boot release button:

- ▶ The boot unlocks and opens.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds once.

❑ **Using the Boot Release Button** P. 187

▶▶ Using the Keyless Access System

The light flash, beep, and door unlock mode* settings can be customized.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

❑ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**

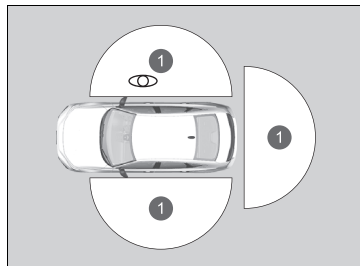
P. 312

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

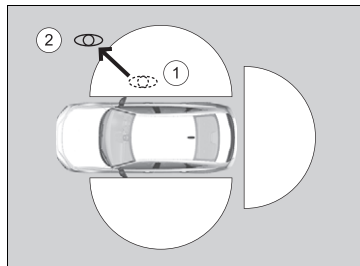
❑ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**

P. 412

* Not available on all models



- ① The activation range of the auto lock function is about 1.5 m.



■ Locking the doors (Walk away auto lock)

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors closed while carrying the keyless remote or card key*, the doors and fuel fill door will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors are closed, and the keyless remote or card key* is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle or boot release button. Exit the vehicle while carrying keyless remote or card key* and close door(s).

1. While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.

► The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

2. Carry the keyless remote or card key* beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.

► Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors and fuel fill door will then lock.

► Locking the doors (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the audio/information screen.

If you set the auto lock function to ON using the audio/information screen, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

P. 312

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

P. 412

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote or card key* will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled.

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.
► The beeper sounds, and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote or card key* on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

⌘ Locking the doors (Walk away auto lock)

Under the following circumstances, the auto-lock function will not activate:

- The keyless remote or card key* is inside the vehicle.
► The beeper will not sound.
- The keyless remote or card key* is taken out of its operational range before all the doors are closed.
► The beeper will sound.

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless remote or card key* is inside the vehicle.
- A door or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote or card key* is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

Auto lock function operation stop beeper

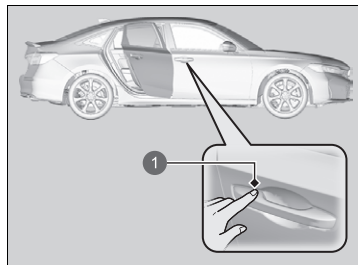
After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote or card key* is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote or card key* is put inside the boot.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote or card key*. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

* Not available on all models

■ Lock Presetting



1 Door Lock Sensor

The vehicle will automatically lock after you lock the doors in advance then close the doors.

Activate lock presetting after closing the driver's door.

1. Touch the driver's door lock sensor or press the lock button on the remote transmitter.
 - Alert sounds and lock presetting is activated.
2. Close all the doors.
 - Some exterior lights flash and a beeper sounds when vehicle locks.

Make sure the doors are locked before moving away from the vehicle.

►► Lock Presetting

Lock presetting will be reset if a door is opened before the vehicle has locked completely.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

You can turn this function on and off.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

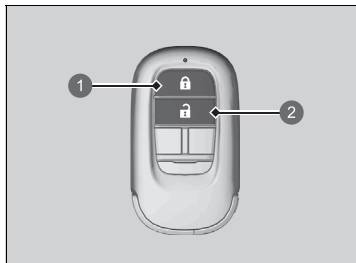
P. 312

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

P. 412

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



- ① Lock Button
- ② Unlock Button

■ Locking the doors

Press the lock button.

Once:

- Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and fuel fill door lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

- Some exterior lights flash, the beeper sounds, and verifies the security system is set.

■ Unlocking the doors

Latin American models

Press the unlock button.

Once:

- Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door and fuel fill door unlock.

Twice:

- The remaining doors and boot unlock.

Except Latin American models

Press the unlock button.

- Some exterior lights flash twice, and all the doors, boot, and fuel fill door unlock.

✕ Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low. If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

✕ Replacing the Remote Battery P. 639

You can customize the door unlock mode* setting.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

✕ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

P. 312

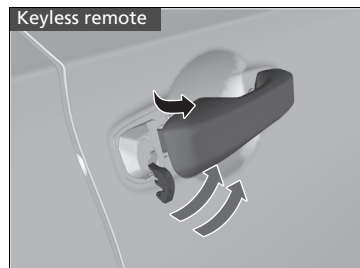
Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

✕ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

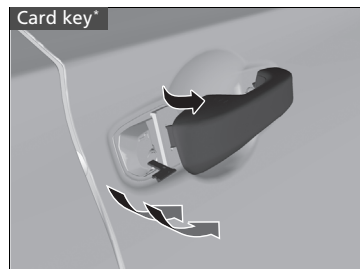
P. 412

■ Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the unlock function of the keyless remote or card key* does not work, use the built-in key instead. The keyhole is behind the door handle.



Pull and hold the outer handle.
Insert the built-in key into the key cylinder from below the handle and then turn it.



►► Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

■ Except Latin American models

When you unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors unlock at the same time.

■ Latin American models

When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turning the key a second time within a few seconds does not unlock the remaining doors.

■ Latin American and Southeast Asian models

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

You can customize the door unlock mode* setting.

■ Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

P. 312

■ Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

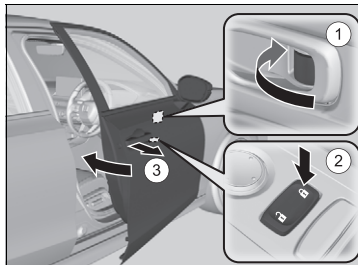
P. 412

If the lock function of the keyless remote or card key* does not work, refer to the following.

► Locking a Door Without Using a Key P. 181

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

The doors cannot be locked when the keyless remote or card key* is inside the vehicle.

⌘ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

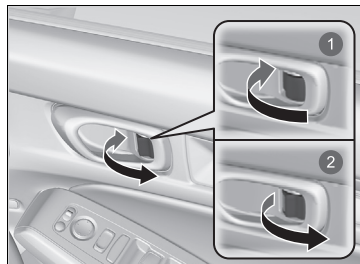
When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

* Not available on all models

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



- ① To Lock
- ② To Unlock

■ **Locking a door**
Push the lock tab forward.

■ **Unlocking a door**
Pull the lock tab rearward.

►► Using the Lock Tab

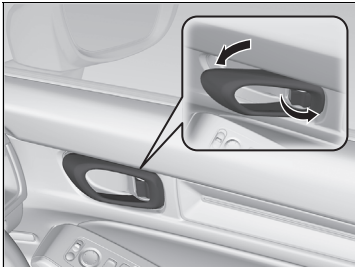
■ Except Latin American models

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the boot, fuel fill door lock/unlock at the same time.

■ Latin American models

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors, the boot, and fuel fill door lock at the same time. When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door and fuel fill door will unlock.

■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



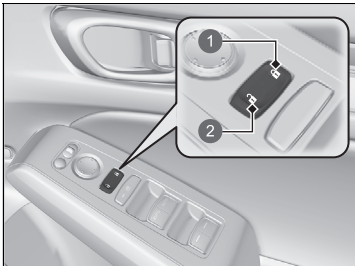
Pull the driver's door or passenger's door* inner handle.

- The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Except Latin American models

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the boot.

- ① To Lock
- ② To Unlock

* Not available on all models

⌘ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The driver's door or passenger's door* inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a driver's door or passenger's door* inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

► **Childproof Door Locks** P. 184

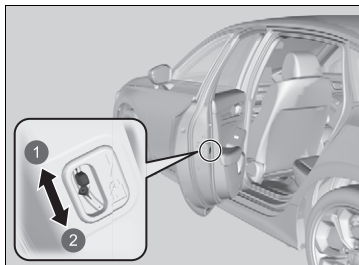
⌘ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock either of the front doors using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and fuel fill door lock/unlock at the same time.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



① Unlock

② Lock

Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

⌘ Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

Your vehicle locks all doors or unlocks all doors/the driver's door automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

■ Auto Door Unlocking

■ Park unlock mode

Brazilian models

The driver's door unlocks when the transmission is put into **[P]** with the brake pedal depressed.

The settings can be changed to unlock all doors.

Southeast Asian models

All doors unlock when the transmission is put into **[P]** with the brake pedal depressed.

►► Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the audio/information screen.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➔ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

P. 312

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➔ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

P. 412

* Not available on all models

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Boot

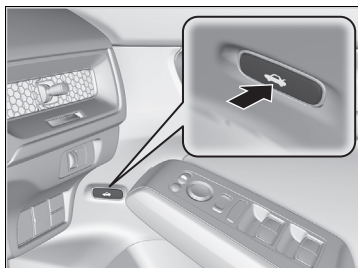
■ Closing the boot

Keep the boot lid closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

➤ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 103

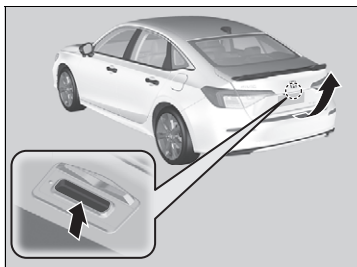
Using the Boot Opener



Press and hold the boot opener on the driver's door to unlock and open the boot.

➤ **If You Cannot Open the Boot** P. 713

Using the Boot Release Button



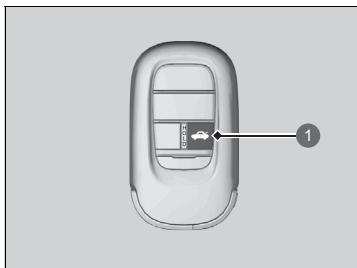
Push up the release button on the boot lid after the doors are unlocked.

❏ **If You Cannot Open the Boot** P. 713

Even if the boot is locked, you can open the boot if you carry the keyless remote or card key*.

► Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds once.

Using the Remote Transmitter



1 Boot Release Button

Press the boot release button for approximately one second to unlock and open the boot.

⌘ Using the Boot Release Button

- If you forget the keyless remote or card key* inside, the beeper will sound and the boot will not close.
- A person who is not carrying the keyless remote or card key* can unlock the boot if a person who is carrying it is within range.
- If the beeper sounds after you close the boot, move the keyless remote or card key* away from the boot and close again.
- The keyless remote or card key* may not operate if it is too close to the boot.

⌘ Using the Remote Transmitter

If the driver's door is locked, the boot will automatically lock when you close it. Otherwise, you will have to lock it manually.

* Not available on all models

Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the power system.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **POWER** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **POWER** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems, emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the boot, bonnet or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the boot or doors are opened with the key*, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the key*, remote transmitter, or keyless access system, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and boot are locked from outside with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key*, remote transmitter, or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

* Not available on all models

▣ Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.

The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the boot with the boot opener.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may sound once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key*, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

▣ Latin American and Southeast Asian models

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Brazilian models

The power windows can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Opening either front door cancels this function.

Indonesian, Malaysian, Philippine, Thai, and Vietnamese models

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Opening either front door cancels this function.

Models for other countries

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Closing driver's door cancels this function.

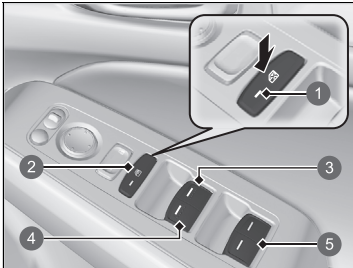
Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



- ❶ Indicator
- ❷ Power Window Lock Button
- ❸ Driver's Window Switch
- ❹ Front Passenger's Window Switch
- ❺ Rear Passenger's Window Switch*

■ Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Automatic operation

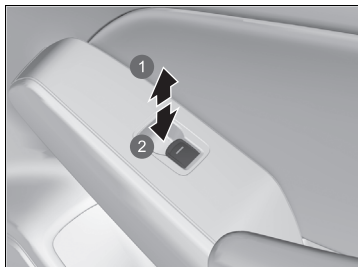
To open: Push the switch down firmly.

To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

* Not available on all models

■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function *



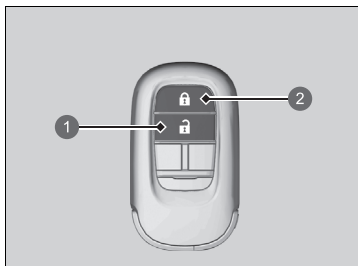
- ① Close
- ② Open

To open: Push the switch down.

To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote *



- ① Unlock Button
- ② Lock Button

To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

To close*: Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

» Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote *

Models with sunroof

If you open/close the windows with the remote, the sunroof will open/close automatically along with them.

You can turn off or on to open the windows with the remote setting using the audio/information screen.

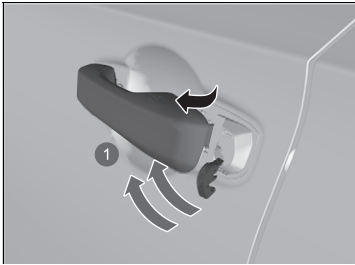
Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**
P. 312

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**
P. 412

■ Opening the Windows with the Key*



1 Open

Pull and hold the outer handle. Insert the key into the key cylinder completely from below the handle.

Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

☒ Opening the Windows with the Key*

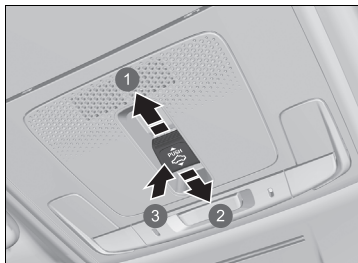
If you open the windows with the key, the sunroof will open automatically along with them.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Sunroof

You can operate the sunroof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the sunroof.

■ Using the Sunroof Switch



- ① Open
- ② Close
- ③ Tilt

■ Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.

To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunroof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunroof midway, pull or push the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Tilting the sunroof up

To tilt: Push on the centre of the sunroof switch.

To close: Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

☞ Sunroof*

⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the sunroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the sunroof before opening or closing it.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

NOTICE

Opening the sunroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the sunroof panel or motor.

Brazilian models

The sunroof can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Opening either front door cancels this function.

Except Brazilian models

The sunroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Closing driver's door cancels this function.

☒ Sunroof*

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the sunroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the sunroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

You can use the remote transmitter or the key* to operate the sunroof.

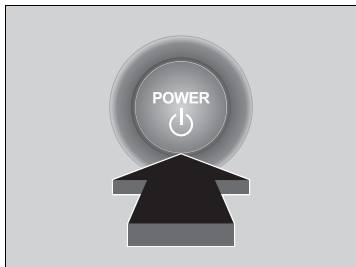
☒ **Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote*** P. 192

☒ **Opening the Windows with the Key***
P. 193

* Not available on all models

POWER Button

■ Changing the Power Mode



If you carry the keyless remote or card key* and press **POWER** button without depressing the brake pedal, the power mode will change in this order: VEHICLE OFF→ACCESSORY→ON→VEHICLE OFF.

VEHICLE OFF:

Vehicle power is turned OFF.

ACCESSORY:

The audio system and some accessories can be used.

ON:

All accessories can be used.

▶ POWER Button

If the keyless remote or card key* is set in a storage box or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

When the power mode is set to ON, the power mode will change to ACCESSORY if the **POWER** button is pressed while the transmission is in a position other than [P].

Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in **[P]** and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the 12-volt battery.

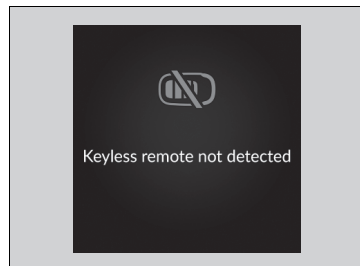
Except Latin American models

When in this mode: The steering wheel does not lock. You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system. Press the **POWER** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is in ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

■ Keyless Remote/Card Key* Reminder



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote or card key* from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote or card key* in another location.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

⌘ Keyless Remote/Card Key* Reminder

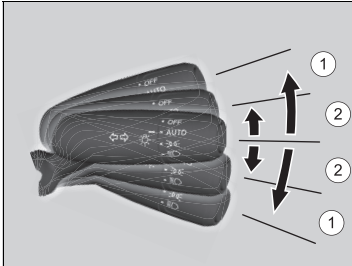
When the keyless remote or card key* is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote or card key* is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been turned on, you can no longer change the **POWER** button mode or restart the power system. Always make sure that the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.

Removing the keyless remote or card key* from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote or card key* on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to sound. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also sound even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ ①: Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

■ ②: One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

- ▶ If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

▶▶ Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

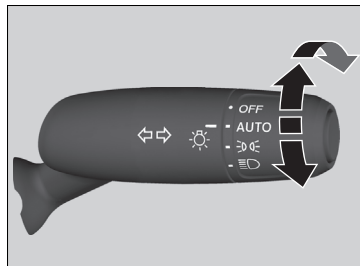
▶ Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators

P. 116

Lights

■ Headlights/Position Lights


The lights will turn on automatically depending on the ambient brightness. They can also be switched on and off manually.




The exterior lights will switch on automatically when the light switch is set to **AUTO** while the power mode is in ON.

■ Manual operation

Headlights/position lights:

Turn the light switch to .

Position lights:

Turn the light switch to .

Headlight/position lights off:

Turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it while the shift lever is in **P** or the parking brake is applied.

► The lights will come back on automatically when:

- The light switch is turned to **OFF** again and released.
- The transmission is taken out of **P** and the parking brake is released.

►► Lights

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.



► Lights On Indicator P. 116

The headlights are suitable for only left-hand or only right-hand drive. When driving on roads with different traffic rules, the headlight beam must be adjusted.

► Adjusting Headlight Distribution P. 504

►► Headlights/Position Lights

When the position lights are on, the tail and rear licence plate lights will also switch on.

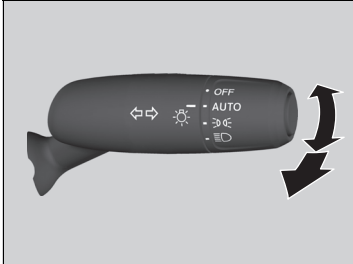
When the light switch is turned to  or  and the power is turned to OFF, a beeper sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the light switch is turned to **AUTO** and the ambient light levels are low, the headlights and position lights will switch on if you unlock a door. They will switch off when the door is locked.

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ High Beams

When the headlights are on, push the lever forward. Pull the lever back to return to low beams.



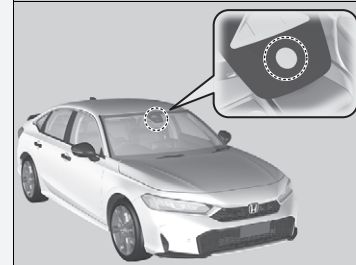
■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back to switch on the high beams.

- ▶ Release the lever to return to low beams.

▶▶ Headlights/Position Lights

The light sensor is in the location shown below.



Do not leave the lights on when the power system is off because it will cause the 12-volt battery to discharge.

■ Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the keyless remote or card key* with you, and close the driver's door.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

* Not available on all models

» Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**. The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**

P. 312

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**

P. 412

» Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**

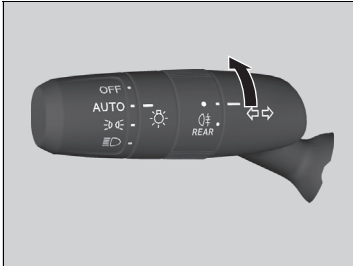
P. 312

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**

P. 412

■ Fog Light *



Can be used when the headlights are on.

■ Daytime Running Lights

The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO**.
- The ambient light is bright.

While the vehicle is stopped, if you turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it, the daytime running lights will turn off. When the transmission is taken out of **[P]** and the parking brake is released, the lights will come on again. Otherwise, if the light switch is once more turned to **OFF**, the lights will come on again.

* Not available on all models

⌘ Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights and the position lights share the same light source.

Daytime running lights are brighter than the position lights.

The daytime running lights will not switch on if the position lights have been turned on manually.

Auto High-Beam*

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

How to Use the Auto High-Beam


■ Activating the system

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and automatically switches between the high beam and low beam, depending on the situation.



- ① Auto High-Beam Indicator
- ② Light Switch

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to  then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

►► Auto High-Beam*

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise light sources varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

► Front Wide View Camera P. 568

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker, or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When the auto high-beam indicator comes on, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

High beam

All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 30 km/h or more.
- There are no preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are few street lights on the road ahead.



Low beam

One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less.
- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.

⌘ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. If the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from a preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources like street lights, electric billboards, and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam on when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.


■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.


Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it or push the lever forward to the high beam position.

- To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to  and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to .

- To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

►► Auto High-Beam*

How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System

You can turn the auto high-beam system on and off.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

P. 312

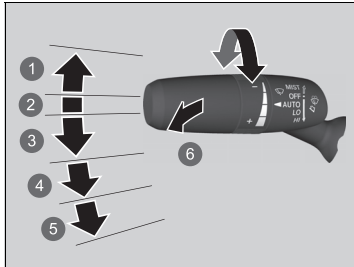
Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

P. 412

Wipers and Washers

■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



- ❶ **MIST**
- ❷ **OFF**
- ❸ **AUTO**
- ❹ **LO**: Low speed wipe
- ❺ **HI**: High speed wipe
- ❻ **Washer**

The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ **MIST**

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ **Wiper switch (OFF, AUTO, LO, HI)**

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ **Washer**

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, and then stop.

►► Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

When lifting the wiper arms, move them into the maintenance position before lifting them.

► **Lifting the Wiper Arms** P. 626

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

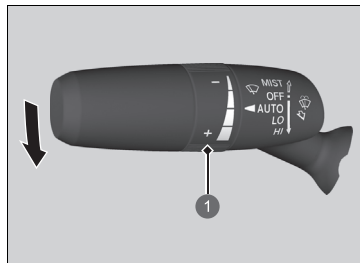
NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.

Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the buildup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers



① Adjustment Ring

- ☐: Low Sensitivity
- ⊕: High Sensitivity

When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

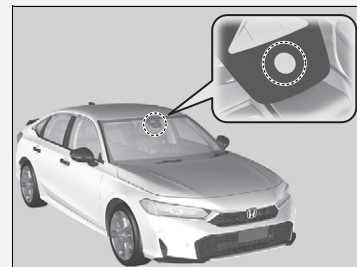
The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stop in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ Auto sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

► Automatic Intermittent Wipers

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.

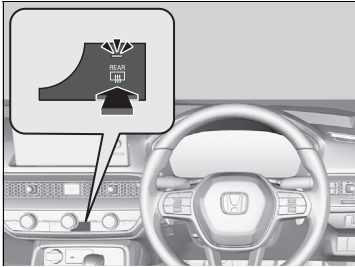


NOTICE

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Rear Demister Button



Press the rear demister button to demist the rear window when the power mode is in ON.

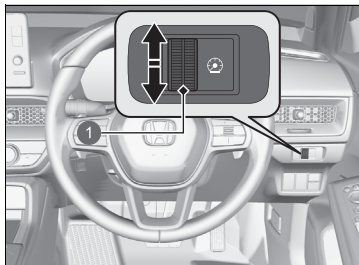
The rear demister automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

⌘ Rear Demister Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the power system is stopped. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

Models with A-type meter

Brightness Control



① Control Dial

When the power mode is in ON, you can use the brightness control dial to adjust instrument panel brightness.

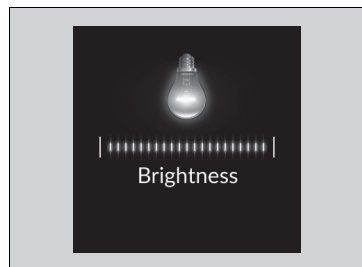
Brighten: Turn the dial up.

Dim: Turn the dial down.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the driver information interface while you are adjusting it.



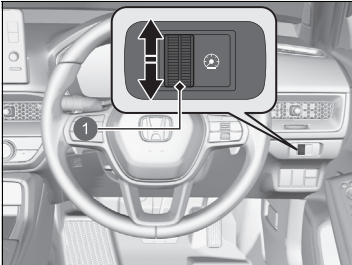
►► Brightness Control

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The position lights are turned on and it is dark outside.

Models with B-type meter

Brightness Control



① Control Dial

The brightness of the gauge is automatically adjusted depending on the ambient brightness.

- The brightness becomes darker when the ambient light is dark.
- The brightness becomes brighter when the ambient light is bright.

■ Adjusting the brightness manually

When the power mode is in ON, you can use the brightness control dial to adjust instrument panel brightness.

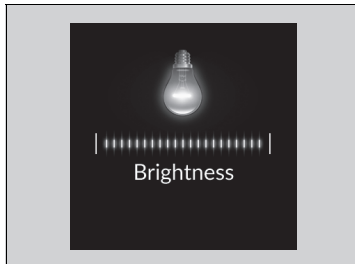
Brighten: Turn the dial up.

Dim: Turn the dial down.

- ▶ You can change the setting even when the ambient lighting is bright, but the brightness of the gauge won't change.

■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the driver information interface while you are adjusting it.

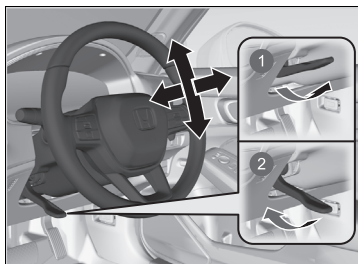


▶▶ Brightness Control

Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



- 1 To lock
- 2 To adjust

1. While the vehicle is stopped, push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
 - The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
 - Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
 - After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠ WARNING

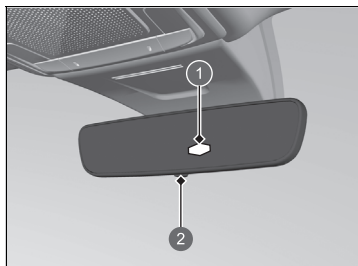
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror



- 1 Sensor
- 2 AUTO Button

When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. Press the AUTO button to turn this function on and off. When activated, the AUTO indicator comes on.

Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

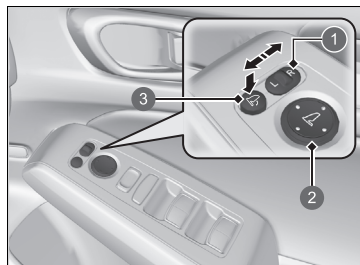
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

➡ **Front Seats** P. 216

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in **R**.

Power Door Mirrors



- ❶ Selector Switch
- ❷ Adjustment Switch
- ❸ Folding Button

You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ Mirror position adjustment

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ Folding door mirrors

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function

■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the keyless remote, or touch the door lock sensor on front door.

- ▶ The mirrors start folding in automatically.

■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

- ▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

⌘ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**

P. 312

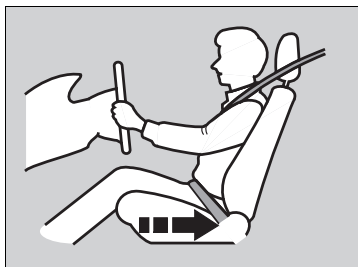
Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**

P. 412

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

Front Seats



Move back to allow sufficient space.

Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Front Seats

⚠ WARNING

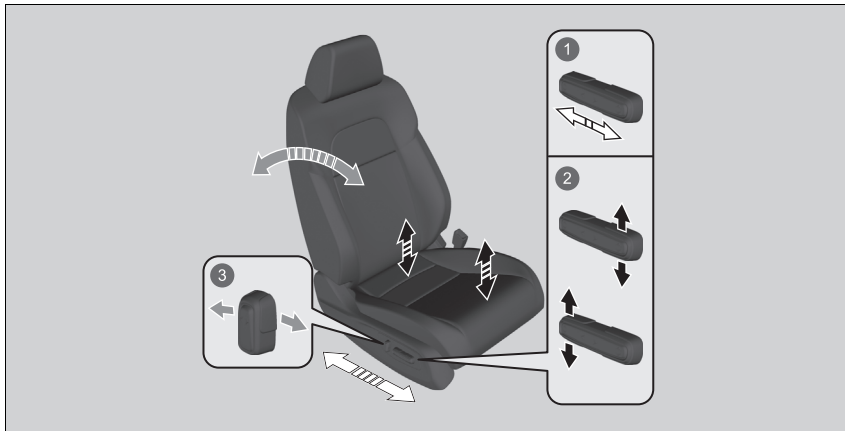
Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

■ Adjusting the front power seat(s)*



1 Horizontal Position Adjustment

Slide the lever to move the seat.

2 Height Adjustment (Driver's side only)

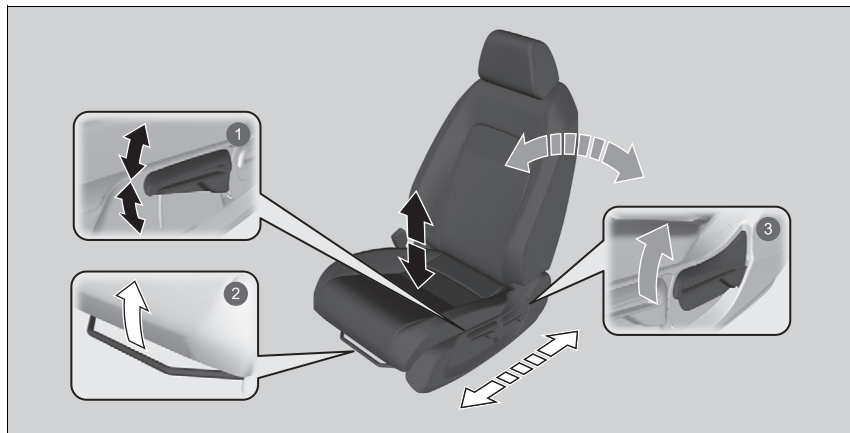
Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

3 Seat-back Angle Adjustment

Push forward or pull backward the lever to change the angle.

* Not available on all models

■ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*



① Height Adjustment (Driver's side only)

Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

② Horizontal Position Adjustment

Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

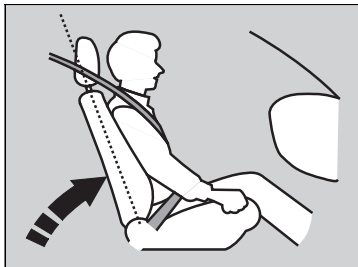
③ Seat-back Angle Adjustment

Pull up the lever to change the angle.

►► Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

►► Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠ WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

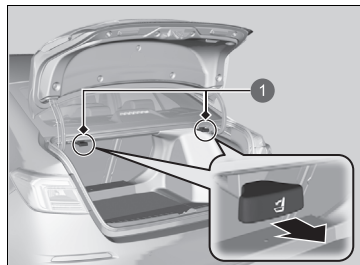
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Rear Seats

Folding Down the Rear Seats



1 Release Lever



1. Pull the release lever in the boot to release the lock.

2. Fold the seat-back down.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.

Folding Down the Rear Seats

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the boot.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the boot lid open.

⚠ Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 103

To lock the seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

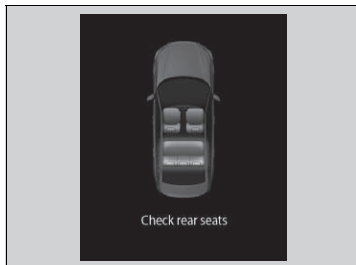
Make sure all items in the boot or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

Remove any items from the rear seat cushion and floor before you fold down the rear seat.

The front seat(s) must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the rear seats as they fold down.

Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you of the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the power mode was set to ON.



A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

⌘ Rear Seat Reminder

When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.

The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.

The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seats.

You can turn off the notification setting.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**

P. 312

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings**

P. 412

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the power system is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

► Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

WARNING

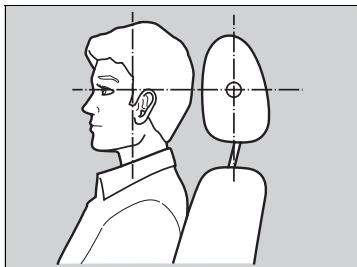
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

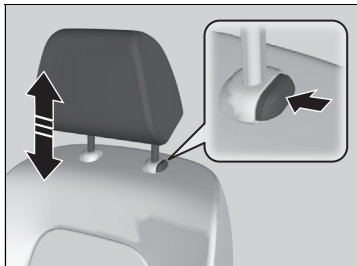
Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions



Position head in the centre of the head restraint.



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

To raise the head restraint:

Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

▶▶ Head Restraints

⚠ WARNING

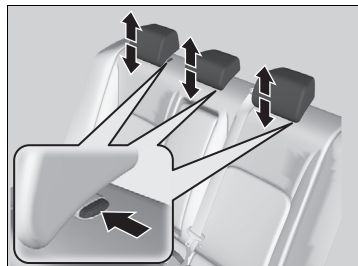
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

■ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in the rear seat should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:

Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

►► Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

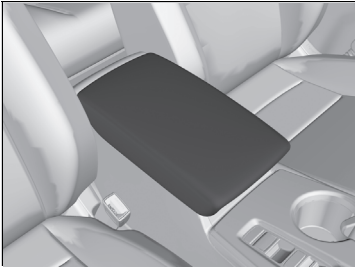
⚠ WARNING

Failure to reinstall or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

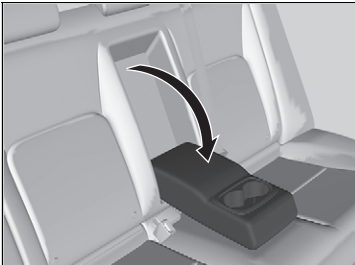
Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console compartment can be used as an armrest.

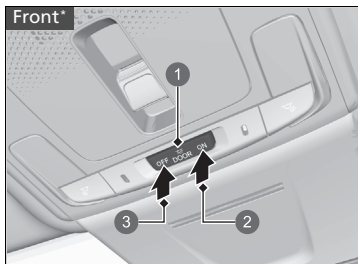
■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest



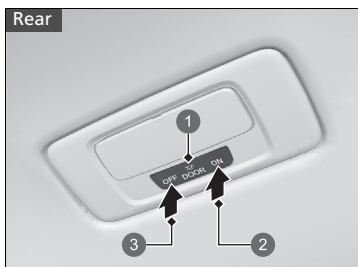
Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches



- 1 Door Activated Position
- 2 On
- 3 Off



- 1 Door Activated Position
- 2 On
- 3 Off

ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- When the driver's door is unlocked.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and turn off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights turn off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

P. 312

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

P. 412

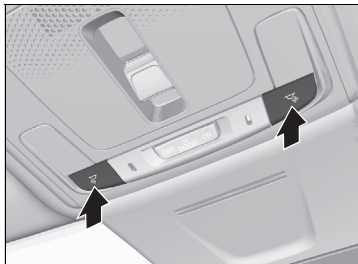
The interior lights turn off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior lights turn off after about 15 minutes.

To avoid draining the 12-volt battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the power system is off.

■ Map Light Switches



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the switches.

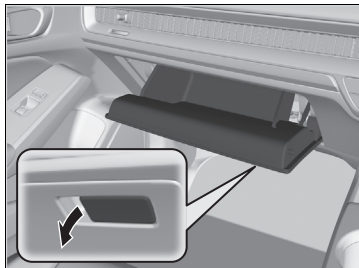
►► Map Light Switches

■ Models with sunroof

When the front interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not turn off when you press the switches.

Storage Items

■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

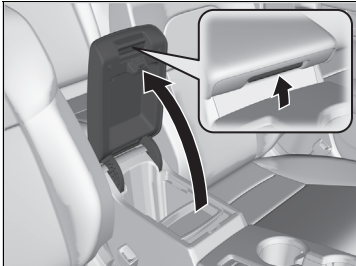
» Glove Box

⚠ WARNING

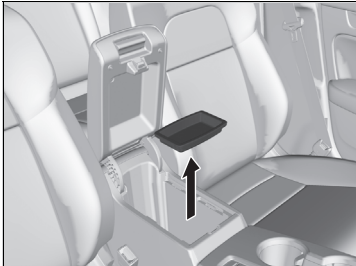
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

■ Console Compartment



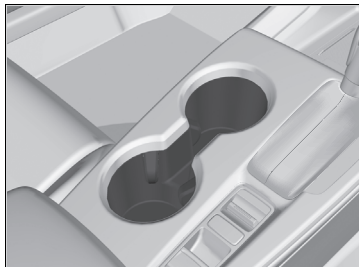
Pull the handle to open the console box.



■ Removable tray

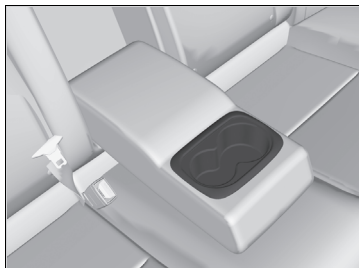
The tray in the console compartment is detachable. To remove the tray, simply pull it up.

■ Beverage Holders



■ Front seat beverage holders

Located in the console between the front seats.



■ Rear seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

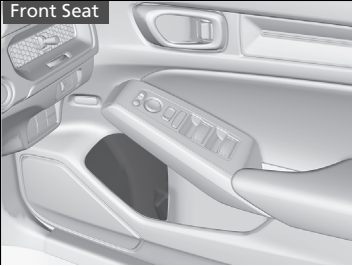
» Beverage Holders

NOTICE

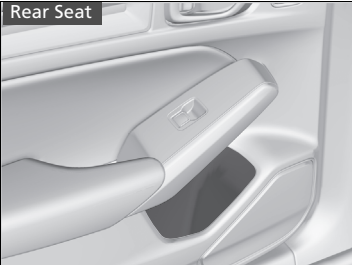
Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

Front Seat



Rear Seat



■ Door beverage holders

Located on both of the front and rear door side pockets.

■ Coat Hook



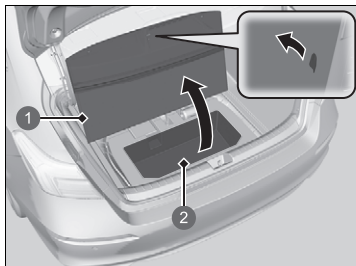
There is a coat hook on the rear driver's side grab handle.

⌘ Coat Hook

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

Models with tyre repair kit

■ Luggage Floor Box



Pull the strap on the floor lid and open the lid.

- ① Floor Lid
- ② Luggage Floor Box

■ Sunglasses Holder*



To open the sunglasses holder, push and release the indent. To close, push it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.

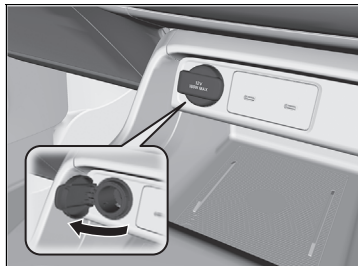
►► Sunglasses Holder*

Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

Other Interior Convenience Items

■ Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power sockets can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.



■ Console panel

Open the cover to use it.

» Accessory Power Socket

NOTICE


Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket.

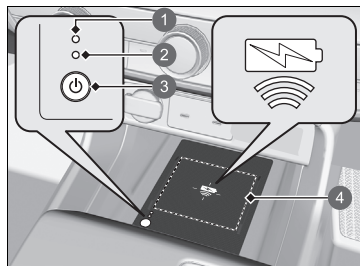
The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.


To prevent 12-volt battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the power system on.


When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

■ Wireless Charger*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the  mark as follows:



- ① Amber Indicator
- ② Green Indicator
- ③  (Power) Button
- ④ Charging Area

1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the  (power) button.
 - When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
 - The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
 - Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.
3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
 - Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

Wireless Charger*

⚠ CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.


- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (e.g., water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzene, or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.

In order to use safely:

- Remove any metal objects from the charge pad before charging a device.
- Do not open the charger case.
- Do not use the charger if it malfunctions. Contact your dealer.

■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simulta- neously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Pick up and reset the device to the centre of the charging area where  is located.
		The temperature of the wireless charger pad increases.	Temporarily suspend charging the device. Wait for the temperature to drop and attempt to charge the device again.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

Wireless Charger*

If the charger interferes with radio communications, attempt to correct the interference:

- Press and hold the switch on the charger for a few seconds to turn off the charger.

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the power system is off. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

* Not available on all models


Wireless Charger*

The wireless charger can support up to 15 W, but the charging rate varies based on the device and other conditions.

NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charge area while charging.

The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also, precision machines such as watches can be affected.

“Qi” and  marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:

- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as a TV station, electric power plant, or petrol station.
- The device has a cover, case, or accessories which are not compatible with wireless charging.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

» Wireless Charger*

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:

- All the doors and the boot are closed
- to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

If the device becomes too hot and its battery protection function activates, it may charge extremely slowly or no longer charge.
The temperature at which the battery protection function activates depends on the device.

* Not available on all models

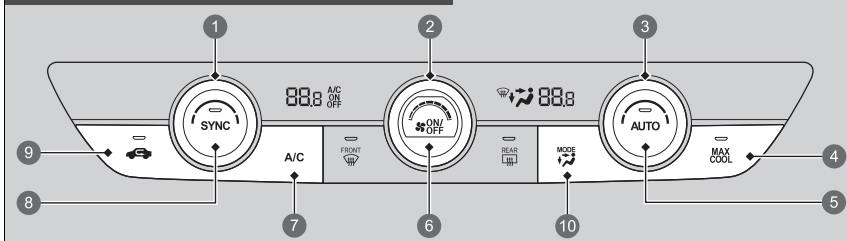
Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

Use the system when the power system is on.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** (on/off) button to cancel.

Models with SYNC button and MAX COOL button



- 1 Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial*¹
- 2 Fan Control Dial
- 3 Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial*¹
- 4 **MAX COOL** Button*¹
- 5 **AUTO** Button*¹
- 6 **ON/OFF** Button
- 7 **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button*¹
- 8 **SYNC** Button*¹
- 9 Recirculation Button*¹
- 10 **MODE** Button*¹
 - Air flows from dashboard vents
 - Air flows from dashboard and floor vents
 - Air flows from floor vents
 - Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents

*¹: Right-hand drive types shown. For the left-hand drive types, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive type.

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The auto button indicator*/**AUTO** indicator* will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

Models without MAX COOL button

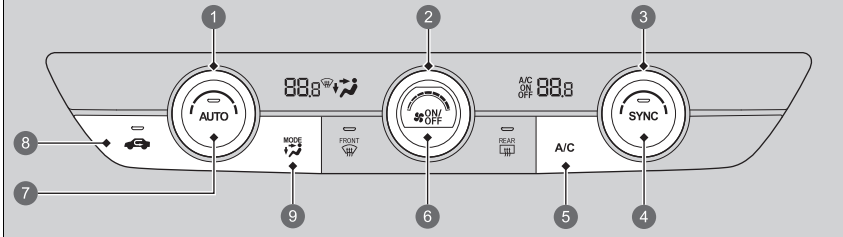
If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

Models with MAX COOL button

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, press the **MAX COOL** button.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Models with SYNC button

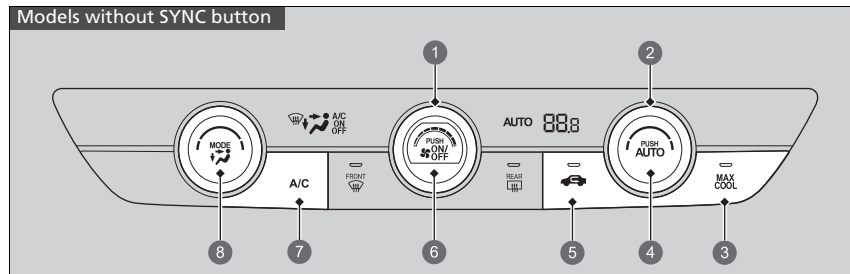


- 1 Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
- 2 Fan Control Dial
- 3 Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
- 4 **SYNC** Button
- 5 **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button
- 6 **ON/OFF** Button
- 7 **AUTO** Button
- 8 Recirculation Button
- 9 **MODE** Button
 - Air flows from dashboard vents
 - Air flows from dashboard and floor vents
 - Air flows from floor vents
 - Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents

►► Using Automatic Climate Control

Pressing the button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.



- 1 Fan Control Dial
- 2 Temperature Control Dial
- 3 **MAX COOL** Button
- 4 **AUTO** Button
- 5 Recirculation Button
- 6 **ON/OFF** Button
- 7 **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button
- 8 **MODE** Control Dial
 - Air flows from dashboard vents
 - Air flows from dashboard and floor vents
 - Air flows from floor vents
 - Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents

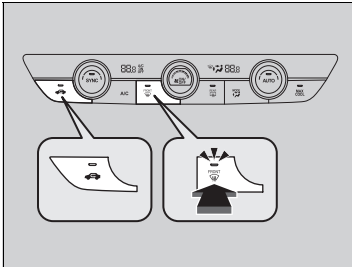
■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.



Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.


Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows




Southeast Asian models

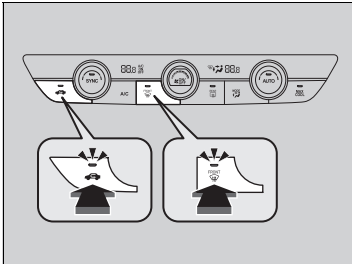
Pressing the  (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on. Press the  button (indicator off) to switch the fresh air mode.

Except Southeast Asian models

Pressing the  button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the  button again to turn off, and the system returns to the previous settings.

To rapidly defrost the windows



1. Press the  button (indicator on).
2. Press the  button (indicator on).

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

To rapidly defrost the windows

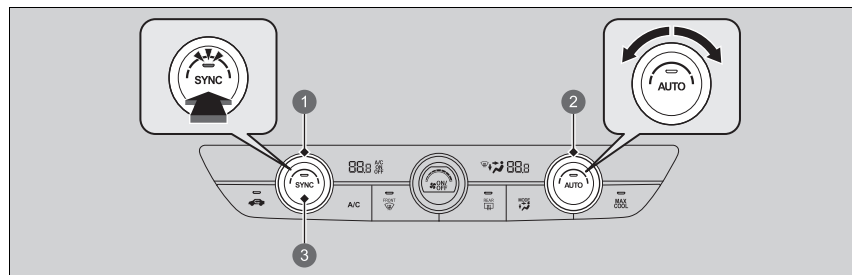
After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

■ Synchronization Mode*

You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
► The system switches to synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.


Press the **SYNC** button or adjust the interior temperature using the passenger's side temperature control dial to return to dual mode.



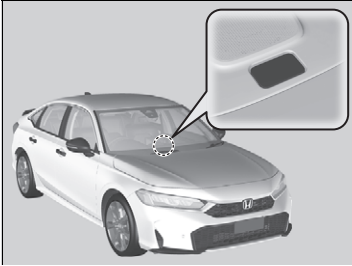
- ① Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
- ② Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
- ③ **SYNC** Button

☒ Synchronization Mode*

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

When you press the  button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with a sensor. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



A close-up, black and white photograph of a car's interior speaker. The speaker is circular with a visible tweeter in the center and is mounted in a dark, possibly plastic, housing. The lighting is dramatic, with a bright highlight on the tweeter and the surrounding area, while the rest of the speaker and the background are in deep shadow.

Features

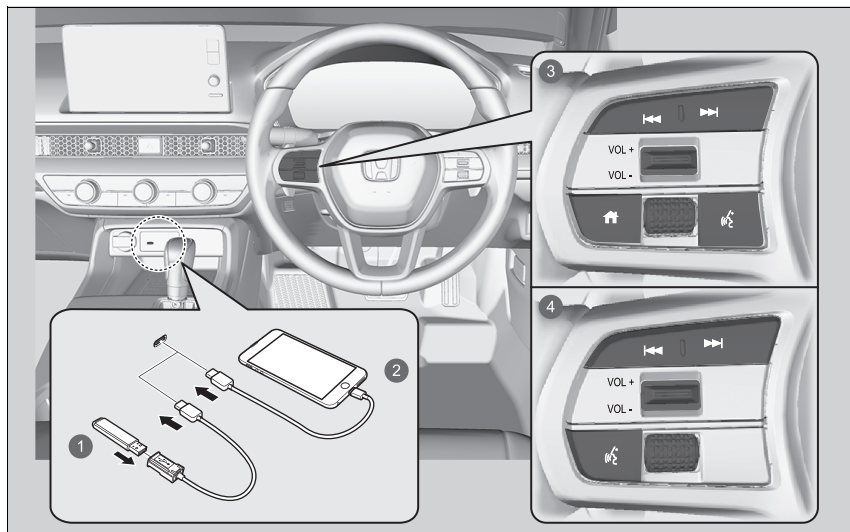
This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

Audio System.....	246
Display Audio without Google built-in	249
Display Audio with Google built-in ...	342
Audio Error Messages	438
General Information on the Audio System	440

About Your Audio System

The audio system features FM/AM radio. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone, *Bluetooth*® devices, and smartphone.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and knobs on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel or the icons on the touchscreen interface.

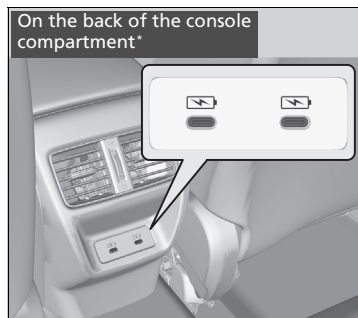
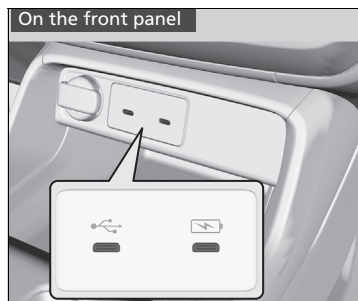


- ① USB Flash Drive
- ② iPod
- ③ Remote Controls*¹
- ④ Remote Controls*²

*1 : Models with A-type meter

*2 : Models with B-type meter

USB Ports



■ USB charging/connector port (USB symbol)

The USB port (3.0A) is for charging devices, playing audio files, and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

- ▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay. For Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

■ USB charging port (Battery icon)

The USB port (3.0A) is only for charging devices.

- ▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to it.

▶▶ USB Ports

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

■ USB charge


The USB port can supply up to 3.0A of power. It does not output 3.0A unless requested by the device. For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise to the radio station you are listening to.

Audio System Theft Protection *

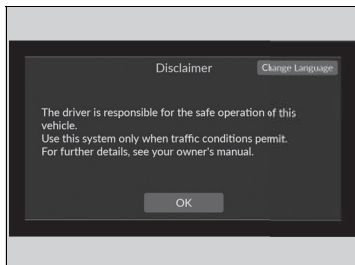
The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the 12-volt battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

■ Reactivating the audio system

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the **VOL/**  **AUDIO** (Volume/Power) knob for more than two seconds.
 - The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognise the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

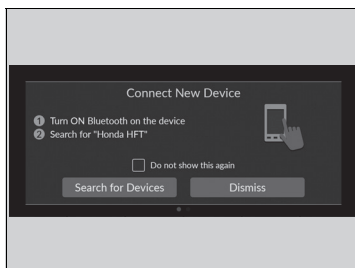
Start Up

The Display Audio starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the following screen about the disclaimer will be displayed.



Select **OK**.

- ▶ If there is no registered device, select **OK** and the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.



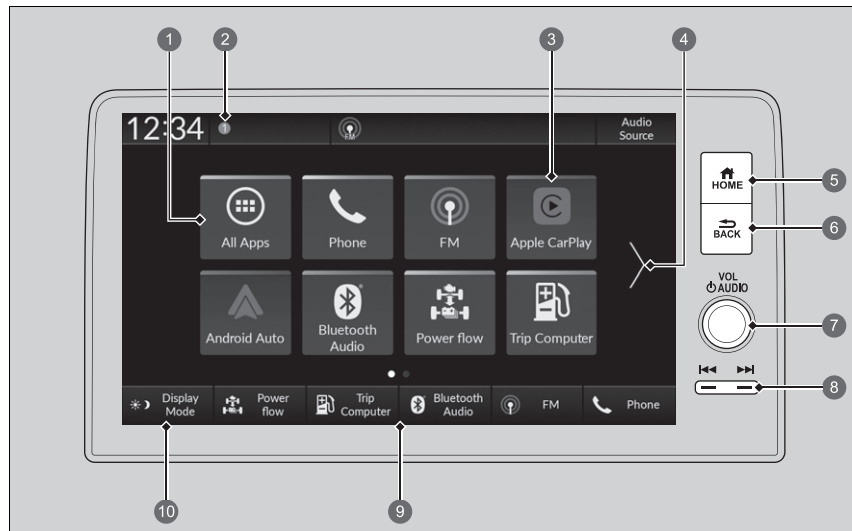
■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
2. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
 - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this Display Audio, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
 - ▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

Basic Operation

■ Audio System Function

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 1 All Apps | 6 (Back) Button |
| 2 Status Icons | 7 VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob |
| 3 App Shortcut Icons | 8 / (Seek/Track) Buttons |
| 4 Arrow | 9 Mode Change Switch Icons |
| 5 (Home) Button | 10 Display Mode Icon |

▶▶ Audio System Function

This screen is shown for the right-hand drive models. For the left-hand drive models, these are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive model.

All Apps: Displays all apps.

Status Icons: Show the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area.

App Shortcut Icons: Display the app shortcut icons.


Arrow: Displays the next pages on the audio/information screen.

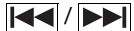


(Home) Button: Presses to go to the home screen.



(Back) Button: Presses to go back to the previous screen.

VOL/  AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob: Turns the audio system on and off and turns to adjust the volume.






(Seek/Track) Buttons: Press to change station, song or file.

Mode Change Switch Icons: Display icons to change the mode directly.



Display Mode Icon: Changes the audio/information screen brightness. Select

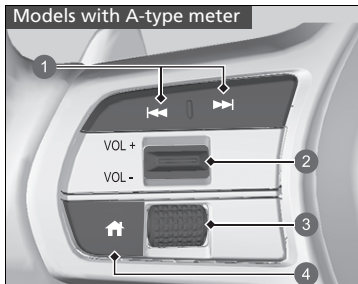


once and select  or  to make an adjustment. Each time you select *1, the mode switches between the Day and Night mode.

*1: Models with A-type meter

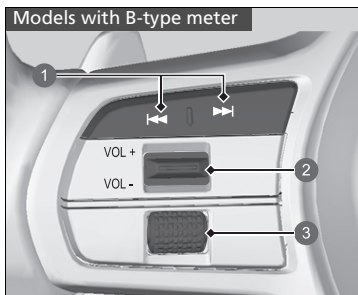
Audio Remote Controls

Models with A-type meter



- ① (Seek/Skip) Buttons
- ② **VOL +** / **VOL -** (Volume) Switch
- ③ Left Selector Wheel
- ④ (Home) Button

Models with B-type meter



- ① (Seek/Skip) Buttons
- ② **VOL +** / **VOL -** (Volume) Switch
- ③ Left Selector Wheel

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Models with A-type meter

Press the (home) button to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

VOL /VOL (Volume) Switch


Press Up: To increase the volume.

Press Down: To decrease the volume.

Models with A-type meter

Left Selector Wheel

- When selecting the audio mode

Press the  (home) button, then roll up or down to select **Audio** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Roll up or down:

To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:

FM/AM/iPod/USB/Bluetooth/Apps (Apple CarPlay/Android Auto)

- Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

Models with B-type meter

Left Selector Wheel

Roll up or down:











To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:

Back/Phone/FM/AM/iPod/USB/Bluetooth/Apps (Apple CarPlay/Android Auto)/

Customize display

- Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

(Seek/Skip) Buttons

- When listening to the radio
 - Press** : To select the next preset radio station.
 - Press** : To select the previous preset radio station.
 - Press and hold** : To select the next strong station.
 - Press and hold** : To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to a wired connection, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth®* Audio, or Smartphone Connection
 - Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.
 - Press** : To skip to the next song.
 - Press** : To go back to the previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
 - Press and hold** : To skip to the next folder.
 - Press and hold** : To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to an iPod:
 - Press and hold** : To skip to the next song.
 - Press and hold** : To go back to the previous song.

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and clock. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.



Audio/Information Screen

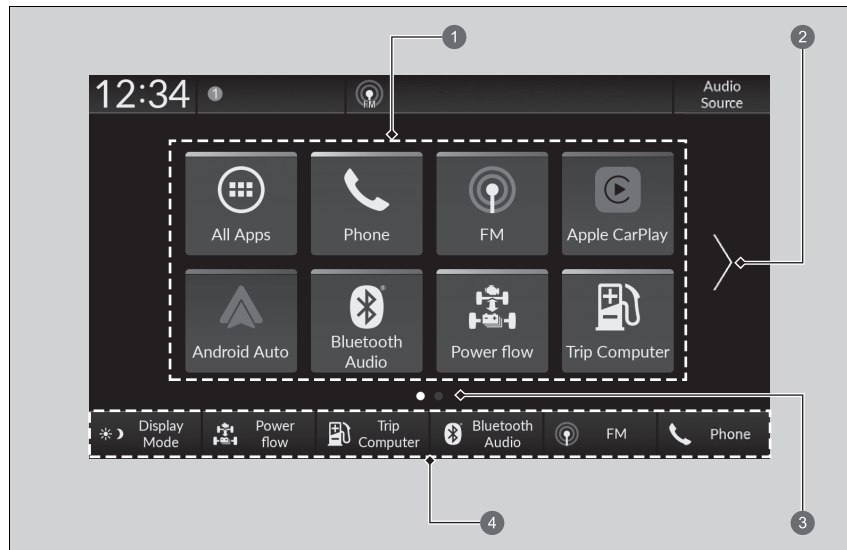
Touchscreen Operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.


► **Customized Features** P. 303

■ App Shortcut Function




- ① App Shortcut Icons
- ② Arrow
- ③ Page Indicator
- ④ Mode Change Switches

■ To move to the next screen

Selecting  or , or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

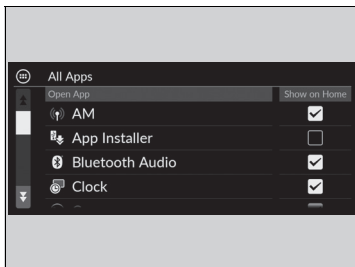
▶▶ App Shortcut Function


You can add up to 6 pages to the home screen.

Press the  button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

■ To add/remove app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added or deleted on the home screen.



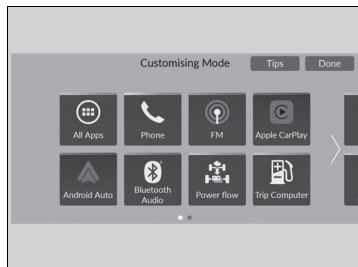
1. Press the  button.
2. Select **All Apps**.
3. Select an app to check or uncheck them.


▶▶ To add/remove app icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

■ To move/remove icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



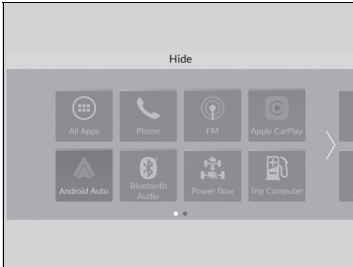
1. Press the  button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
 - The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **Done**.
 - The screen will return to the home screen.


►► To move/remove icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Press the  button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
 - The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the header area.
 - The icon is removed from the home screen.
4. Select **Done**.
 - The screen will return to the home screen.

► To remove icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

■ To shortcut icons on the home screen

You can store up to six icons on the bottom of the home screen.



① Mode Change Switches

1. Press the **HOME** button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
 - The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the bottom of the home screen.
 - The icon is stored on the mode change switch area.
4. Select **Done**.
 - The screen will return to the home screen.


►► To shortcut icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

Status Area

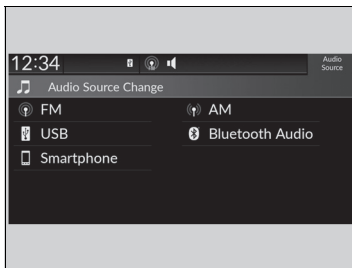
Shows the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area. You can confirm the detail information by selecting these icons.



1. Select the system status icon.
► The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Press the  button or select the system status icon to close the area.

1 System Status Icon

Selecting an Audio Source




You can select an audio source on the audio/information screen.

1. Select **Audio Source** in the header area.
2. Select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.



Clock Setup

■ Adjusting the Clock



You can adjust the time manually and set the wallpaper of the clock in the audio/information screen.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Date & Time**.
5. Select **Set Date & Time**.
6. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust date:

7. Select **Set Date**.
8. Select /.
9. Select **Save** to set the date.



To adjust time:

7. Select **Set Time**.
8. Select /.
9. Select **Save** to set the time.

⌘ Adjusting the Clock

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the header area of the audio/information screen, **Clock** displayed on the home screen, or **All Apps**.

1. Touch the clock on the screen.
The clock screen of the face-type appears.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Date & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.
6. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
7. Adjusting the dates, hours and minutes by selecting /.
8. Select **Save** to set the time.

You can customise the clock display.

⌘ **System** P. 304

■ Clock Wallpaper Setup

■ Import clock wallpaper

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.

📁 **USB Ports** P. 247

2. Press the  button.

3. Select **Clock**.

▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

4. Select **Settings**.

5. Select **Clock Faces**.

6. Select **Add More**.

▶ The image of the pictures stored in the USB flash drive are displayed on the list.

7. Select a desired picture to import.

▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.

8. Select **OK**.

▶ The selected pictures are displayed.


9. Select **Transfer**.

▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.


⌘ Clock Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is less than 10 MB.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the message appears.
- Up to 11 pictures can be imported.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 x 2,304 pixels. If the image size is less than 1,280 x 720, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.


■ Select clock wallpaper

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Clock**.
 - If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select a desired picture to set.
6. Select **Save**.
 - The clock screen which the wallpaper has been set is displayed.

■ Delete clock wallpaper

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Clock**.
 - If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select **Delete Photos**.
6. Select a desired picture to delete.
 - Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
7. Select **OK**.
 - The selected pictures are displayed.
8. Select **Delete**.
 - It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Adjusting the Sound

1. Press the  button.
2. Select an audio source icon.
3. Select **Sound**.

Select an item from the following choices:

- **Bass / Treble:** Treble, Midrange, Bass
- **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**^{*1}: Driver Only, Front Only, Rear Only, Full Vehicle, Balance, Fader
- **Bose Centerpoint**^{*1}: Turns the Bose Centerpoint ON and OFF.
- **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**^{*1}: Sets the amount of volume increase.
- **Balance / Fader**^{*2}: Balance, Fader
- **Speed Volume Compensation**^{*2}: Sets the amount of volume increase.


*1: Models with BOSE AMP

*2: Models with Normal AMP

Adjusting the Sound

The **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**^{*1}/**Speed Volume Compensation**^{*2} adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound by the following procedure.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Sound**.

Audio Zones & Balance / Fader^{*1}

You can change where the sound comes from by selecting one of the speaker options below:

- **Full Vehicle:** All the speakers emit sound.
- **Driver Only:** Only the speaker by the driver's seat emits sound.
- **Front Only:** Only the front speakers emit sound.
- **Rear Only:** Only the rear speakers emit sound.






To reset each setting for **Bass / Treble**, **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**^{*1}, **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**^{*1}, **Balance / Fader**^{*2}, and **Speed Volume Compensation**^{*2}, select **Default** on each setting screen.

Display Setup

You can set the screen brightness.

■ Switching Display Mode Manually


Select **Display Mode**.

- The brightness bar is displayed for a few seconds.
- Select  or  to adjust the brightness.
- Select **Display OFF** to turn off the screen. To turn on the screen, press the  or  button.
- Select *1 to switch between the Day and Night mode.

» Display Setup

You can adjust the screen brightness by sliding or tapping on the brightness bar.

You can also change the screen brightness on the following procedures.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select the setting you want.

To reset the settings, select **Default**.


*1 : Models with A-type meter

System Updates

The audio system's firmware can be updated with a Wi-Fi connection, a USB device, or the telematics control unit (TCU)* through the subscription-based service.

How to Update

When the audio system update is available, the notification is shown on the status area. Use the following procedure to update the system.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
 - ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
 - ▶ The system will check for updates.
 - ▶ If the update icon is appeared on the home screen, select the status icon.
 - **Status Area** P. 261
3. Select **Download**.
 - ▶ A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.
4. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.
 - ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update

You can update the system via Wi-Fi, but cannot use the captive portal that require login or agreement the terms of use on the browser.

Your download will be cancelled if:

- Your Wi-Fi connection is severed.
- You turn off the power system when the 12-volt battery is low on power.


Your download will recommence the next time a Wi-Fi connection is established.

For the 12-volt battery protection, **Install While Vehicle Off** cannot be selected when the battery is low on power. If you want to install the updated data, recharge the battery or select **Install Now**.

Certain features may not be available during system updates.

■ System Updates Settings

You can change or confirm system update settings.


1. Press the  button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select the option you want to change or confirm.

The following settings can be set.


- **Automatic Download**
- **Version Status**
- **Connection Setup**
 - **Wi-Fi Connection** P. 378
- **Update History**

■ How to Update Wirelessly

■ Wireless connection mode setup



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
 - If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Connection Setup**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select an access point from the network list.
 - To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
7. Enter the password.
 - If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
8. Select **Connect**.

■ How to update



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
 - If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **via Wireless**.
4. Select **Download**.
 - A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.
5. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.
 - A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

■ How to Update with a USB Device

■ Download the update files from the server

1. Press the  button.
 2. Select **System Updates**.
 - If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
 3. Select **Other Methods**.
 4. Select **Via USB**.
 - A notification appears on the screen.
 5. Connect a USB device into the USB port.
 - The inventory data is copied into the USB device.
-  **USB Ports** P. 247
6. Remove the USB device from the USB port.
 7. Connect the USB device into your computer, and then download the update files.
 - Follow the link to download the required software update files. Refer to <https://usb.honda.com> for instructions.

■ Update the audio system


1. Press the  button.
 2. Select **System Updates**.
 3. Select **Other Methods**.
 4. Select **Via USB**.
 - A notification appears on the screen.
 5. Connect the USB device with the update files into the USB port.
 - A notification appears on the screen.
-  **USB Ports** P. 247
6. Select **Install Now**.
 - A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

▣ How to Update with a USB Device

A USB device with a minimum of 8 GB of free space or more is recommended.

Be sure to delete any previous inventory or update files from the USB before starting the USB update process.

Voice Control Operation *

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation. The voice control system uses the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights on the ceiling.

Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:

- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.



The system recognises only certain commands.

Available voice commands:

 **Voice Portal Screen** P. 272

- Close the windows and sunroof.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone on the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

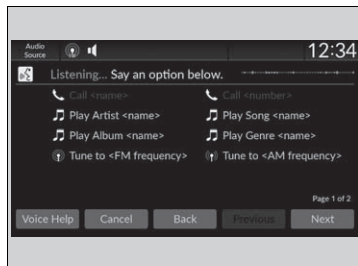
Voice Control Operation *


When you press the  button, a helpful prompt asks what you would like to do. Press and release the  button again to bypass this prompt and give a command.

Voice Recognition

The voice control system can only be used from the driver's seat because the microphone unit removes noises from the front passenger's side.

Voice Portal Screen



When the  (talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.

For a complete list of commands, say “Help” after the beep.

Depending on the selected mode, the displayed commands are different on the voice portal screen. The commands recognised are the same regardless of which screen is selected.

Normal Mode: A list of example commands is displayed to quickly complete your desired function.

Assist Mode: A list of basic commands is displayed to guide you step by step through the voice menu.

You can change the mode on the **General Settings** screen.

▶ **Voice Control*** P. 311

The system only recognises the commands on the following pages, at certain screens. Free-form voice commands are not recognised.

General Commands

When the voice portal screen is displayed, it will change to the top screen of each function by using the global commands.

- *Music Search*
- *AM*
- *FM*
- *Phone*
- *Navigation**

Phone Commands

When the system recognises a phone command, the screen will change to the dedicated phone voice recognition screen. These commands can only be used when a phone is connected.

Phone Commands

- *Call <name>*
- *Call <number>*

The system only recognises contact names stored in the phonebook of your phone. If a full name is registered in the first name field, the system will recognise the first name and last name as one contact name.

Phone commands are not available if using Apple CarPlay.

Audio Commands

When the system recognises an audio command, the screen will change to the dedicated audio voice recognition screen.

FM Commands

- *Tune to <FM frequency>*

AM Commands

- *Tune to <AM frequency>*

■ iPod Commands

- *List Album* <name>
- *List Artist* <name>
- *List Genre* <name>
- *List Playlist* <name>
- *Play* <artist> <album>
- *Play*
- *Play Album* <name>
- *Play Artist* <name>
- *Play Genre* <name>
- *Play Music* <text:media_combo>
- *Play Playlist* <name>
- *Play Song* <name>

■ USB Commands

- *List Album* <name>
- *List Artist* <name>
- *List Playlist* <name>
- *Play* <artist> <album>
- *Play*
- *Play Album* <name>
- *Play Artist* <name>
- *Play Music* <text:media_combo>
- *Play Playlist* <name>
- *Play Song* <name>

■ Navigation Commands*

The screen will change to the navigation screen when a navigation voice command is received.

📖 **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

■ Standard Commands

- *Voice Help*
- *Cancel*
- *Back*

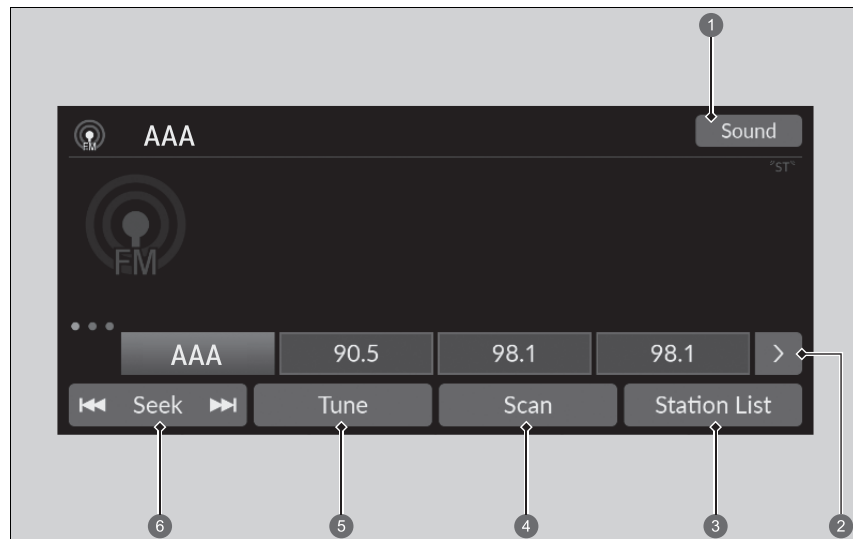
Voice Help provides guidance for the current screen.

■ List Commands

- *Previous*
- *Next*
- *Yes*
- *No*

* Not available on all models

Playing FM/AM Radio



① Sound Icon

② Preset Icons

③ Station List Icon

④ Scan Icon

⑤ Tune Icon

⑥ Seek Icon

■ Preset Memory

Tunes the radio frequency for preset memory.

To store a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
 - Selecting **Press & Hold** can be set a new preset station.

■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select the station.


■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.



1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Stop** or press the  button.

■ Seek

Selects  or  to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

►► Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode

Roll the left selector wheel or select **Audio Source** on the screen.

► **Audio Remote Controls** P. 252

You can store 12 AM/FM stations into preset memory.

■ Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

► **Adjusting the Sound** P. 265

■ Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

Selects to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.



1 On-screen Keyboard

►► Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen



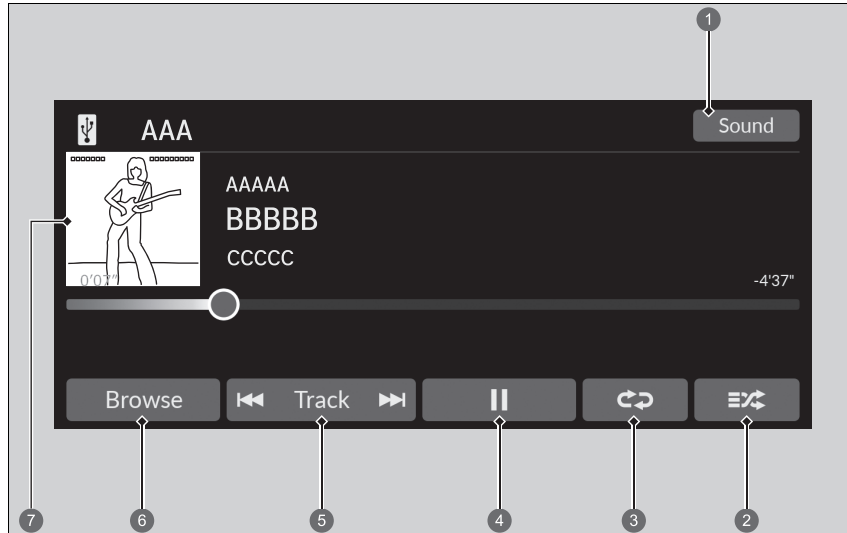
icons:

Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.

Music Playback via Wired Connection

Using your USB connector, connect the device to the USB port, then select the USB icon.

📶 **USB Ports** P. 247



- ① Sound Icon
- ② Shuffle Icon
- ③ Repeat Icon
- ④ Play/Pause Icon

- ⑤ Track Icons
- ⑥ Browse Icon
- ⑦ Cover Art

Music Playback via Wired Connection

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If you operate the music app on your device while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen.
Reconnect the device if necessary.

If a smartphone is connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category.
3. Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.


■ How to Select a Play Mode


You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

■ Shuffle/Repeat

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Shuffle

 (shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

 (shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

 (repeat off): Repeat mode to off.



 (repeat song): Repeats the current song.

 (repeat all): Repeats all songs.

■ To pause or resume a song


Select the play/pause icon.

■ How to Change a Song

You can select  or  to change songs. Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

■ Sound

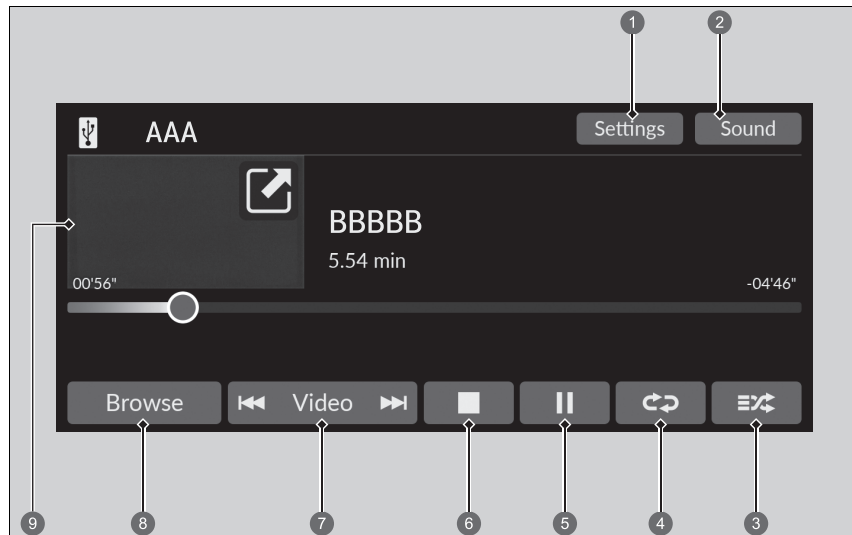
You can adjust the sound settings.

 **Adjusting the Sound** P. 265

Music/Video Playback via USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and video files on a USB flash drive. Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB icon.

► **USB Ports** P. 247



- ① **Settings Icon** (Playing a video)
- ② **Sound Icon**
- ③ **Random Icon**
- ④ **Repeat Icon**
- ⑤ **Play/Pause Icon**
- ⑥ **Stop Icon** (Playing a video)
- ⑦ **Track/Video Icons**
- ⑧ **Browse Icon**
- ⑨ **Cover Art** (Playing a music)/
Mini Player (Playing a video)

► Music/Video Playback via USB Flash Drive

You can use the following formats to play sound or video files on a USB flash drive.

When playing a sound file: MP3, WMA, AAC*1, FLAC, WAV

When playing a video file: MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

■ How to Select a File from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select **Current Playlist**, **Music**, or **Video**.
3. Continue making selections until you find the file or video of your choice.

⌘ Music/Video Playback via USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

➤ **General Information on the Audio System**
P. 440

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.


■ Random/Repeat

Repeatedly select the random or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Random

 (random off): Random mode to off.


 (random all files): Plays all files in random order.

 (random in folder): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Repeat

 (repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

 (repeat file): Repeats the current file.

 (repeat folder): Repeats all files in the current folder.

■ When playing a video file

 (stop): Select to stop a file.

 / : Select  to shrink a video screen. Select  to expand a video screen.

■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play/pause icon.

■ How to Change a File

Track/Video Icons

You can select to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

🔧 **Adjusting the Sound** P. 265

■ Settings

Changes the USB settings when playing a video file.

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select an option.
 - **Image Settings:** Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. To reset the settings, select **Default**. (**Brightness/Contrast/Black Level/Colour (Color)/Tint**).
 - **Aspect Ratio:** Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio. (**Original/Normal***1/**Full/Zoom**)
 - **Overlay Clock Location:** Changes the clock display layout. (**Upper right (Upper Right)***1/**Upper left (Upper Left)/Lower right (Lower Right)/Lower left (Lower Left)/OFF**)

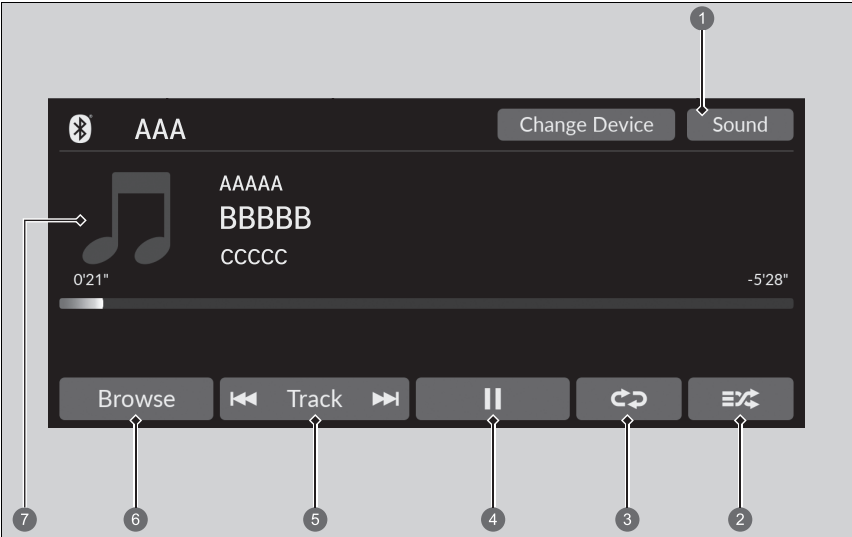
*1: Default Setting

Playing *Bluetooth®* Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

► **Phone Setup** P. 328



- 1 Sound Icon
- 2 Shuffle Icon
- 3 Repeat Icon
- 4 Play/Pause Icon
- 5 Track Icons
- 6 Browse Icon
- 7 Cover Art

►► Playing *Bluetooth®* Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there is more than one paired phone in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in the *Bluetooth®* device list.

► **Phone Setup** P. 328

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.


In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth®* Audio from that phone will be unavailable. However, if the other phone is connected to the system, it can be used as *Bluetooth®* Audio by selecting the audio mode.

► **Phone Setup** P. 328

■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
 **Phone Setup** P. 328
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.


If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Shuffle

 (shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

 (shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

 (repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

 (repeat song): Repeats the current song.

 (repeat group): Repeats the current group.

 (repeat all): Repeats all songs.

■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play/pause icon.

► To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone manufacturer's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Device**.

 **Phone Setup** P. 328

■ Searching for Music

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category.
3. Select an item.
 - The selection begins playing.

■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

🔗 **Adjusting the Sound** P. 265

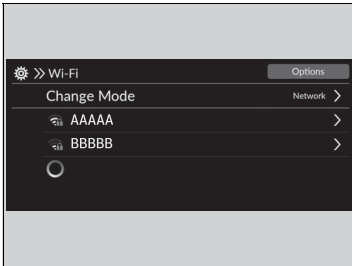
🔗 Searching for Music


Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Wi-Fi Connection

This vehicle is equipped with Wi-Fi connectivity. You can connect to an external Wi-Fi hotspot or communication device.

Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Wi-Fi**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select an access point from the network list.
 - ▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
7. Enter the password.
 - ▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
 - ▶ **System Updates** P. 267
8. Select **Connect**.

Turning off the Wi-Fi connection

1. Select **Change Mode**.
2. Select **OFF**.

Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.




Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot

You cannot go through the setting procedure while the vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the  icon on the system status area. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.

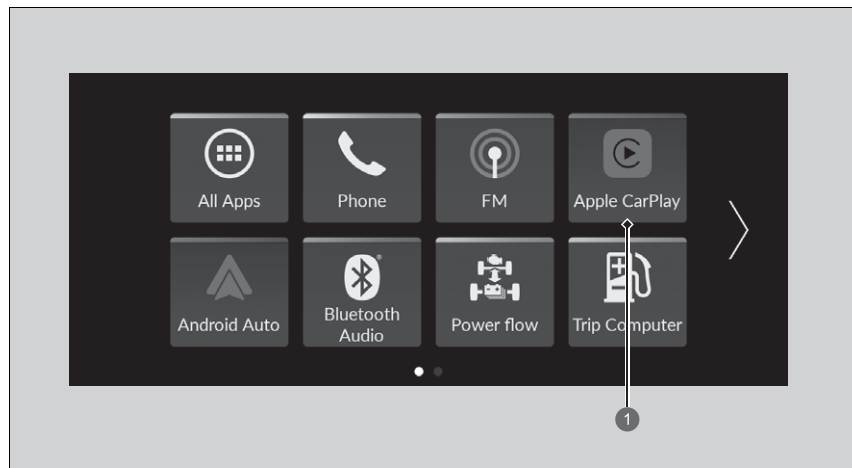
▶ **Status Area** P. 261

In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly, and the Apple CarPlay icon is selected, you can use Apple CarPlay on the audio/information screen.

🔧 **USB Ports** P. 247



① **Apple CarPlay**

🔧 Apple CarPlay

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

We recommend using the latest OS.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or Hands-Free Telephone (HFT). Calls or music playback are only made through Apple CarPlay. Other previously paired phones can use the *Bluetooth*® Audio.

When using Hands Free, you can only control it with Siri.

🔧 **Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri** P. 293

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

■ Apple CarPlay Menu

The following items are only representative examples. Applications displayed on the screen can be changed on your smartphone.

- **Phone**
Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voicemail.
- **Music**
Play music stored on your iPhone.
- **Maps**
Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.
- **Messages**
Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.
- **Honda**
Select the Honda icon to go back to the home screen.

📡 Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

■ Connecting Apple CarPlay Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB port using the USB cable.

📱 **USB Ports** P. 247

- The confirmation screen will be displayed.


2. Select **Yes**.

- If you do not want to connect Apple CarPlay, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the home screen

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Apple CarPlay**.
3. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
4. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

📱 **Phone Setup** P. 328

5. Select **Yes**.


- If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

📱 Apple CarPlay

Only initialize Apple CarPlay when you are safely parked.

When Apple CarPlay first detects your iPhone, you will need to set up your iPhone. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your iPhone.



You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Apple CarPlay:

Press the  button → Select **General Settings** → **Smartphone Connection** → **Apple CarPlay** → Select device



Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.


■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the Apple CarPlay device list

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Smartphone Connection**.
4. Select **Apple CarPlay**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 **Phone Setup** P. 328
7. Select **Yes**.
 - If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the *Bluetooth®* device list

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 **Phone Setup** P. 328
7. Select **Yes**.
 - If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly with the steering wheel

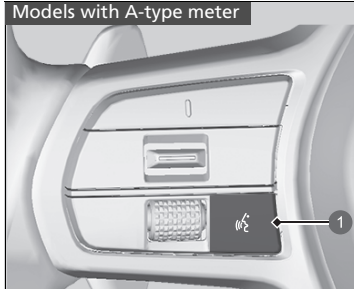
1. Press and hold the  (talk) button on the steering wheel.
2. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 - **Phone Setup** P. 328
3. Select **Yes**.
 - If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly at start-up (when there is no phone paired to the system)

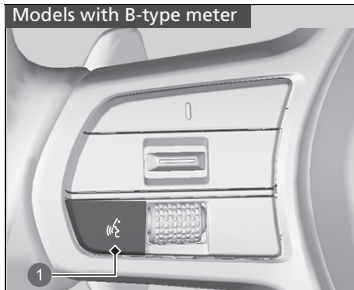
1. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.
2. Select **OK**.
 - If there is no registered device, the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.
 - If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.
3. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 - **Phone Setup** P. 328
4. Select **Yes**.
 - If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the  (talk) button to activate Siri.



① (Talk) Button



① (Talk) Button

Press and hold to activate Siri.

Press again to deactivate Siri.

Press and release to activate voice tag dial*/standard voice recognition system*.

* Not available on all models

⌘ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit www.apple.com/ios/siri.

Android Auto™

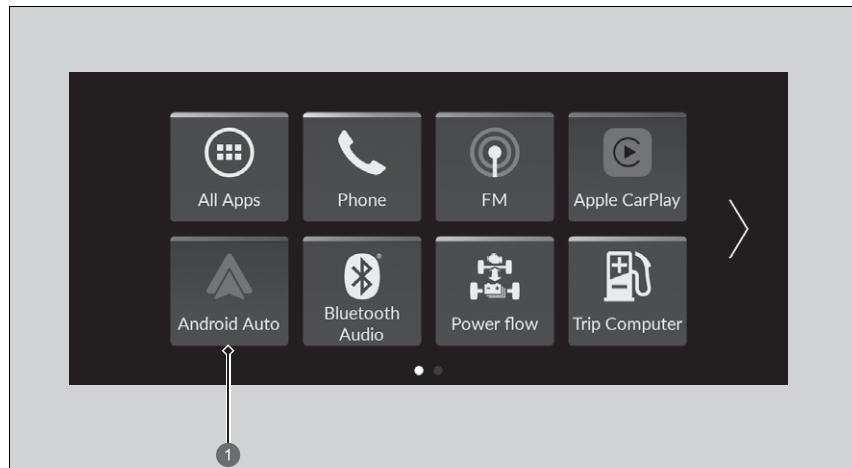
When you connect an Android™ phone to the audio system via the USB port, or wirelessly*, and the Android Auto icon is selected, you can use Android Auto on the audio/information screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

🔧 **USB Ports** P. 247

NOTE:

Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.



1 Android Auto

Android Auto™

We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto. *Bluetooth* A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

To use Android Auto on a smartphone with Android 9.0 (Pie) or earlier, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.


Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

🔧 **Phone Setup** P. 328

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

To use each of Android Auto's features: say a wake-up word while the Android Auto screen is displayed, or press and hold the  (talk) button to activate Google Assistant.

🔧 **Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition** P. 299

Android Auto Menu

The following items are only representative examples. Applications displayed on the screen can be changed on your smartphone.

- **Maps**

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

- **Phone**

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

- **Honda**

Select the **Honda** icon to go back to the home screen.

Android Auto™

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

■ Connecting Android Auto Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

1. Connect the Android phone to the USB port using the USB cable.

📖 **USB Ports** P. 247

- The confirmation screen will be displayed.


2. Select **Yes**.

- If you do not want to connect Android Auto, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

■ Connect Android Auto Wirelessly*

■ Connect Android Auto wirelessly on the home screen

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Android Auto**.
3. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
4. Pair the Android phone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

📖 **Phone Setup** P. 328


5. Select **Yes**.

- If your Android phone asks for permission to accept an Android Auto connection, accept to connect.

☒ Connecting Android Auto Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.



You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Android Auto after you have completed the initial setup:

Press the  button → Select **General Settings** → **Smartphone Connection** → **Android Auto** → Select device



Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by Google's Privacy Policy.


■ Connect Android Auto wirelessly on the Android Auto device list

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Smartphone Connection**.
4. Select **Android Auto**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the Android phone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 **Phone Setup** P. 328
7. Select **Yes**.
 - If your Android phone asks for permission to accept an Android Auto connection, accept to connect.

■ Connect Android Auto wirelessly on the *Bluetooth®* device list

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the Android phone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 **Phone Setup** P. 328
7. Select **Yes**.
 - If your Android phone asks for permission to accept an Android Auto connection, accept to connect.


■ Connect Android Auto wirelessly with the steering wheel

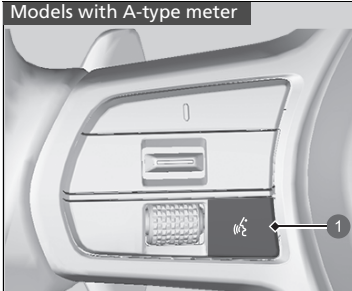
1. Press and hold the  (talk) button on the steering wheel.
2. Pair the Android phone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 - ❑ **Phone Setup** P. 328
3. Select **Yes**.
 - If your Android phone asks for permission to accept an Android Auto connection, accept to connect.

■ Connect Android Auto wirelessly at start-up (when there is no phone paired to the system)

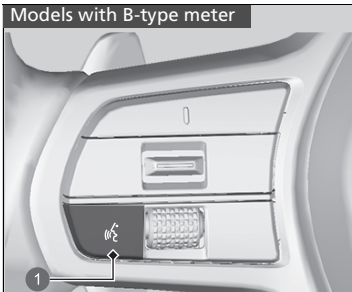
1. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.
2. Select **OK**.
 - If there is no registered device, the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.
 - If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.
3. Pair the Android phone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 - ❑ **Phone Setup** P. 328
4. Select **Yes**.
 - If your Android phone asks for permission to accept an Android Auto connection, accept to connect.

■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the  (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.



①  (Talk) Button



①  (Talk) Button

Press and hold to operate Android Auto with your voice.

Press and release to activate voice tag dial*/standard voice recognition system*.

* Not available on all models

⌘ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

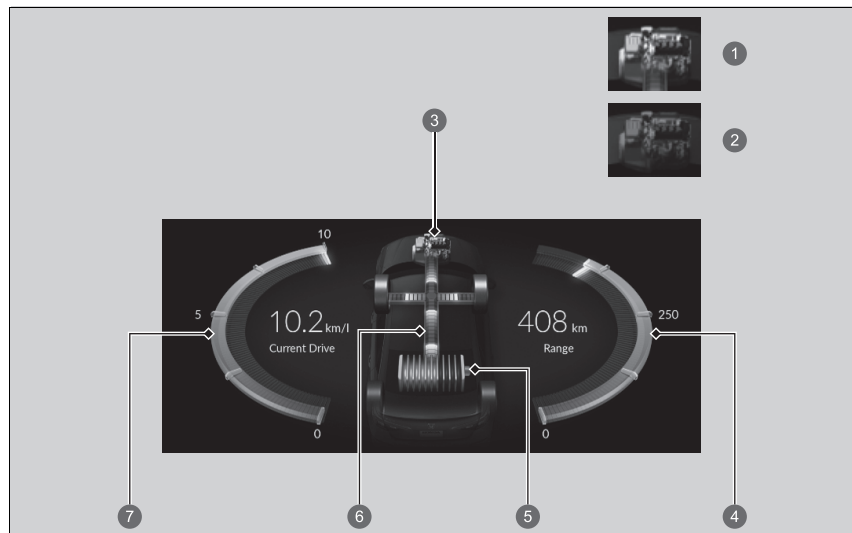
Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Power Flow




The power flow screen shows the vehicle's power flow, average fuel economy, and range.






- ① Engine ON
- ② Engine OFF
- ③ Engine
- ④ Driving Range
- ⑤ High Voltage Battery Level Gauge
- ⑥ Power Flow
- ⑦ Average Fuel Economy (Current Drive)

Shows the power flow, indicating what is supplying power to the vehicle and/or charging the battery.

- ▶ The indicator for the power transmission appears in blue, and for the battery charging operation, in green.

Display	Colour of indicators	Vehicle's Condition
	Blue	Power is being supplied by the High Voltage battery and the engine-driven generator.
	Blue	Power is being supplied by the High Voltage battery.
	Blue	Power is being supplied by the engine-driven generator.

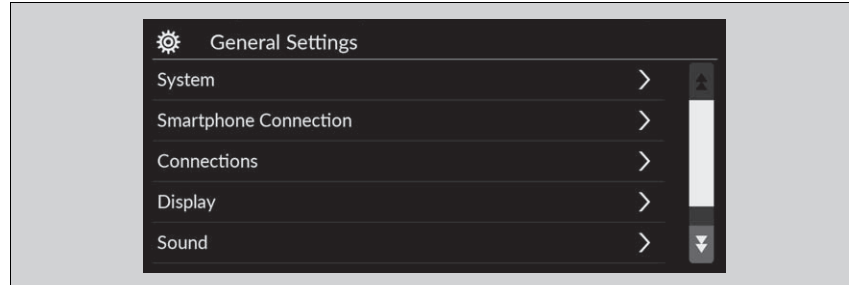
Display	Colour of indicators	Vehicle's Condition
	Blue and Green	Power is being supplied directly by the engine and the High Voltage battery is being charged by the engine-driven generator.
	Green	The High Voltage battery is being charged through regenerative braking.
	Green	The High Voltage battery is being charged by the engine-driven generator.

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **General Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **System** ➡ P. 304
- **Smartphone Connection** ➡ P. 306
- **Connections** ➡ P. 307
- **Display** ➡ P. 308
- **Sound** ➡ P. 309
- **Camera** ➡ P. 310
- **Voice Control*** ➡ P. 311

* Not available on all models

Continued

⌘ Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to [P].

■ System

Customizable Features		Description		Selectable Settings
Date & Time	Set Date & Time	Automatic Date & Time	Selects ON to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select OFF to cancel this function.	ON ^{*1} /OFF
		Set Date	Adjusts date. ▶ Adjusting the Clock P. 262	Day/Month/Year
		Set Time	Adjusts time. ▶ Adjusting the Clock P. 262	Hour/Minute AM/PM
	Time Zone*	Automatic Time Zone*	Sets the audio system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.	ON ^{*1} /OFF
		(Select time zone)	Changes the time zone manually.	—
	Date Format		Select a date format.	MM/DD/YYYY/ DD/MM/YYYY ^{*1} / YYYY/MM/DD
	Time Format		Select a time format.	12-H ^{*1} /24-H (12H ^{*1} /24H)

*1:Default Setting

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Language	Changes the driver information interface and audio/information screen language separately.	English (United Kingdom)* ² , Español * ² , or Arabic* ² Some languages may not be available in all regions. Check the audio/information screen for available options.
Touch Panel Sensitivity	Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	High/Normal * ¹
System Volumes	System Sounds	—
	Text-to-Speech	—
	Navigation Guidance	—
	Phone Calls	—
	Default	Resets all System Volumes settings to default values.
Refuel Recommend*	Turns the refuel recommend function on and off. 🔲 Refuel Recommend * P. 341	ON * ¹ / OFF

*1:Default Setting
*2:The default setting varies depending on the model.

* Not available on all models

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
About	Status	Displays the Android setting items.	—
	Legal Information		
	Model Number		
	Android Version		
	Kernel Version		
	Build Number		
Factory Data Reset		Resets all the settings to their factory default. ➤ Defaulting All the Settings P. 320	Continue/Cancel
Detail Information	App Manager	Displays the Android system memory and apps information.	—

■ Smartphone Connection

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Apple CarPlay	+ Connect New Device	Pairs a new phone to Apple CarPlay. ➤ Phone Setup P. 328	—
	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➤ Phone Setup P. 328	—
Android Auto	+ Connect New Device*	Pairs a new phone to Android Auto. ➤ Phone Setup P. 328	—
	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➤ Phone Setup P. 328	—


* Not available on all models

■ Connections

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Wi-Fi	Change Mode	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	Network ^{*1} / Smartphone ^{*2} /OFF
	(Available Networks/Connected Devices)	Displays the available network(s) or current connected device(s).	—
	Options ^{*3} Add Network	Adds a new network to connect Wi-Fi.	—
	Saved Networks	Saves the connected network.	—
	Options Bluetooth	Turns the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® on and off.	ON ^{*1} /OFF
Bluetooth	Priority Device	Displays the priority device.	—
	+ Connect New Device	Pairs a new phone to HFT. 📱 Phone Setup P. 328	—
	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. 📱 Phone Setup P. 328	—

*1:Default Setting
*2:Appears only when Apple CarPlay or Android Auto is connected wirelessly.
*3:Appears only when **Change Mode** setting is **Network**.

■ Display

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Day Mode*1	Changes between the daytime mode and nighttime mode.	—
Night Mode*1	 Display Setup P. 266	—
Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
Default	Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level.	—

*1: Models with A-type meter

■ Sound

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bass / Treble	Treble	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. 🔧 Adjusting the Sound P. 265	—
	Midrange		
	Bass		
Audio Zones & Balance / Fader* ¹			
Bose Centerpoint* ¹			
Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation* ¹			
Balance / Fader* ²			
Speed Volume Compensation* ²			

*1:Models with BOSE AMP
*2:Models with Normal AMP

■ Camera

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Rear Camera	Fixed Guideline	Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel. ➤ Multi-View Rear Camera P. 587	ON ^{*1} /OFF
	Dynamic Guideline	Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel. ➤ Multi-View Rear Camera P. 587	ON ^{*1} /OFF
LaneWatch [*]	Show with indicator (Show with turn signal)	Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a left ^{*2} /right ^{*3} turn. ➤ LaneWatch [*] P. 501	ON ^{*1} /OFF
	Display Time after Indicator Off (Display Time after Turn Signal Off)	Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after the turn signal lever returns to the centre. ➤ LaneWatch [*] P. 501	0 seconds ^{*1} /2 seconds
	Show Reference Line	Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor. ➤ LaneWatch [*] P. 501	ON ^{*1} /OFF

*1:Default Setting
*2:Right-hand Drive Type
*3:Left-hand Drive Type

■ Voice Control*

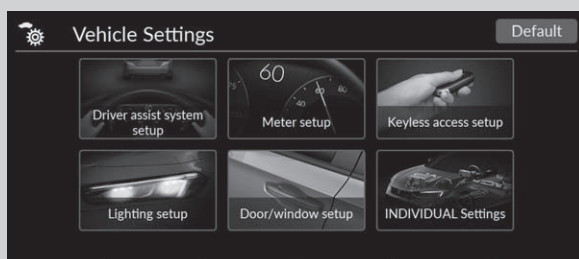
Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Voice Control Mode	Selects a mode of the voice portal screen. ▶ Voice Control Operation* P. 271	Assist/Normal* ¹

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

■ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **Vehicle Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **TPMS Calibration*** ➤ P. 313
- **Driver assist system setup (Driver Assist System Setup)** ➤ P. 313
- **Meter setup (Meter Setup)** ➤ P. 314
- **Keyless access setup (Keyless Access Setup)** ➤ P. 316
- **Lighting setup (Lighting Setup)** ➤ P. 317
- **Door/window setup (Door/Window Setup)** ➤ P. 318
- **INDIVIDUAL Settings** ➤ P. 319

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

If **Vehicle Settings** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**. You can change the displayed icons on the home screen.

➤ **App Shortcut Function** P. 256

■ TPMS Calibration*

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
TPMS Calibration	Cancels/Calibrates Deflation Warning System. ▶ Deflation Warning System* P. 496	Calibrate/Cancel

■ Driver assist system setup (Driver Assist System Setup)

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance (Forward Collision Warning Distance)*	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts. ▶ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 509	Far/Normal*¹/Near (Long/Normal*¹/Short)
ACC vehicle ahead detected beep (ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep)*	Turns On/Off audible notification when vehicle has moved in/out of adaptive cruise control range. ▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 530	ON/OFF*¹
Lead car departure notification system (Lead Car Departure Notification System)*	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system. ▶ Lead Car Departure Notification System* P. 564	OFF/Normal*¹/Early
Road departure mitigation setting (Road Departure Mitigation Setting)*	Selects operating mode of the Road Departure Mitigation system. ▶ Road Departure Mitigation System P. 523	Early/Normal*¹/Delayed/Warning only (Narrow/Normal*¹/Wide/Warning Only)

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Lane keep assist beep (Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep)*	Switches the LKAS suspend alert beeps on and off. ➤ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 551	ON/OFF* ¹
Driver attention monitor (Driver Attention Monitor)	Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor. ➤ Driver Attention Monitor P. 138, 158	OFF/Tactile alert only/ Tactile and audible alert* ¹ (OFF/Tactile Alert/Tactile And Audible Alert* ¹)
Rear sensor setting (Rear Sensor Setting)*	Select to turn the rear parking sensor ON or OFF. ➤ Parking Sensor System* P. 582	ON* ¹ /OFF

* 1: Default Setting

■ Meter setup (Meter Setup)

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust outside temp. display (Adjust Outside Temp. Display)	Selects to adjust outside temperature reading by a few degrees. ➤ Outside Temperature P. 128	-3°C ~ ±0°C* ¹ ~ +3°C
Trip A reset timing ("Trip A" Reset Timing)	Selects the timing to reset Trip A. ➤ Range/Fuel/Trip Meter P. 133, 151 ➤ Speed/Time/Trip Meter P. 135, 154	When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset* ¹ (When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/ Manually Reset* ¹)

* 1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Trip B reset timing ("Trip B" Reset Timing)	Selects the timing to reset Trip B. <div> <div> Range/Fuel/Trip Meter P. 133, 151 </div> <div> Speed/Time/Trip Meter P. 135, 154 </div> </div>	When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset^{*1} (When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/Manually Reset^{*1})
Alarm volume control (Adjust Alarm Volume)	Changes volume level of all system warnings, door opening warning and indicator.	Max/Mid^{*1}/Min (High/Mid^{*1}/Low)
Fuel efficiency backlight (Fuel Efficiency Backlight) [*]	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	ON^{*1}/OFF
Turn by turn display (Turn By Turn Auto Display)	Turns On/Off the pop-up warning in the turn-by-turn navigation in the driver information interface. <div> <div> Turn-by-Turn Directions P. 137, 157 </div> </div>	ON^{*1}/OFF
Fuel economy unit[*]	Selects the fuel consumption units.	<div>Except Vietnamese models</div> km/l^{*1}/l/100km <div>Vietnamese models</div> km/l/l/100km^{*1}
Rear seat reminder (Rear Seat Reminder)	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	ON^{*1}/OFF

^{*1}:Default Setting

■ Keyless access setup (Keyless Access Setup)

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door Unlock Mode*	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	Driver door only*¹/All doors (Driver Door Only*¹/All Doors)
Keyless access beep volume (Keyless Access Beep Volume)	Changes the beep volume of unlocking /locking the doors.	Max*¹/Min (High*¹/Low)
Keyless access light flash (Keyless Access Light Flash)	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	ON*¹/OFF
Keyless access beep (Keyless Access Beep)	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	ON*¹/OFF
Remote start system ON/OFF (Remote Start System ON/OFF)	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	ON*¹/OFF

*1:Default Setting

■ Lighting setup (Lighting Setup)

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto High Beam*	Turns On/Off auto high beam function.	ON*¹/OFF
Interior light dimmer duration (Interior Light Dimming Time)	Selects the length of time the interior lights stay on after doors are closed. ☑ Interior Lights P. 226	60sec/30sec*¹/15sec
Headlight auto OFF timer (Headlight Auto OFF Timer)	Selects the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. ☑ Automatic Lighting Off Feature P. 202	60sec/30sec/15sec*¹/0sec
Headlight integration with wipers (Auto Headlight On with Wiper On)	Selects On/Off headlight function and wiper operation when the headlight is in AUTO setting. ☑ Headlight Integration with Wipers P. 202	ON*¹/OFF

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

■ Door/window setup (Door/Window Setup)

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto door lock*	Changes the setting for the automatic locking feature.	OFF/With vehicle speed* ¹ /Shift from P
Auto door unlock*	Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically.	OFF/Shift to P* ¹ /When ignition is turned OFF
Key And Remote Unlock Mode*	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first push of the keyless remote or built-in key.	Driver door only* ¹ /All doors (Driver Door Only* ¹ /All Doors)
Walk away lock (Walk Away Auto Lock)	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	ON/OFF* ¹
Lock presetting (Lock Presetting)	Turns on/off the lock presetting function.	ON* ¹ /OFF
Keyless lock notification (Keyless Lock Answer Back)	Turns On/Off flash of exterior lights when doors are locked/unlocked by keyless remote. ☑ Using the Remote Transmitter P. 179	ON* ¹ /OFF
Auto folding door mirror (Auto Folding Door Mirror)	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors.	ON* ¹ /OFF
Remote Window Control*	Turns the remote window control on and off.	ON* ¹ /OFF

* 1: Default Setting

■ INDIVIDUAL Settings

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Powertrain	Selects the responsiveness of the powertrain. ▶ Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings P. 485	NORMAL ^{*1} /SPORT/ECON
Steering	Selects the level of steering effort. ▶ Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings P. 485	NORMAL ^{*1} /SPORT
Engine Sound	Select the effect of Engine Sound. ▶ Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings P. 485	NORMAL ^{*1} /SPORT
Gauge [*]	Selects the gauges to be displayed in the Driver Information Interface. ▶ Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings P. 485	NORMAL ^{*1} /SPORT


^{*1}:Default Setting

^{*} Not available on all models


Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

■ Defaulting General Settings

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
 - A confirmation message appears on the screen.
5. Select **Continue** to reset the settings.
6. Select **Continue** again to reset the settings.
 - The system will reboot.

■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Default**.
4. Select **Yes**.

» Defaulting All the Settings

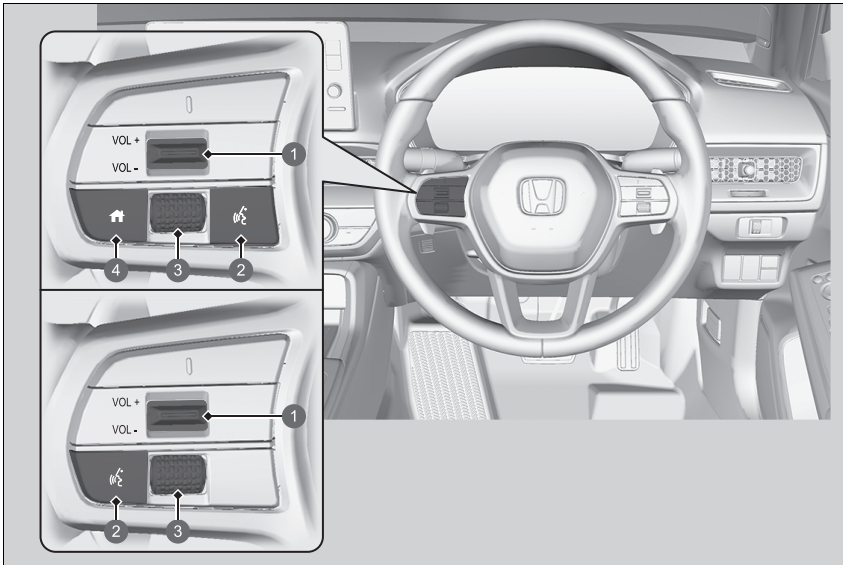
When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

HFT Buttons



- ① **VOL +/VOL -** (Volume) Switch
- ② (Talk) Button
- ③ Left Selector Wheel
- ④ (Home) Button*¹

*1: Models with A-type meter

* Not available on all models

Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **ON**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay, HFT is unavailable.


➤ **Customized Features** P. 303


Voice control tips


- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag*, a phonebook name* or a number*. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.


If there is no Favourite contacts entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.

➤ **Favourite Contacts** P. 333

 **(Talk) button:** Press to call a number with a stored voice tag* or to access Voice Portal*.

 **(Home) button*1:** Press to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

Left Selector Wheel: Press the  (home) button*1. Roll up or down to select **Phone** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel. While receiving a call, the incoming call screen is displayed on the driver information interface. You can pick up the call using the left selector wheel.

 **Receiving a Call** P. 339

Hands-Free Telephone System

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

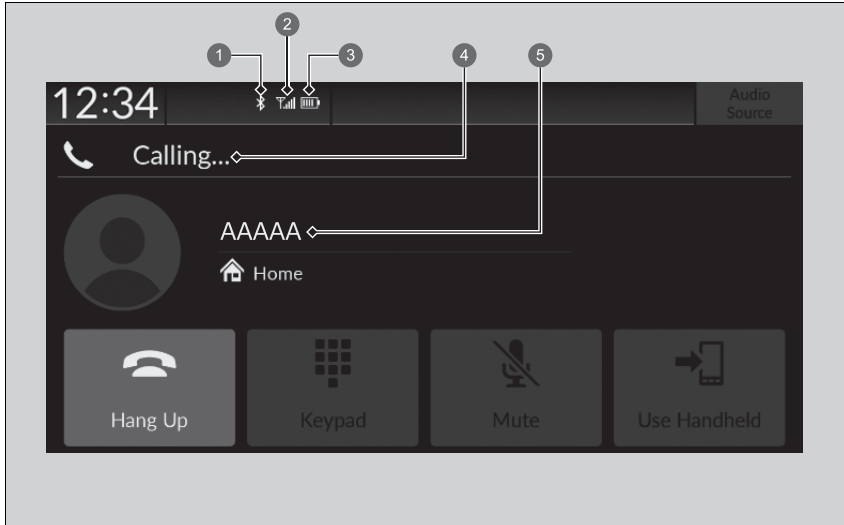
An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

*1 : Models with A-type meter

* Not available on all models

HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



- ❶ *Bluetooth®* Indicator
Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.
- ❷ Signal Strength
- ❸ Battery Level Status
- ❹ HFT Mode
- ❺ Caller's Name (If registered)/Caller's Number (If not registered)

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

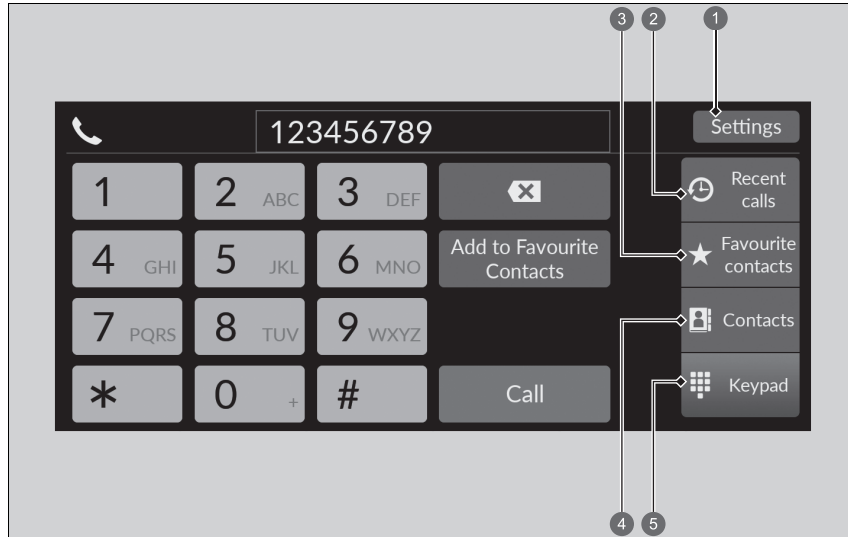
Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored Favourite contacts entries with voice tags*, phonebook names*, or numbers* can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➤ **Favourite Contacts** P. 333

HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system. Select **Phone** to display the phone screen.



- ① Settings
- ② Recent calls (Recent Calls)
- ③ Favourite contacts (Favorite Contacts)
- ④ Contacts
- ⑤ Keypad

HFT Menus

Some functions are limited while driving.

Settings: Changes the phone settings.

➤ **Phone Settings Screen** P. 327

Recent calls (Recent Calls): Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.

➤ **To make a call using the recent calls** P. 337

Favourite contacts (Favorite Contacts): Dials the selected number in the Favourite contacts entry.

➤ **To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry** P. 337

Contacts: Displays the phonebook of the paired phone.

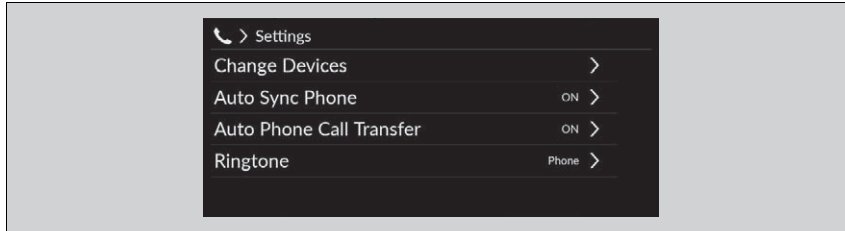
➤ **To make a call using the imported phonebook** P. 338

Keypad: Enters a phone number to dial.

➤ **To make a call using a phone number** P. 338

■ Phone Settings Screen

To display the phone settings screen, select **Settings** on the phone screen.



Change Devices: Pairs a new phone to the system and connect, disconnect, or delete a paired device.

🔧 **Phone Setup** P. 328

Auto Sync Phone: Sets phonebook and recent calls data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.

🔧 **Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls** P. 331

Auto Phone Call Transfer: Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.

🔧 **Automatic Transferring** P. 332


Ringtone: Selects the ringtone.

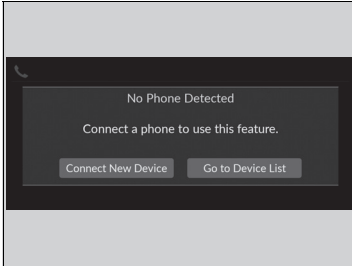
🔧 **Ringtone** P. 332

■ Phone Setup

■ **Bluetooth® setup**

You can turn *Bluetooth®* function on and off.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **Options**.
6. Select **Bluetooth**, then select **ON**.



■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Connect New Device**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
4. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
 - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
 - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the audio/ information screen and your phone matches.
This may vary by a phone.
5. Select desired functions and then select **Connect**.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.
7. Select **OK**.

☒ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with the following icons.

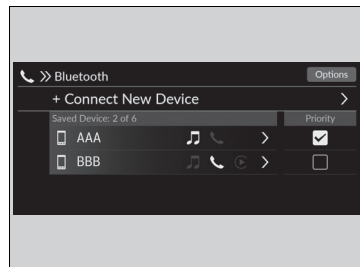
🎵: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

📞: The phone can be used with HFT.

📱: The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.

🏠*: The phone is compatible with Android Auto.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*® compatible devices is unavailable.



■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone to connect.
 - HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
 - You can set the connected phone priority. Select the box checked on the phone you want to prioritize.
5. Select (audio), (phone), or (Apple CarPlay), or * (Android Auto).
 - and can be selected simultaneously, however, when , or * is selected, and cannot be selected.
6. Select **Apply**.

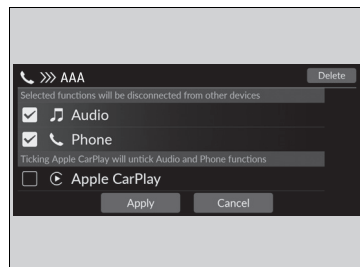
■ To delete a paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone you want to delete.
5. Select **Delete**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Delete**.

►► To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.



■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls










When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and recent calls are automatically imported to the system.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Sync Phone**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
 - The default setting is **ON**.

⌘ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

On some phones, it is necessary to set up it enabled to be imported the mobile phonebook.

When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

	Pref		Fax
	Home		Car
	Mobile		Voice
	Work		Other
	Pager		

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Recent calls are updated after every connection or call.

■ Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
 - The default setting is **ON**.

■ Ringtone

You can change the ringtone setting.

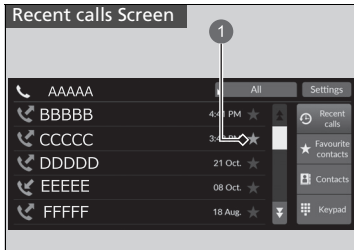
1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Ringtone**.
4. Select **Vehicle** or **Phone**.
 - The default setting is **Phone**.

⌘ Ringtone

Vehicle: The fixed ringtone sounds from the speakers.

Phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ringtone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

Favourite Contacts



1 Star Icon

■ To add a Favourite contact

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Recent calls (Recent Calls), Contacts, or Keypad**.

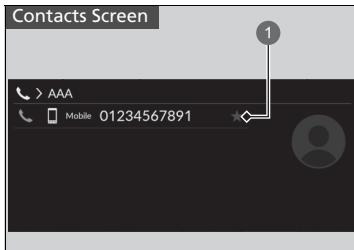
On the Recent calls or Contacts screen

3. Select the star icon.

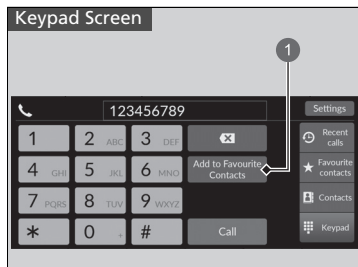
On the Keypad screen

3. Select **Add to Favourite Contacts (Add to Favorite Contacts)**.

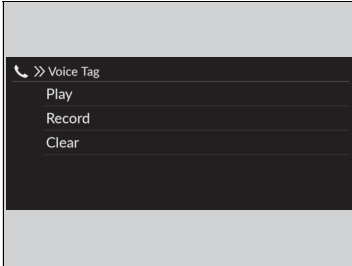
- A notification appears on the screen if the Favourite contacts is successfully stored.
- To remove the Favourite contacts, select the star icon again.



1 Star Icon




- 1 Add to Favourite Contacts
(Add to Favorite Contacts)



Models without voice control system

■ To add a voice tag to a stored Favourite contact entry

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts (Favorite Contacts)**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contact entry you want to edit.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
5. Select **Record**.
6. Select **Record**, or use the  button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

Models without voice control system

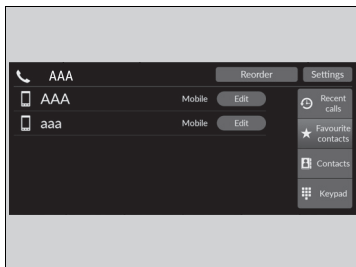
■ To delete a voice tag

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts (Favorite Contacts)**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contact entry you want to edit.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
5. Select **Clear**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

►► Favourite Contacts

Models without voice control system

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
 Avoid using “home” as a voice tag.
 It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name.
 For example, use “John Smith” instead of “John.”



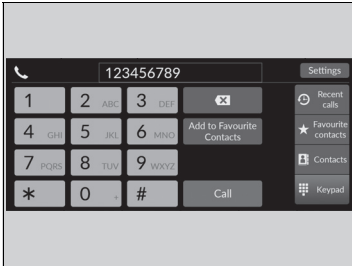
■ To edit a Favourite contact

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts (Favorite Contacts)**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contact entry you want to edit.
4. Select a setting you want.
5. Select **Done**.

■ To delete a Favourite contact

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts (Favorite Contacts)**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contact entry you want to delete.
4. Select **Remove**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported **Recent calls (Recent Calls)**, **Favourite contacts (Favorite Contacts)**, and **Contacts** entries.

■ To make a call using the recent calls

Recent calls are stored by **All**, **Dialled (Dialed)**, **Missed**, and **Received**.


1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Recent calls (Recent Calls)**.
 - You can sort by **All**, **Dialled (Dialed)**, **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
3. Select a number.
 - Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts (Favorite Contacts)**.
 - You can change the order of Favourite contacts entries by selecting **Reorder**.
3. Select a number.
 - Dialing starts automatically.

» Making a Call

Models without voice control system

Any voice-tagged Favourite contacts entry can be dialled by voice from most screens. Press the  button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system and are only made from Apple CarPlay.


» To make a call using the recent calls

The recent calls appear only when a phone is connected to the system.


All: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.
Dialled (Dialed): Displays the last outgoing calls.
Missed: Displays the last missed calls.
Received: Displays the last incoming calls.

» To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry

Models without voice control system

When a voice tag is stored, press the  button to call the number using the voice tag.

► **Favourite Contacts** P. 333

Any voice-tagged Favourite contacts entry can be dialled by voice from any screen. Press the  button and follow the prompts.

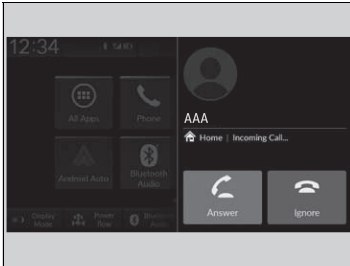
■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Contacts**.
3. Select a name.
 - You can sort by **First Name** or **Surname (Last Name)**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
4. Select a number.
 - Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a phone number


1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Keypad**.
3. Select a number.
 - Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Call**.
 - Dialing starts automatically.


Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.


You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.


To pick up the call, roll up or down to select  (answer) on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.


- If you want to decline or end the call, select  (ignore) on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.


Receiving a Call



Call Waiting

Select  (answer) to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

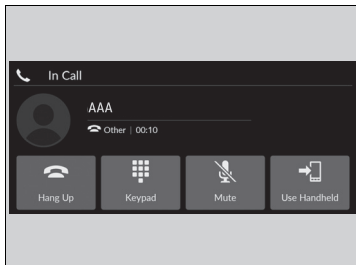
Select  using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.

Select  (ignore) to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Select  if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of  and  on the driver information interface.

■ Options During a Call



The following options are available during a call.

Keypad: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

Mute: Mute your voice.

Use Handheld: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.

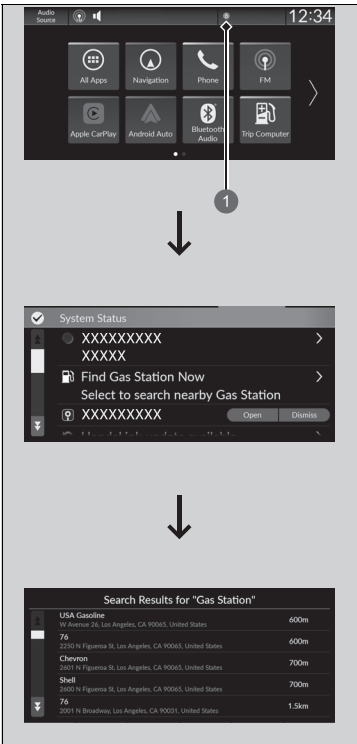
- The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected when the other source screen other than the phone screen is displayed. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

☒ Options During a Call

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

Refuel Recommend*

Your vehicle is equipped with a feature that automatically calculates when to refuel. This feature will notify you when refueling is recommended as well as enable you to search for gas stations that are located in the vicinity of your vehicle.



1 Notification Icon

1. When it is time to refuel the vehicle, a notification is displayed and a notification icon is displayed in the header.
2. Touch the box that contains the icon.
3. Select **Find Petrol Station Now (Find Gas Station Now)**.

4. Choose a gas station from the search screen of the navigation system.
▶ For instructions on how to use the navigation system, refer to the navigation system manual.

Refuel Recommend*

You can turn the Refuel Recommend function on and off.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 303

When you turn off this feature, the refuel recommend notification will not display.

This feature can only be used when the gas tank fuel level is below 30 percent.

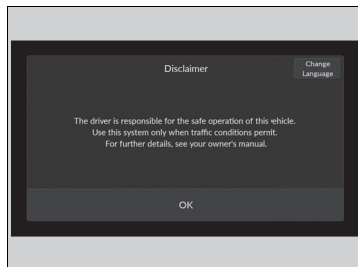
If you select **Find Petrol Station Now (Find Gas Station Now)** or put more than 5 liters of gasoline into the gas tank, the notification for refueling will disappear. If you prefer not to be notified, select OFF in the settings for Refuel Recommend.

When you drive on a rough road or ascend or descend a hill for an extended period of time, the notification may disappear or may not be displayed at all.

* Not available on all models

Start Up

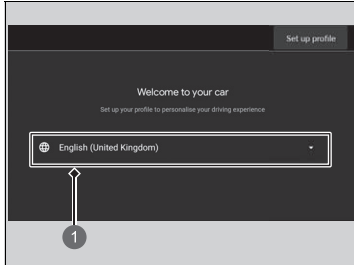
The Display Audio starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the following screen about the data upload will be displayed. When adding a new user, entry of user information is required at start-up.



Select **OK**.

- ▶ If you do not select **OK**, the system will automatically be display off after a certain period of time.
- ▶ If there is no registered device, select **OK** and the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.
- ▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

■ Registering new user information.



① Language List

1. Read the disclaimer screen and select **OK**.
 2. Select **Set up profile**.
 - ▶ If you want to change the language, select the language list.
 3. **Name your profile** and select **Next**.
 4. You can view the terms and conditions of the Google Services agreement.
 5. On the System-wide permission Settings screen, select the data you give permission for the system to access, and select **Accept**.
 6. Select **Done for now**.
 - ▶ By selecting **Profile lock**, you can set security settings for your profile.
 - ▶ By selecting **Set up Google Assistant and apps**, you can customize settings related to Google.
- An internet connection is required to change settings.
- 📶 **Wi-Fi Connection** P. 378

▶▶ Registering new user information.

Refer to Google Homepage for more information on set up profile.



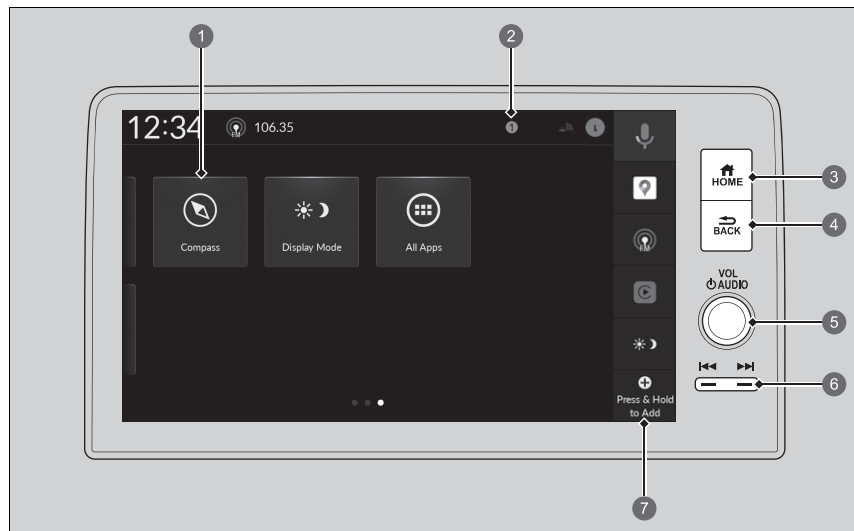
Additional information for Google Apps and Services is available at Honda Web site.





Specifications may be changed via system updates, etc.

Basic Operation

■ Audio System Function


To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



- ① App Shortcut Icons
Display the app shortcut icons.
▶ You can check all apps installed on this system by selecting **All Apps**.
■ **Audio/Information Screen** P. 350
- ② Status Icons
Show the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc.
- ③  **(Home) Button**
- ④  **(Back) Button**
- ⑤  **AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob**
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to increase or decrease the volume.
- ⑥  **(Seek/Track) Buttons**
Press to change station, song or file.
- ⑦ Mode Change Switch Icons
Display icons to change the mode directly.

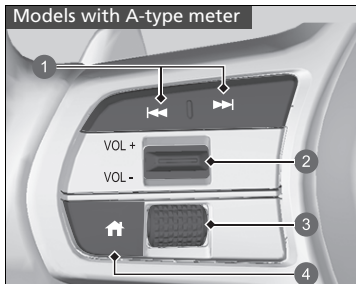
■ Reboot Audio

You can reboot the audio system.

1. Press and hold the  button for a certain period of time.
2. Select **Reboot**.
▶ If **Safe Mode** is selected, the audio system will be rebooted with third-party applications turned off.
After the power mode has been turned off once, third-party applications can be used again.

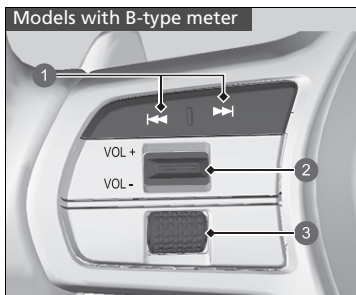
Audio Remote Controls

Models with A-type meter



- ① (Seek/Skip) Buttons
- ② **VOL +** / **VOL -** (Volume) Switch
- ③ Left Selector Wheel
- ④ (Home) Button

Models with B-type meter



- ① (Seek/Skip) Buttons
- ② **VOL +** / **VOL -** (Volume) Switch
- ③ Left Selector Wheel

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Models with A-type meter

Press the (home) button to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

VOL /VOL (Volume) Switch


Press Up: To increase the volume.

Press Down: To decrease the volume.

Models with A-type meter

Left Selector Wheel

- When selecting the audio mode

Press the  (home) button, then roll up or down to select **Audio** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Roll up or down:

To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:

FM/AM/iPod/USB/Bluetooth/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

- ▶ Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

Models with B-type meter

Left Selector Wheel











Roll up or down:

To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:

Back/Phone/FM/AM/iPod/USB/Bluetooth/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto/Customize display

► Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

(Seek/Skip) Buttons

- When listening to the radio
 - Press  To select the next preset radio station.**
 - Press  To select the previous preset radio station.**
 - Press and hold  To select the next strong station.**
 - Press and hold  To select the previous strong station.**
- When listening to a wired connection, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
 - Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.
 - Press  To skip to the next song.**
 - Press  To go back to the previous song.**
- When listening to a USB flash drive
 - Press and hold  To skip to the next folder.**
 - Press and hold  To go back to the previous folder.**
- When listening to an iPod:
 - Press and hold  To skip to the next song.**
 - Press and hold  To go back to the previous song.**

On-Board Owner's Manual*

You can view the content of the owner's manual on the audio/information screen.

■ Open the Owner's Manual

1. Select **All Apps**.
2. Select **Owner's Manual**.

■ Install/Update the Owner's Manual

When you can install or update the owner's manual, the notification will be sent automatically.

To update:

1. Tap the notification.
2. Select **OK**.
 - ▶ If the Owner's Manual has already been installed, select **Update**.

If you have the latest version of the owner's manual, you will not receive any notifications.

■ Menu

You can confirm menu.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Owner's Manual**.
3. Select **Menu**.
4. Select the menu you want to confirm.

* Not available on all models

❏ On-Board Owner's Manual*

This function does not cover all languages available for the Display Audio.

Thai models

Changing the language of the Display Audio will also change the language of the owner's manual. If the owner's manual is not available or installed in that language, the owner's manual will default to English.

❏ Install/Update the Owner's Manual

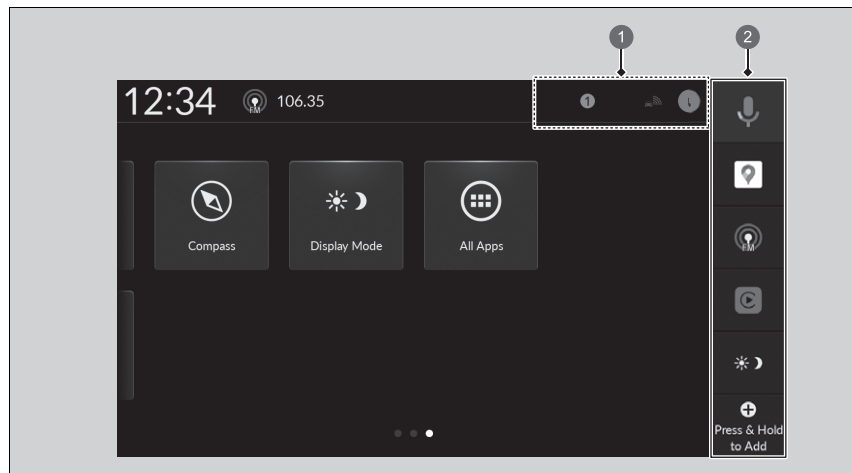
There may be differences in the displayed content depending on the version of the owner's manual.

If the owner's manual is not installed yet, you can install it via Wi-Fi.

❏ **Connect the vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot**
P. 378

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.



- ① Status Bar
- ② Mode Change Switch Bar

Audio/Information Screen

Touchscreen Operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed-out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped or use voice commands.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

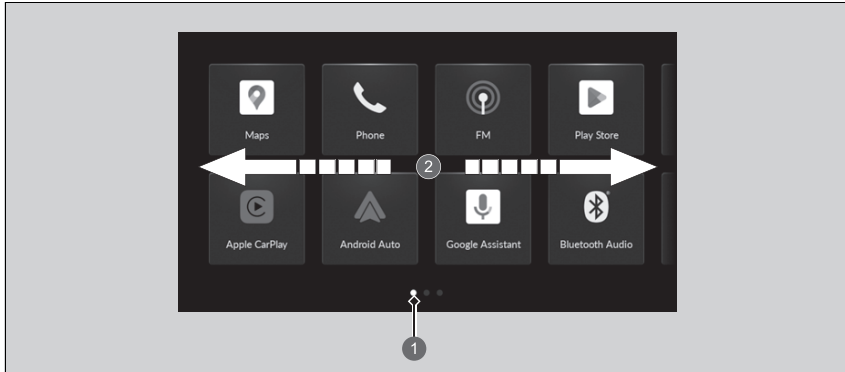
🔧 **Customized Features** P. 401

Mode Change Switch Bar

You can also select any application from the Mode Change Switch bar. Shortcuts can be edited to open other applications; however, **Google Assistant** cannot be edited.

■ To move to the next screen


Swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.



- ① Current page position
- ② Swipe

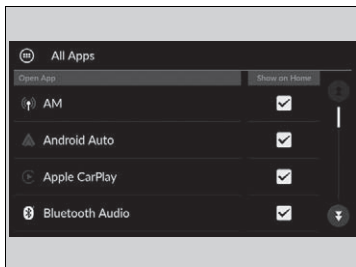
▶▶ To move to the next screen


You can add up to six pages to the home screen.

Press the  button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

■ To add/remove app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added or deleted on the home screen.



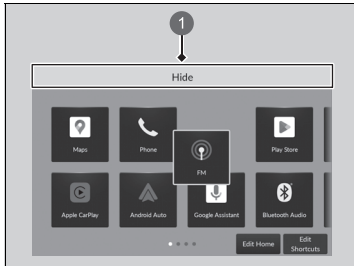
1. Press the  button.
2. Select **All Apps**.
3. Select an app to check or uncheck them.

►► To add/remove app icons on the home screen




Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

■ To move/remove icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



1 Hide

1. Press the  button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
 - The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
 - Drag and drop the icon to **Hide** to remove from the home screen.
4. Press the  or  button.
 - The screen will return to the home screen.

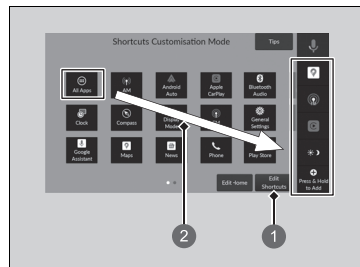
► To move/remove icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.




■ To shortcut icons on the home screen

You can store up to five icons on the mode change switch bar.



1 Edit Shortcuts



2 Drag and Drop

1. Press the  button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
 - The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Select **Edit Shortcuts**.
4. Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the right of the home screen.
 - The icon is a shortcut.
5. Press the  or  button.
 - The screen will return to the home screen.

►► To shortcut icons on the home screen

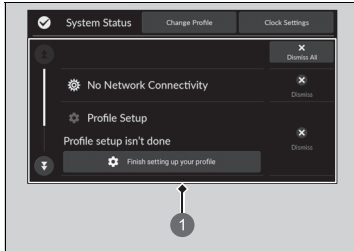
Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

You can also store icons on the mode change switch bar by the following procedure.



1. Select and hold an icon.
2. Select **Edit Shortcuts**.
3. Select an icon.
4. Select shortcut location.
5. Press the  or  button.

Status Bar

Shows the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area. You can confirm the detail information by selecting these icons.

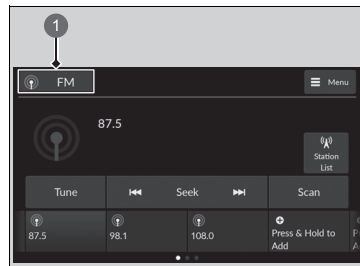


1 Status Area

1. Select the Status Bar.
▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Press the  or  button.

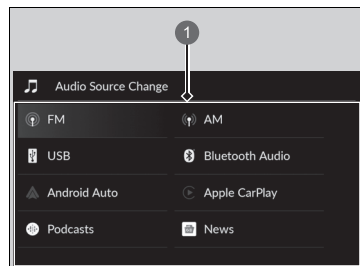
■ Selecting an Audio Source

You can select an audio source on the audio/information screen.



1. Select application icon of the audio/information screen.

① Application Icon




2. Select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

① Source List



Clock Setup

■ Adjusting the Clock



You can adjust the time manually and set the wallpaper of the clock in the audio/ information screen.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Date & Time**.
5. Select **Set Date & Time**.
6. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust date:


7. Select **Set Date**.
8. Select .
9. Press the  button to set the date.



To adjust time:

7. Select **Set Time**.
8. Select .
9. Press the  button to set the time.

⌘ Adjusting the Clock

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the header area of the audio/ information screen, **Clock** displayed on the home screen, or  **All Apps**.

1. Touch the clock on the screen.
The clock screen of the face-type appears.
2. Select **Menu**.
3. Select **Date & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.
6. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
7. Adjusting the dates, hours and minutes by selecting .
8. Press the  button to set the time.

You can customise the clock display.

➡ **System** P. 402

■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

■ Import wallpaper

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.

📁 **USB Ports** P. 247

2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Menu**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select **Add More**.
6. Import a desired picture.

► Multiple pictures can be imported at the same time.

7. Select **Select Files**.
8. Select **Add Files**.

► The display will return to the **Clock Faces** screen.

■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Clock**.
2. Select **Menu**.
3. Select **Clock Faces**.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
5. Select **Save**.

► The display will return to the **Clock Faces** screen.

🖼️ Wallpaper Setup

The wallpaper you set up on **Clock Faces** cannot be displayed on the driver information interface.

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- Up to 21 pictures can be imported.
- The individual file size limit is 10 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 2,304 pixels. If the image size is less the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.

■ Delete wallpaper

1. Select **Clock**.
2. Select **Menu**.
3. Select **Clock Faces**.
4. Select **Delete Files**.
5. Select **Select Files to Delete**.
 - ▶ If you want to delete all wallpapers, select **Delete All Files**.
6. Select a desired wallpaper.
7. Select **Select Files**.
8. Select **Delete Files**.
 - ▶ The display will return to the **Clock Faces** screen.

⌘ Delete wallpaper

You cannot delete the initial imported wallpapers.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

Adjusting the Sound

1. Press the  button.
2. Select an audio source icon.

AM/FM Radio mode

3. Select **Menu**.
4. Select **Sound Settings**.
5. Select the setting you want.

USB Audio, Bluetooth Audio mode

3. Select **Sound**.
4. Select the setting you want.


Select an item from the following choices:

- **Speed Volume Compensation**^{*2}: Sets the amount of volume increase.
- **Bass / Mid / Treble**: Treble, Midrange, Bass
- **Balance / Fader**^{*2}: Balance, Fader
- **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**^{*1}: Driver Only, Front Only, Rear Only, Full Vehicle, Balance, Fader
- **Bose Centerpoint Surround**^{*1}: Turns the Bose Centerpoint ON and OFF.
- **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**^{*1}: Sets the amount of volume increase.

Adjusting the Sound

The **Speed Volume Compensation**^{*2} and **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**^{*1} adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound by the following procedure.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Sound**.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Mid / Treble**, **Balance / Fader**^{*2}, **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**^{*1}, **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**^{*1}, and **Speed Volume Compensation**^{*2} select **Reset to Default** in each setting item.

*1 : Model with BOSE AMP

*2 : Model with Normal AMP

Display Setup

You can change the brightness of the audio/information screen.

■ Changing the Screen Brightness

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select the setting you want.

▣ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

To reset the settings, select **Reset to Default**.

System Updates

When an update for your system becomes available, a screen prompting you to update your system will be displayed on the audio/information screen.

System Updates uses the telematics control unit (TCU) or Wi-Fi communication capability to operate.

System Updates

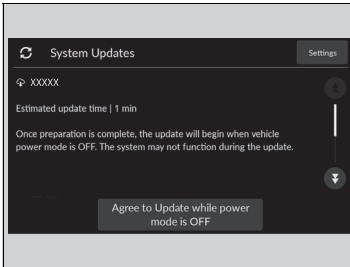
If new software has been released, perform an update as soon as possible.

If a system update fails, please consult a dealer.

System updates that change specifications may result in some discrepancies with the information in this owner's manual. For the most up-to-date information, please refer to the Honda homepage.

Certain features may not be available during system updates.

Performing System Updates



1. Select **System Updates**.
2. Select **Agree to Update while power mode is OFF** to give permission for the update.
 - ▶ The installation progress screen will be displayed.
 - ▶ While the power mode is set to OFF, an update started notification appears for a few seconds.
3. The next time the power mode is turned to ON, the system update results screen will be displayed.
 - ▶ System update results can also be viewed from **Settings → Update History** within System Update.

Performing System Updates

Make sure your vehicle is stopped in a safe location before starting a system update.

If you have pressed **Agree to Update while power mode is OFF** on the agreement screen when an update is being offered, or **Automatic Update** is set to **ON**, and the update started notification is not displayed even though the power mode is set to OFF, it may be due to one or more of the conditions listed below. For more information, consult a dealer.

- The shift position is not in **[P]**.
- The vehicle is providing one or more emergency notifications.
- The 12-Volt Battery is depleted.

If the system is being updated via Wi-Fi, you will not be able to use this feature in some situations based on Wi-Fi authentication methods.

For example:


- The connection requires you to log in.
- Agreement to terms of use is required.

If you are disconnected from the network, the download will be stopped.

Download is resumed when a new network connection is established.

■ System Updates Settings

You can change or confirm system update settings.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select the option you want to change or confirm.

The following settings can be set.

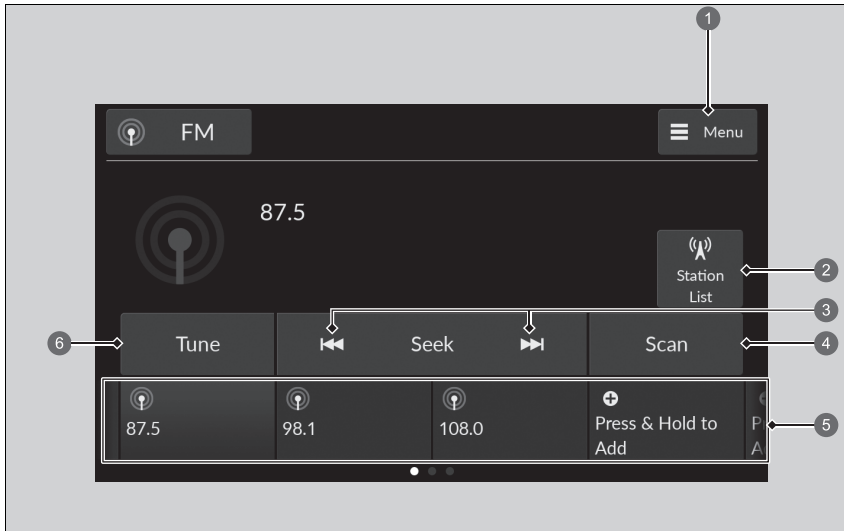
- **Automatic Update**
- **Automatic Download**
- **Control Unit Versions**
- **Connection Setup**
 - **Wi-Fi Connection** P. 378
- **Update History**

System Updates Settings

To perform a System Update via Wi-Fi, check the box next to your desired network in

General Settings → Connections → Wi-Fi → Options → Add Network or **Saved Networks**.

Playing AM/FM Radio



- ❶ Menu Icon
- ❷ Station List Icon
- ❸ Seek Icon
- ❹ Scan Icon
- ❺ Favourite Station Icons
- ❻ Tune Icon

■ Favourite Station

To add a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold **Press & Hold to Add**.

■ Editing a favourite station

Select and hold to desired favourite station icon.

The following items are available:

- **Remove Favourite:** Delete the favourite station icon from the favourite station list.
- **Replace with** (number): Replace the stored favourite station icon.
- **Add to Home:** Add the shortcut icon of the stored favourite station to the home screen.

■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

►► Favourite Station


Switching the Audio Mode

Roll the left selector wheel or select the audio source icon on the screen.


►► **Audio Remote Controls** P. 346

You can store 12 AM/FM stations into preset memory.

■ Scan

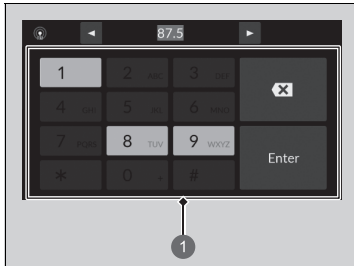
Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Stop** or press the  button.

■ Seek

Selects  or  to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

■ Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

Selects to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.



① On-screen Keyboard

1. Select **Tune**.
2. Enter the desired radio frequency using the on-screen keyboard.
3. Select **Enter** to tune into the frequency.

■ Radio Data System (RDS)*

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Refresh**.

⌘ Radio Data System (RDS)*

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

■ Menu

Adjusts the sound settings and changes the RDS* settings.

1. Select **Menu**.
2. Select an option.
 - **Sound Settings:** Adjusts the sound settings
 - **Adjusting the Sound** P. 360
 - **RDS Information*:** Turns on and off the RDS information. (**ON***¹/**OFF**)

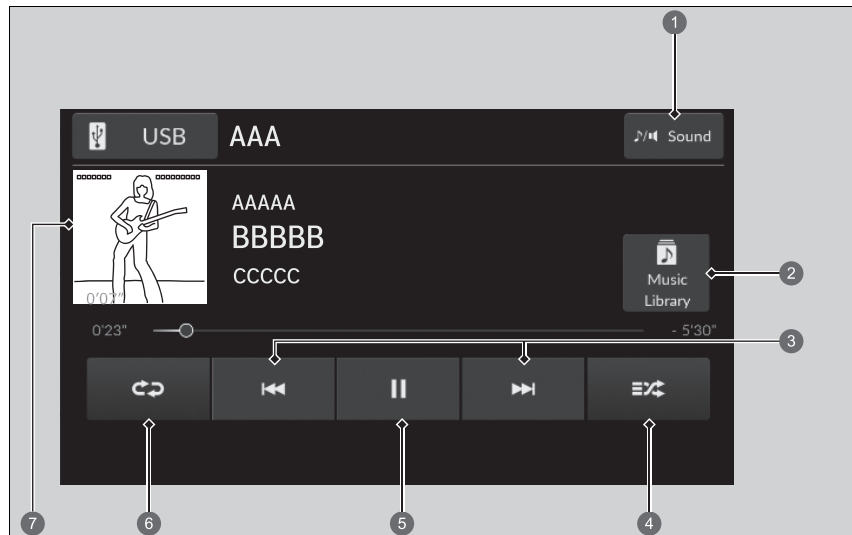
*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Music Playback via Wired Connection

Using your USB connector, connect the device to the USB port, then select the USB icon.

► USB Ports P. 247



① Sound Icon

② Music Library Icon

③ Track Icons

④ Shuffle Icon

⑤ Play/Pause Icon

⑥ Repeat Icon

⑦ Cover Art

■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

1. Select **Music Library**.
2. Select a search category (e.g., Artists, Albums, etc.).
3. Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.

■ Shuffle/Repeat

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Shuffle



Shuffle off: Shuffle mode turns off.



Shuffle all songs: Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat



Repeat off: Repeat mode turns off.





Repeat song: Repeats the current song.




Repeat all: Repeats all songs.

■ How to Change a Song

You can select  or  to change songs. Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

 **Adjusting the Sound** P. 360

⌘ Music Playback via Wired Connection

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

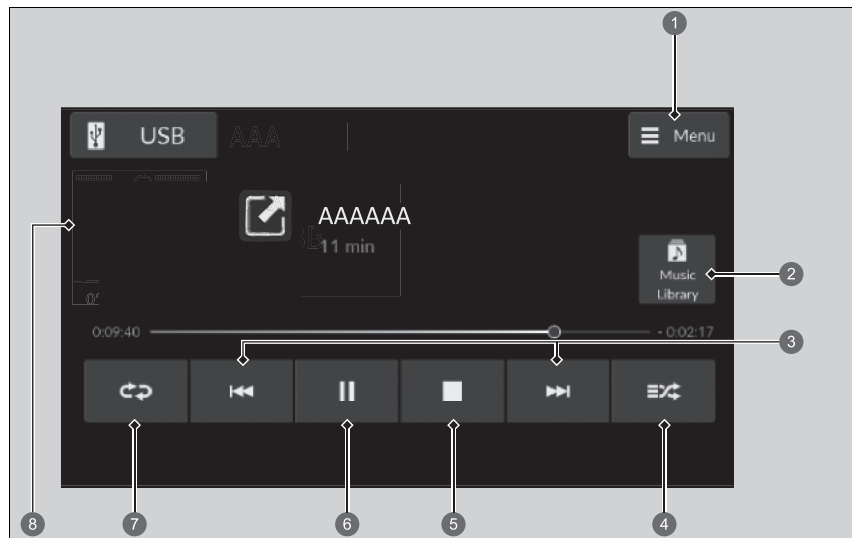
If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay, the USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay.

Music/Video * Playback via USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays audio files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC*, FLAC, WAV, opus, MP4*, AVI*, MKV*, 3GPP*, WebM*, or MPEG2-TS* format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB icon.

➡ **USB Ports** P. 247



- | | |
|--|---|
| ➊ Menu Icon (Playing a video)/
Sound Icon (Playing a music) | ➋ Stop Icon (Playing a video) |
| ➌ Music Library Icon | ➍ Play/Pause Icon |
| ➎ Track/Video Icons | ➏ Repeat Icon |
| ➐ Random Icon | ➑ Cover Art (Playing a music)/
Mini Player (Playing a video) |

*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

* Not available on all models

■ How to Select a File from the Music Search List

1. Select **Music Library**.
2. Select a search category (e.g., Artists, Albums, Videos, etc.).
3. Continue making selections until you find the song or video of your choice.




■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select random and repeat modes when playing a file.




■ Random/Repeat

Repeatedly select the random or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Random

-  **Random off:** Random mode turns off.
-  **Random all tracks:** Plays all files in random order.
-  **Random in folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Repeat

-  **Repeat off:** Repeat mode turns off.
-  **Repeat track:** Repeats the current playing file.
-  **Repeat in folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

▶▶ Music/Video * Playback via USB Flash Drive



Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**
P. 440

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **The selected file cannot be played on this system**, then skips to the next file.

■ How to Change a File

You can select  or  to change file. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

■ Sound (Playing a Music File)

You can adjust the sound settings.

🔧 **Adjusting the Sound** P. 360

■ Menu (Playing a Video File)

Changes the USB settings when playing a video file.

1. Select **Menu**.
2. Select an option.
 - **Sound Settings**: Adjusts the sound settings.
🔧 **Adjusting the Sound** P. 360
 - **Image Settings**: Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.
🔧 **Display Setup** P. 361
 - **Aspect Ratio**: Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio.
(**Original/Normal***1/**Full/Zoom**)
 - **Overlay Clock Location**: Changes the clock display layout. (**OFF***1/**Upper right/Upper left/Lower right/Lower left**)

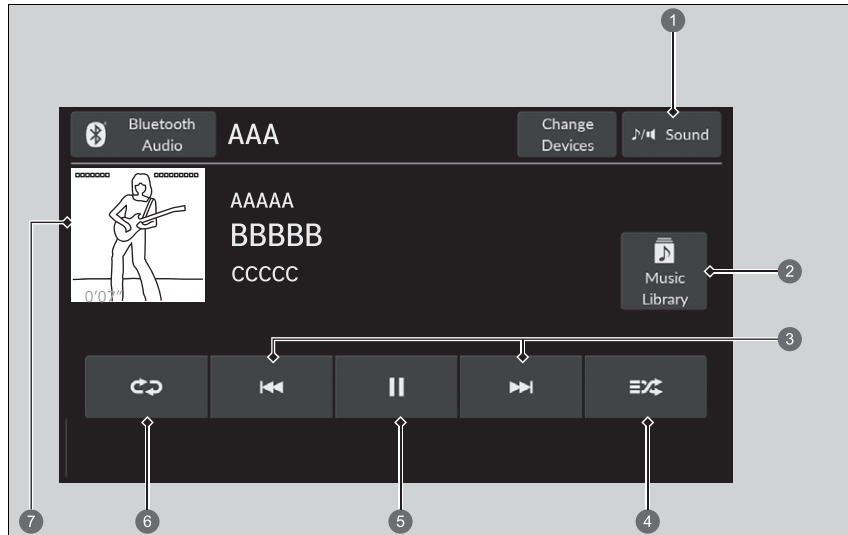
*1: Default Setting

Playing *Bluetooth®* Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 426



- ① Sound Icon
- ② Music Library Icon
- ③ Track Icons
- ④ Shuffle Icon

- ⑤ Play/Pause Icon
- ⑥ Repeat Icon
- ⑦ Cover Art

▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth®* Audio

Not all Bluetooth-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there is more than one paired phone in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in the *Bluetooth®* device list.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 426

The connected phone for *Bluetooth®* Audio can be different.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth®* Audio from that phone will be unavailable.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 426

■ To Play *Bluetooth®* Audio Files

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
 📱 **Phone Setup** P. 426
2. Select the *Bluetooth®* Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth®* Audio, may already be connected.

■ To play or pause a file

Select the play/pause icon.

■ Searching for Music

1. Select **Music Library**.
2. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
3. Select an item.
 ► The selection begins playing.

🔊 To Play *Bluetooth®* Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone manufacturer's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Devices**.

📱 **Phone Setup** P. 426

🔊 Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth®* device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.

■ Shuffle/Repeat

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle



Shuffle off: Shuffle mode to off.



Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat



Repeat off: Repeat mode to off.



Repeat Song: Repeats the current song.



Repeat Group: Repeats the current group.



Repeat all: Repeats all songs.



⌘ How to Select a Play Mode

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the functions may not be displayed.

Wi-Fi Connection

This vehicle is equipped with Wi-Fi connectivity. You can connect to an external Wi-Fi hotspot or communication device.

■ Connect the vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Wi-Fi**.
 - To change the Wi-Fi settings, select **Options**.
5. Select the access point you want to connect to the system.
6. Select **Connect**.
 - When the connection is successful, the status text **Connected** next to the network name is displayed on the list.
7. Press the  button to go back to the home screen.

» Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.




» Connect the vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot

You cannot go through the setting procedure while the vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.


Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the  icon on the Wi-Fi network list. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.

In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

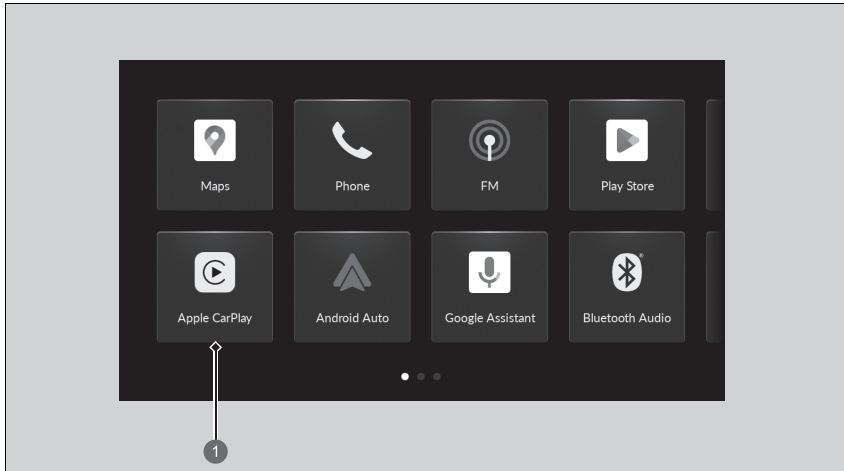
When you select **Access Point**, you can set up a Wireless connection from the phone to the vehicle.

 **Customized Features** P. 401

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB port on the front panel or wirelessly, and the Apple CarPlay icon is selected, you can use Apple CarPlay on the audio/information screen.

🔌 **USB Ports** P. 247



① **Apple CarPlay** icon

📱 Apple CarPlay

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 10.0.2 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

We recommend using the latest OS.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or Hands-Free Telephone (HFT). Calls or music playback are only made through Apple CarPlay. Other previously paired phones can use the *Bluetooth*® Audio.

When using Hands Free, you can only control it with Siri.

🔌 **Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri** P. 383

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

■ Apple CarPlay Menu

The following items are only representative examples. Applications displayed on the screen can be changed on your smartphone.

- **Phone**

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voicemail.

- **Messages**

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

- **Music**

Play music stored on your iPhone.

- **Maps**

Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

- **Honda**

Select the **Honda** icon to go back to the home screen.

📱 Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

■ Connecting Apple CarPlay Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB port using the USB cable.

📌 **USB Ports** P. 247

▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.


2. Select **Yes**.

▶ If you do not allow this consent, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Connections** settings menu.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the home screen


1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Apple CarPlay**.
3. Select **Connect Phone** or **Search for Device**.
4. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's *Bluetooth®* system.
📌 **Phone Setup** P. 426
5. Select **Yes**.

📌 Apple CarPlay

Only initialize Apple CarPlay when you are safely parked.

When Apple CarPlay first detects your iPhone, you will need to set up your iPhone. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your iPhone.



You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:

Press the  button → **General Settings** → **Connections** → **Manage Device Connections** → Select Device



Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.


■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the *Bluetooth®* device list

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Manage Device Connections**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 **Phone Setup** P. 426
7. Select **Yes**.
 - If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly with the steering wheel

1. Press and hold the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel.
2. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 **Phone Setup** P. 426
3. Select **Yes**.
 - If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the  (Talk) button to activate Siri.

Press again to deactivate Siri.

Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

⌘ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit
www.apple.com/ios/siri.

Android Auto™

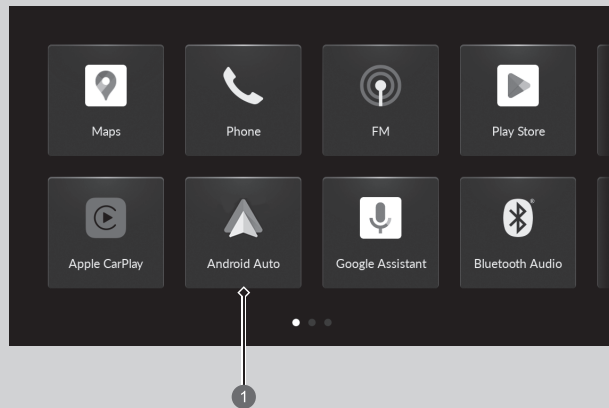
When you connect an Android™ phone to the audio system via the USB port on the front panel or wirelessly, and the Android Auto icon is selected, you can use Android Auto on the audio/information screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

🔧 **USB Ports** P. 247

NOTE:

Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.



① **Android Auto** Icon

Android Auto™

We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto. *Bluetooth* A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.


To use Android Auto on a smartphone with Android 9.0 (Pie) or earlier, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To directly access the Android Auto phone function, press **Phone** on the home screen.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

To use each of Android Auto's features: say a wake-up word while the Android Auto screen is displayed, or press and hold the  (talk) button to activate Google Assistant.

🔧 **Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition** P. 388

Android Auto Menu

The following items are only representative examples. Applications displayed on the screen can be changed on your smartphone.

- **Maps**

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

The audio/Information screen shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination.

- **Phone**

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

- **Honda**

Select the **Honda** icon to go back to the home screen.

Android Auto™

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

■ Connecting Android Auto Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

1. Connect the Android phone to the USB port using the USB cable.

📱 **USB Ports** P. 247

- The confirmation screen will be displayed.


2. Select **Yes**.

- If you do not allow this consent, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Connections** settings menu.

■ Connect Android Auto Wirelessly


■ Connect Android Auto wirelessly on the home screen

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Android Auto**.
3. Select **Connect Phone** or **Search for Device**.
4. Pair the device to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® system.
📱 **Phone Setup** P. 426
5. Select **Yes**.

🔌 Connecting Android Auto Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.



You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:

Press the  button → **General Settings** → **Connections** → **Manage Device Connections** → Select Device



Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by Google's Privacy Policy.


■ Connect Android Auto wirelessly on the *Bluetooth®* device list

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Manage Device Connections**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the Android phone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 **Phone Setup** P. 426
7. Select **Yes**.
 - If your Android phone asks for permission to accept an Android Auto connection, accept to connect.

■ Connect Android Auto wirelessly with the steering wheel

1. Press and hold the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel.
2. Pair the Android phone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
 **Phone Setup** P. 426
3. Select **Yes**.
 - If your Android phone asks for permission to accept an Android Auto connection, accept to connect.

■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the  (Talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.

Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

▣ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

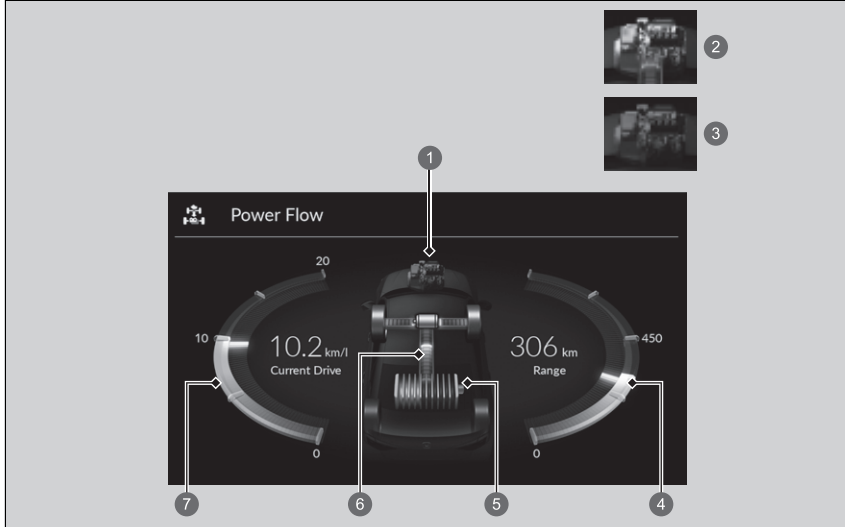
Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Power Flow

Displays the motor and engine power flow, average fuel economy, and range.



- ① Engine ② Engine ON ③ Engine OFF
- ④ Driving Range ⑤ High Voltage Battery Level Gauge ⑥ Power Flow
- ⑦ Average Fuel Economy (Current Drive)

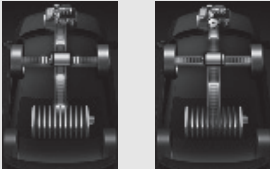


Power Flow

The power flow monitor is also displayed on the driver information interface.


▶ **Power Flow Monitor** P. 150

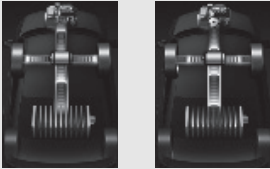


Displays the power flow, indicating what is supplying power to the vehicle and/or charging the battery.

- The indicator for the power transmission appears in blue, and for the battery charging operation, in green.

Display	Colour of indicators	Vehicle's Condition
	Blue	Power is being supplied by the High Voltage battery and the engine-driven generator.
	Blue	Power is being supplied by the High Voltage battery.
	Blue	Power is being supplied by the engine-driven generator.

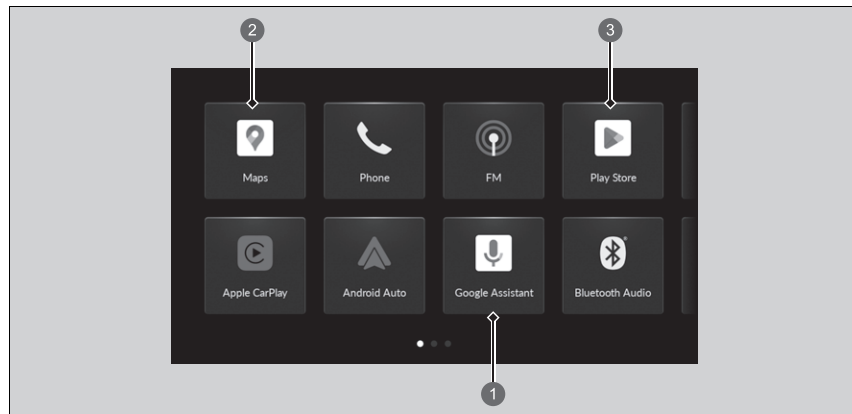
Power Flow

While the engine provides propulsion directly to the wheels, the  icon appears in the power flow monitor on the screen.

Display	Colour of indicators	Vehicle's Condition
	Blue and Green	Power is being supplied directly by the engine and the High Voltage battery is being charged by the engine-driven generator.
	Green	The High Voltage battery is being charged through regenerative braking.
	Green	The High Voltage battery is being charged by the engine-driven generator.

Google built-in

You can use the features available with Google built-in on the audio screen.



- ❶ Google Assistant
- ❷ Google Maps
- ❸ Google Play

Google built-in

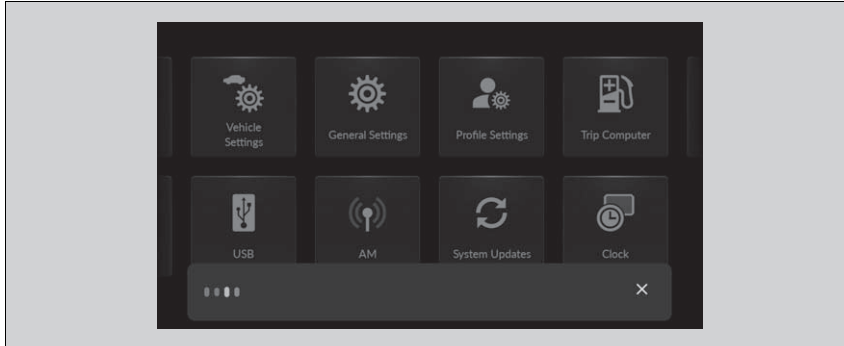
- Google, Google Play, and Google Maps are trademarks of Google LLC.
- For more details on Google Apps and Services' features, visit the Google homepage.




Additional information for Google Apps and Services is available at Honda Web site.

■ Google Assistant

You can operate features with hands-free help from Google Assistant.



You can activate Google Assistant by:

- Using wake words.
 - Wake words vary by region and language. Refer to the Google homepage for more information.
- Pressing the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel.
- Selecting the Google Assistant icon on the audio/information screen.

☒ Google Assistant

Below are example voice commands that can be used once Google Assistant is activated:

- Play music.
- Play radio.

Refer to the Google homepage for more information.



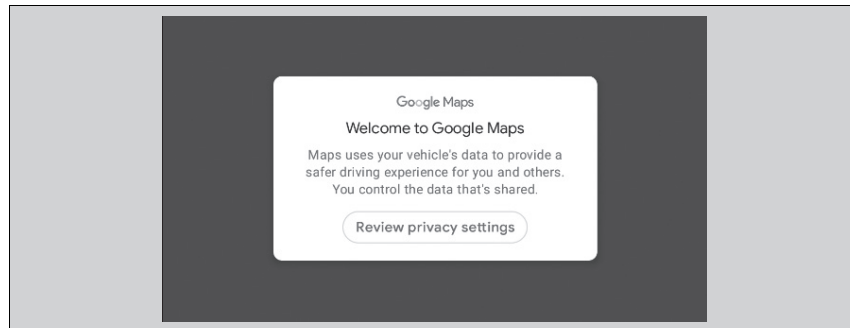
You can customize language and other settings regarding **Google Assistant**.

☒ How to Customize the General Settings

P. 401

Google Maps

Google Maps helps you reach your next destination faster with real-time traffic info, automatic rerouting, and voice control.



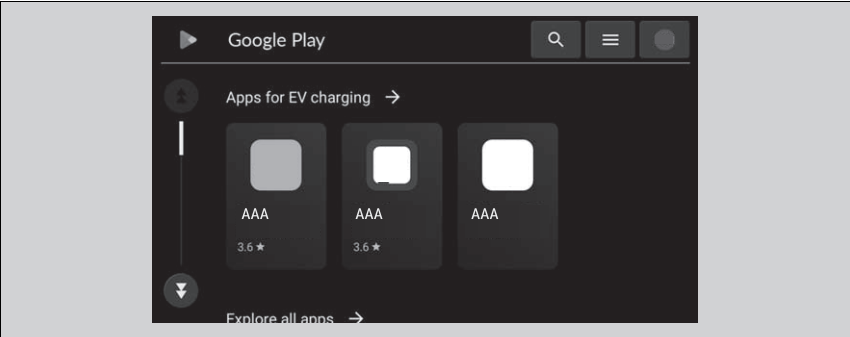
Google Maps

Operate when vehicle is stopped in a safe location.

When your Google Account is linked with a valid user account, destinations stored on other devices (home, work, favourites, previous searches, etc.) can be displayed. When the device and the vehicle are logged into the same Google Account, changing information on the device will change it on Google Maps as well.

Google Play

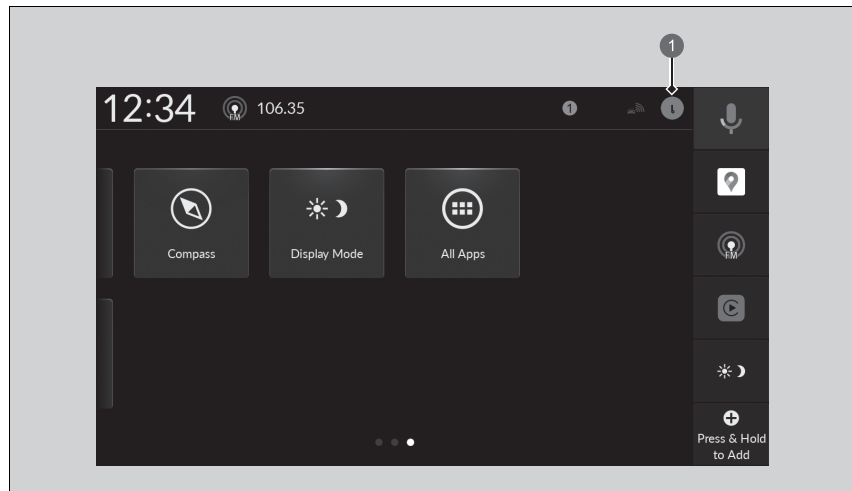
Download your favourite apps on Google Play.



Google Play

The vehicle must be stopped in order to download an app.
Operate when vehicle is stopped in a safe location.

User Information



① User Information

» User Information

This feature cannot be used while driving.

You can customize settings individually for each user.

➤ **Profile Settings** P. 400

You can customize security settings for each user. If you have forgotten security settings, you will need to delete the user and create a new one. If you have forgotten security settings for the Owner user, please contact a dealer or Honda Customer Services.

Certain features are unavailable when using a newly created user or the Guest user.

You can add and change users, as well as customize user settings.

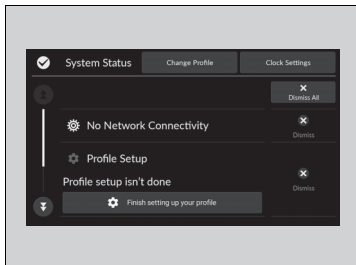
By registering a User, you can personalize your vehicle settings.

You can select a user when the audio/information screen loads, even when the doors are open or unlocked.

By linking your profile with your Google Account, you can enjoy a more personalized Google built-in experience. For more assistance on account linking, visit the Google homepage.



■ Registering a User



1. Select User Info.
 - You can also add users by selecting **Profile Settings**.
 ➤ **Profile Settings** P. 400
 - You can add users even when the doors are open or unlocked.
2. Select **Change Profile**.
3. Select **Add profile**.
4. Enter User Information.
 ➤ **Start Up** P. 342

■ Switching Users

1. Select User Info.
 - You can also change users by selecting **Profile Settings**.
 ➤ **Profile Settings** P. 400
 - You can switch users even when the doors are open or unlocked.
2. Select **Change Profile**.
3. Select the User you want to use.
4. Enter User Information.

» Registering a User

Profile can be changed only when the vehicle is parked.

The Guest user cannot add new users.

You can add up to 4 Users other than the Owner user and the Guest user.

When you add a user, the audio/information screen is loaded under that user.

» Switching Users

Profile can be changed only when the vehicle is parked.

Users with customized security settings can restrict screen operations by selecting the **Screen Lock** shortcut.

The transmitter settings may not be switched when you change the Owner user. If this happens, change to a different user and then try switching to the desired user again.

■ Deleting Users

1. Select **Profile Settings**.
2. Select **Manage Profile**.
3. Select **Profiles & accounts**.
4. Select **Delete your profile**.

☒ Deleting Users

When the profile currently being used is deleted, the audio/information screen is loaded under the Guest user.

While using the Owner user, you can delete other User via General Settings → Advanced Settings.

☒ **Customized Features** P. 401

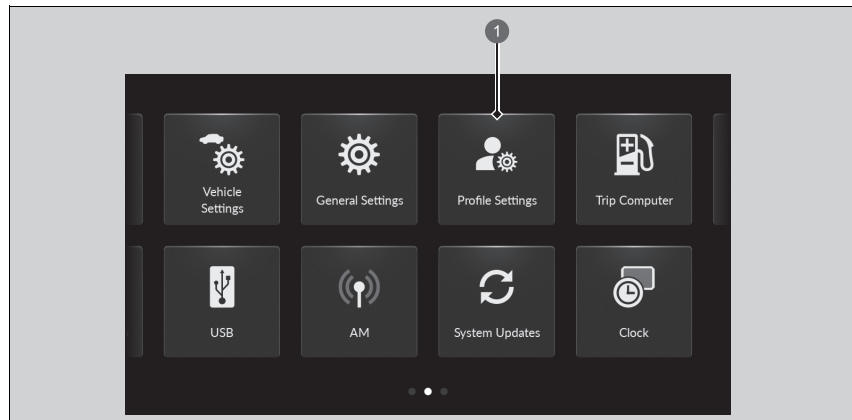
Depending on the version of your OS, the steps for deleting a user may differ from the instructions on this page. Follow the on-screen prompts.

Profile Settings

You can add and change users, as well as customize user settings.

■ How to Customize the Profile Settings

Press the  button, select **Profile Settings**, and select a setting item you want.



① Profile Settings

■ Change Profile

You can change and add users.

➡ **User Information** P. 396

■ Manage Profile

You can **Manage Profile** settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen.

Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

➡ Profile Settings

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to **[P]**.
- Set the parking brake.

To customize features detail, refer to the following.

➡ **Change Profile** P. 400

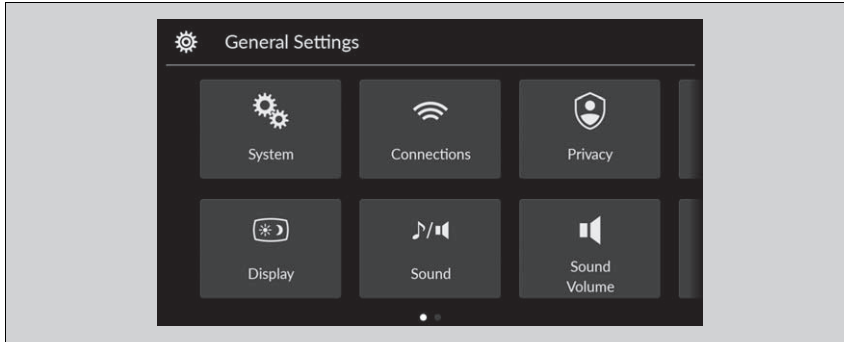
➡ **Manage Profile** P. 400

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **General Settings**, then select a setting item.



▶ Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to **[P]**.

Continued

■ System

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Date & Time	Set Date & Time	Automatic Date & Time	Selects ON to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select OFF to cancel this function. OFF/ON *1
		Set Date	Adjusts date. 🔗 Adjusting the Clock P. 357 —
		Set Time	Adjusts clock. 🔗 Adjusting the Clock P. 357 —
	Time Zone*	Automatic Time Zone	Sets the navigation system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones. OFF/ON *1
		(Select time zone)	Changes the time zone manually. —

*1:Default Setting

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Date & Time	Date Format	Sets the date format.	Day-of-week, MM DD,YYYY/ YYYY.MM.DD Day-of-week/ YYYY.MM.DD (Day-of-week)/ Day-of-week DD.MM.YYYY* ² / DD.MM.YYYY* ³
	Time Format	Selects the digital clock display from 12-H to 24-H .	12-H* ¹ /24-H
Language		Changes the display language.	English* ¹ , Thai* ¹ , Português* ¹ , or Bahasa Indonesia Some languages may not be available in all regions. Check the audio/information screen for available options.
Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	Low* ¹ /High

*1:Default Setting

*2:Default Setting for Brazilian models

*3:Default Setting for except Brazilian models

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
About	IP address	Displays the Android setting items.	—
	Wi-Fi MAC address		
	Bluetooth MAC address		
	Serial Number		
	Up Time		
	Model Number		
	Android Version		
	Kernel Version		
	Build Number		
Software Version			
Factory Data Reset		Resets all the settings to their factory default. 🔧 Defaulting All the Settings P. 420	Cancel/Continue

■ Connections

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Manage Device Connections	Options	Bluetooth Turns the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® on and off.	On*¹/Off
		Priority Device Information Displays the priority device.	—
		Change Name Changes vehicle name for <i>Bluetooth</i> ® connection setting.	—
		Smartphone Projection Screen Size Changes the screen size of the smartphone projection.	Normal/Wide*¹
	+ Connect New Device		—
	(Saved Devices)		—
Wi-Fi	Options	Wi-Fi Allow vehicle to connect to Wi-Fi.	OFF/ON*¹
		Add Network Allows you to connect to a new external network.	—
		Saved Networks Delete a saved network or change update permission settings for the selected network.	—

*1:Default Setting

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
Access Point	Options	Access Point	Allow wireless connection from the phone to the vehicle. This feature must be turned on for wireless Apple CarPlay or Android Auto to work.	OFF*1/ON
		Edit Access Point Settings	Allows you to confirm hotspot settings and edit hotspot connection information.	—
Data Connection Options	Set up Wi-Fi	Sets personal hotspot (phone tethering). 📶 Wi-Fi Connection P. 378		—

* 1:Default Setting

■ Privacy


Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Data Sharing with Honda	Turns the data sharing Disable and Enable .	Disable/Enable ^{*1}
Microphone	Turns the microphone on and off. e-call can still be used regardless of settings. Sets the data sharing permission for each function.	
Location		
Infotainment system data		
App permissions		
System-wide Permission Settings		
Data sharing with Google ^{*2}		
Ads ^{*2}		
Google legal ^{*2}	<div>Google Terms of Service^{*2}</div> <div>Google Privacy Policy^{*2}</div>	<div>—</div>

*1:Default Setting
*2:Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen. Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

■ Display

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
Display OFF	Turns the audio/information screen brightness off.	—

■ Sound

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<div>Bass / Mid / Treble</div> <div>Treble</div> <div>Midrange</div> <div>Bass</div>	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.  Adjusting the Sound P. 360	—
Audio Zones & Balance / Fader*		
Bose Centerpoint Surround*		
Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation*		
Balance / Fader*		
Speed Volume Compensation*		

■ Sound Volume

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System Sounds	Adjusts the settings of the sounds' volume.	0 ~ 2* ¹ ~ 3
Voice Recognition		1 ~ 2* ¹ ~ 11
Navigation Guidance		0 ~ 6* ¹ ~ 11
Phone Calls		0 ~ 20* ¹ ~ 40

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Camera

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Rear Wide Camera	Guidelines	Fixed Guideline	Selects whether the guidelines appear on the rear camera monitor. ▶ Multi-View Rear Camera P. 587	OFF/ON*1
		Dynamic Guideline	Selects whether the guidelines appear on the rear camera monitor. ▶ Multi-View Rear Camera P. 587	OFF/ON*1
LaneWatch	Show with indicator		Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a left*2/right*3 turn.	OFF/ON*1
	Display Time after Indicator Off		Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after the turn signal lever returns to the centre.	0 second*1/2 seconds
	Show Reference Line		Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor.	OFF/ON*1

*1:Default Setting
*2:Right-hand Drive Type
*3:Left-hand Drive Type

■ Voice Control

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Default Assist App	Selects the assistant apps.	None/Google Assistant* ¹
Listen for "Hey Siri"* ²	Toggles Siri activation when you say "Hey Siri".	ON/OFF* ³
Google Assistant* ⁴	Sets the functions of Google Assistant .	—

*1:Default Setting
*2:Activates when the iPhone is connected.
*3:Default Setting (When the Apple CarPlay is launched, setting will be switch to **ON**.)
*4:Displayed only when assist apps is **Google Assistant**.

■ Security

You can customize security settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen.
Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

■ Google

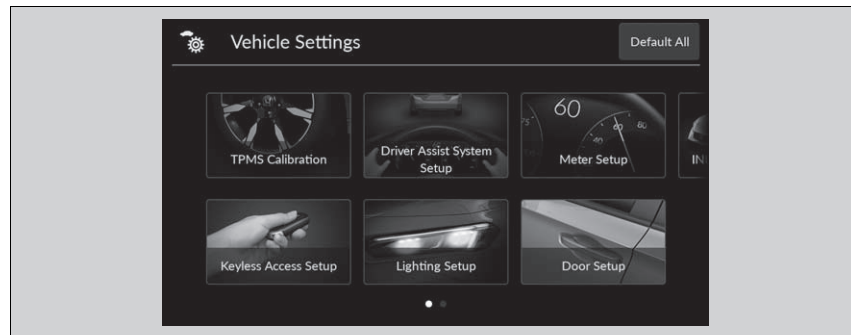
You can customize Google settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen.
Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

■ Advanced Settings

You can customize advanced system settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen.
Specifications may be changed via system updates, etc.

■ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, press the  button, and then select **Vehicle Settings** and select a setting item.



■ TPMS Calibration*

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
TPMS Calibration	Calibrates the deflation warning system. ➤ Deflation Warning System* P. 496	Calibrate

* Not available on all models

■ Driver Assist System Setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts. ➤ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 509	Far/Normal^{*1}/Near
ACC vehicle ahead detected beep	Turns audible notification On/Off when vehicle has moved in/out of adaptive cruise control range. ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 530	ON/OFF^{*1}
Lead Car Departure Notification System*	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system. ➤ Lead Car Departure Notification System* P. 564	Normal^{*1}/Early/OFF
Road departure mitigation setting	Selects operating mode of the Road Departure Mitigation system. ➤ Road Departure Mitigation System P. 523	Warning only/Early/Normal^{*1}/Delayed
Lane keep assist beep	Switches the LKAS suspend alert beeps on and off. ➤ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 551	ON/OFF^{*1}
Driver attention monitor	Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor. ➤ Driver Attention Monitor P. 138, 158	OFF/Tactile alert only/Tactile and audible alert^{*1}
Rear Sensor Setting*	Turns the Rear Parking Sensor On or Off. ➤ Parking Sensor System* P. 582	ON^{*1}/OFF

*1:Default Setting

■ Meter setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust outside temp. display	Adjusts outside temperature reading by a few degrees. ➤ Outside Temperature P. 128	-3°C ~ ±0°C* ¹ ~ +3°C
“Trip A” reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip A. ➤ Range/Fuel/Trip Meter P. 133, 151 ➤ Speed/Time/Trip Meter P. 135, 154	When Fully Refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset * ¹
“Trip B” reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip B. ➤ Range/Fuel/Trip Meter P. 133, 151 ➤ Speed/Time/Trip Meter P. 135, 154	When Fully Refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset * ¹
Alarm volume control	Changes volume level of all system warnings, door opening warning, and indicator.	Max/Mid * ¹ /Min
Fuel efficiency backlight*	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	ON * ¹ /OFF
Turn by turn display	Turns the pop-up information on/off in the turn-by-turn navigation in the driver information interface. ➤ Turn-by-Turn Directions P. 137	ON * ¹ /OFF
Rear seat reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	ON * ¹ /OFF
Fuel Economy Unit*	Selects the fuel consumption units.	km/l * ¹ / l/100km

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Keyless Access Setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door Unlock Mode*	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	Driver Door Only* ¹ /All Doors
Keyless access beep volume	Changes the beep volume of unlocking /locking the doors.	High* ¹ /Low
Keyless access light flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	ON* ¹ /OFF
Keyless access beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	ON* ¹ /OFF
Remote start system ON/OFF	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	ON* ¹ /OFF

*1:Default Setting

■ Lighting Setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto High-Beam	Turns the auto high-beam on and off.	ON ^{*1} /OFF
Interior light dimmer duration	Selects the length of time the interior lights stay on after doors are closed. ☞ Interior Lights P. 226	60sec/30sec ^{*1} /15sec
Headlight auto OFF timer	Selects the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. ☞ Automatic Lighting Off Feature P. 202	60sec/30sec/15sec ^{*1} /0sec
Headlight integration with wipers	Turns headlight function at wiper operation On/Off when the headlight is in AUTO setting. ☞ Headlight Integration with Wipers P. 202	ON ^{*1} /OFF

*1:Default Setting

■ Door Setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto door lock	Changes the setting for the automatic locking feature.	With vehicle speed*¹/Shift from P/ OFF
Auto door unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically.	Brazilian models OFF/All Doors When Ignition Switched Off/Driver Door With IGN Off/All Doors With Shift To P/ Driver Door With Shift To P*¹ Southeast Asian models All doors with Shift to P*¹/All Doors When Ignition Switched OFF/OFF
Key And Remote Unlock Mode*	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first push of the keyless remote or built-in key.	Driver Door Only*¹/All Doors
Walk away lock	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	ON/OFF*¹
Keyless lock notification	Turns flash of exterior lights on/off when doors are locked/unlocked by keyless remote. 🔑 Using the Remote Transmitter P. 187	ON*¹/OFF
Auto Folding Door Mirror	Changes the door mirror auto-folding operation.	ON*¹/OFF
Lock Presetting	Changes the settings for the lock presetting function.	ON*¹/OFF
Keyless Remote Power Window Control*	Turns the remote window control on and off.	ON*¹/OFF

*¹:Default Setting
* Not available on all models

■ INDIVIDUAL Settings

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Powertrain	Selects the responsiveness of the powertrain. ▶ Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings P. 485	ECON/NORMAL* ¹ /SPORT
Steering	Selects the level of steering effort. ▶ Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings P. 485	NORMAL* ¹ /SPORT
Engine Sound	Selects the effect of engine sound. ▶ Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings P. 485	NORMAL* ¹ /SPORT
Gauge*	Selects the gauges to be displayed in the Driver Information Interface. ▶ Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings P. 485	NORMAL* ¹ /SPORT

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Defaulting All the Settings


Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

■ Defaulting System Settings


Only the Owner user can execute.

If current profile is not the Owner user, please switch users.

📖 **Switching Users** P. 398

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
 - A confirmation message appears on the screen.
5. Select **Continue** to reset the settings.
6. Select **Reset** to reset the settings.
 - The system will reboot.

■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Default all**.
4. Select **Yes**.

🔧 Defaulting All the Settings

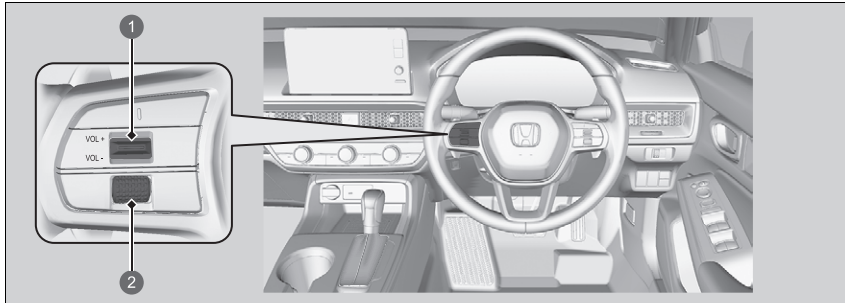
When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

HFT Buttons



❶ VOL+ / VOL- (Volume) Switch

❷ Left Selector Wheel

Left Selector Wheel: Roll up or down to select. **Phone** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **ON**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay, HFT/HFL is unavailable.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 426

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- If the microphones pick up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, the volume level is able to change by the audio system's volume.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

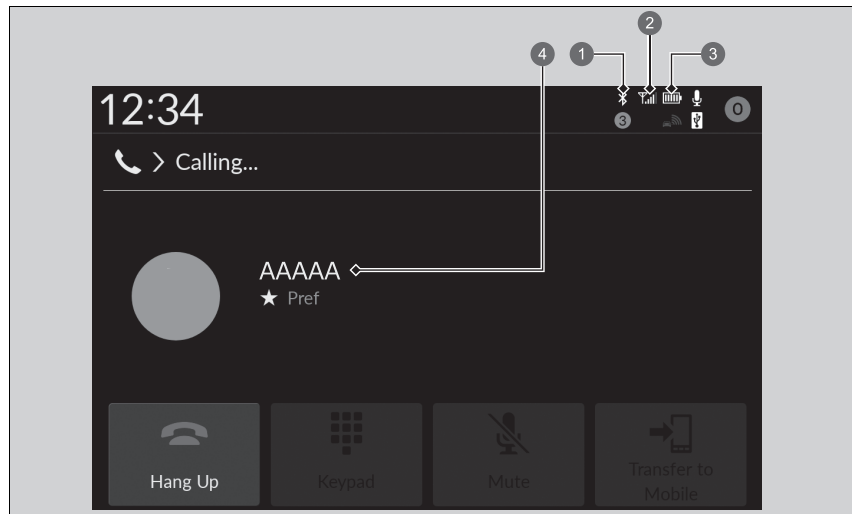
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



- ① *Bluetooth* Indicator
Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.
- ② Signal Strength
- ③ Battery Level Status
- ④ Caller's Name (If registered)/Caller's Number (If not registered)

Limitations for Manual Operation

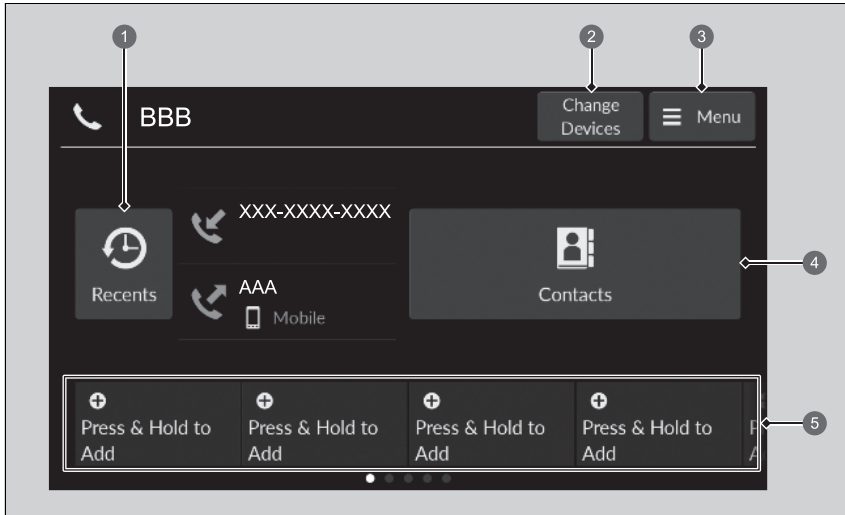
Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system. Select **Phone** to display the phone screen.



- ① Recents
- ② Change Devices
- ③ Menu
- ④ Contacts
- ⑤ Press & Hold to Add (Existing entry list)

HFT Menus

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.

Recents: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.

➤ **To make a call using the call history** P. 435

Change Devices: Pairs a new phone to the system and connect, disconnect, or delete a paired device.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 426

Menu: Changes the phone settings.

➤ **Phone Menu Screen** P. 425

Contacts: Displays the phonebook of the paired phone.

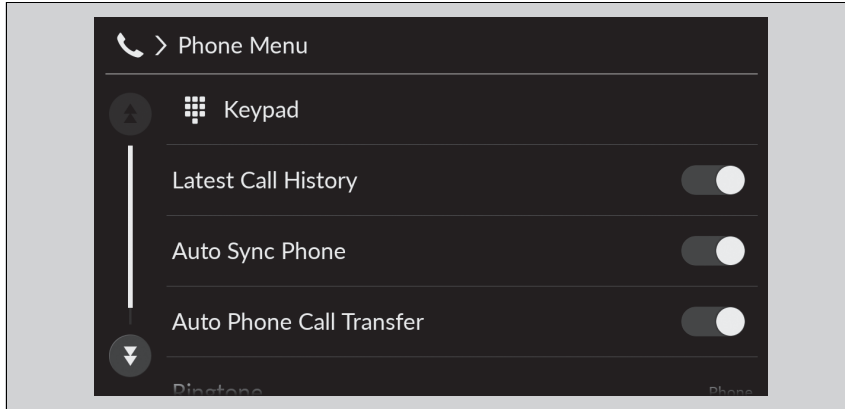
➤ **To make a call using the imported phonebook** P. 434

Press & Hold to Add (Existing entry list): Dials the selected number in the favourite contacts entry.

➤ **Favourite Contacts** P. 431

■ Phone Menu Screen

To display the phone menu screen, select **Menu** on the phone screen.



Keypad: Enters a phone number to dial.

☒ **To make a call using a phone number** P. 434

Latest Call History: Sets whether the history shortcut is displayed in the phone screen.

Auto Sync Phone: Sets phonebook and recent calls data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.

☒ **Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History** P. 429

Auto Phone Call Transfer: Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.

☒ **Automatic Transferring** P. 430


Ringtone: Selects the ringtone.

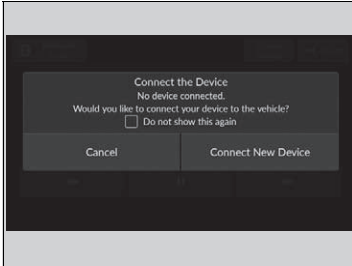
☒ **Ringtone** P. 430

■ Phone Setup


■ **Bluetooth® setup**

You can turn *Bluetooth®* function on and off.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Manage Device Connections**.
5. Select **Options**.
6. Set **Bluetooth** to **ON**.



■ **To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select **Connect New Device**.
4. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select **Search for Devices**.
 - HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
5. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
 - If your phone still does not appear, search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone.

From your phone, search for Vehicle Name.
 - Confirm if the pairing code on the audio/information screen and your phone matches.

This may vary by phone.
6. Select **Yes**.

☒ Phone Setup




Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

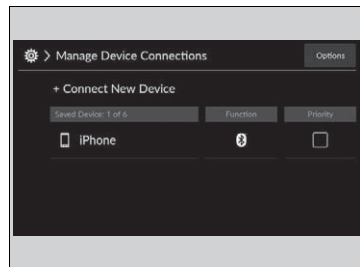
Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.




Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or more icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

- : The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio and HFT.
- : The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.
- : The phone is compatible with Android Auto.






■ To change the currently paired phone




1. Go to the phone screen.
 ■ HFT Menu P. 423
2. Select **Change Devices**.
3. Select **Go to Device List**.
4. Select a phone to connect.
 ► HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
5. Select  or , .
6. Select **Yes**.

►► To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.

You can also switch the connection with the  icon,  or  icon in the device list.

When  or  is selected,  cannot be selected.

■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the phone screen.
 ■ HFT Menu P. 423
2. Select **Change Devices**.
3. Select **Go to Device List**.
4. Select a phone you want to delete.
5. Select **Delete Device**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Delete**.

■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

■ When Auto Sync Phone is set to ON:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

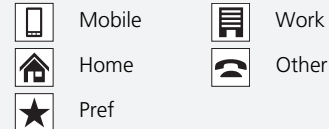
■ Changing the Auto Sync Phone setting

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
 Phone Menu Screen P. 425
2. Select **Auto Sync Phone**.
3. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

⌘ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

On some phones, you will be asked to allow your mobile phonebook to be imported.

When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection.
Call history is updated after every connection or call.

■ Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.

1. Go to the phone menu screen.

☒ **Phone Menu Screen** P. 425

2. Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.

3. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

■ Ringtone

You can change the ringtone setting.

1. Go to the phone menu screen.

☒ **Phone Menu Screen** P. 425

2. Select **Ringtone**.

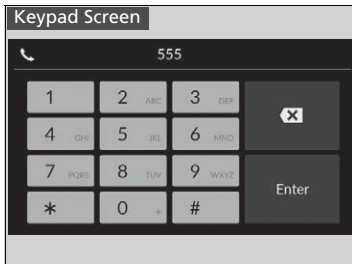
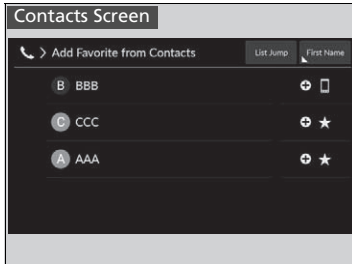
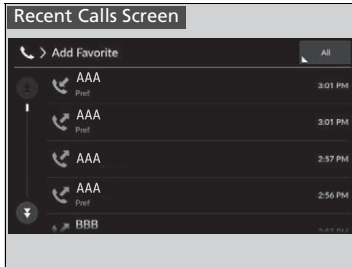
3. Select **Vehicle** or **Phone**.

☒ Ringtone


Vehicle: The fixed ringtone sounds from the speakers.

Phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ringtone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

Favourite Contacts



■ To add a favourite contact

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select and hold **Press & Hold to Add**.
4. Select **From Recents, From Contacts**, or **Using Enter Number**.

From Recents, From Contacts

5. Select the phone number.


Using Enter Number

5. Input number, and select **Enter**.


■ To edit a favourite contact

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select and hold a favourite contact.
4. Select **Edit Favourites**.
5. Select a setting you want.
6. Select **Enter** or select type.

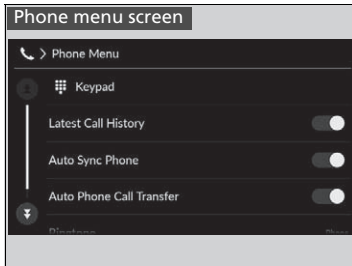
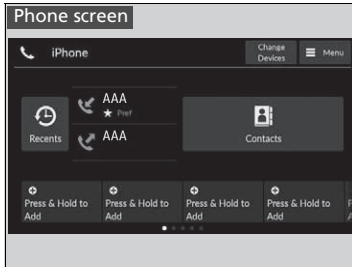
■ Add to the home screen a favourite contact

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select and hold a favourite contact.
4. Select **Add to Home**.

■ To delete a favourite contact

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select and hold a favourite contact.
4. Select **Remove Favourite**.

Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, or favourite contact entries.

► Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone system and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Go to the phone screen.
 - **HFT Menus** P. 423
2. Select **Contacts**.
3. Select a name.
 - You can sort by **First Name** or **Surname**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
4. Select a number.
 - Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
 - **Phone Menu Screen** P. 425
2. Select **Keypad**.
3. Select a number.
 - Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Call**.
 - Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, and **Received**.

1. Go to the phone screen.

☒ **HFT Menus** P. 423

2. Select **Recents**.

► You can sort by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.

3. Select a number.

► Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a favourite contact entry

1. Go to the phone screen.

☒ **HFT Menus** P. 423

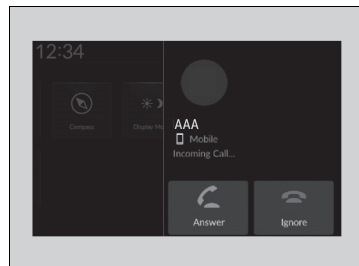
2. Select desired favourite contact.

► Dialing starts automatically.

☒ To make a call using the call history


The call history appears only when a phone is connected to the system.


■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.


You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.


To answer the call, roll up or down to select  (answer) on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.


- If you want to decline or end the call, select  (ignore) on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.


▣ Receiving a Call



Call Waiting

Select  (answer) to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Select  using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.

Select  (ignore) to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Select  if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the  and  on the driver information interface.

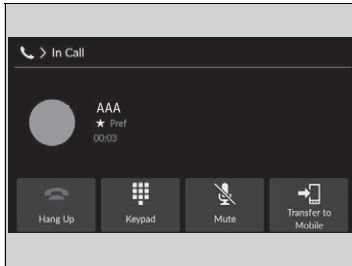
Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

Mute: Mute your voice.

Transfer to Mobile: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

Keypad: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.

- The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

The following error messages are just examples. If you see an error message not listed below, follow the on-screen instructions to clear it.

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
Connect Retry ^{*1}	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File ^{*1} The selected file cannot be played on this system ^{*2}	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about a few seconds, then plays the next file.
No Data	iPod Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, WAV, MP4, AVI, MKV, or ASF/WMV files in the USB flash drive. iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported ^{*1}	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.
Error ^{*2}	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device. Appears when unsupported formats are in the device. Check that compatible files are stored on the device.

*1:Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

*2:Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Error Message	Solution
No response from device (Device No Response)*¹	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
USB hub not supported*¹ USB Hub Unsupported*²	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.
A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.*¹	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.

*1:Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

*2:Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

Model
Made for iPod touch (6th to 7th generation) released between 2015 and 2019
Made for iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max/iPhone SE (2nd generation)/iPhone 12/iPhone 12 Pro/iPhone 12 Pro Max/iPhone 12 mini/iPhone 13/iPhone 13 Pro/iPhone 13 Pro Max/iPhone 13 mini/iPhone 14/iPhone 14 Plus/iPhone 14 Pro/iPhone 14 Pro Max

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Model
Made for iPod touch (6th generation)/iPod touch (7th generation)
Made for iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max/iPhone SE (2nd generation)/iPhone 12 mini/iPhone 12/iPhone 12 Pro/iPhone 12 Pro Max/iPhone 13/iPhone 13 Pro/iPhone 13 Pro Max/iPhone 13 mini/iPhone SE (3rd generation)

» iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

The Lightning connector works with iPhone 5s, iPhone 6, iPhone 6 Plus, iPhone 6S, iPhone 6S Plus, iPhone SE, iPhone 7, iPhone 7 Plus, iPhone 8, iPhone 8 Plus, iPhone X, iPhone XS, iPhone XS Max, iPhone XR, iPhone 11, iPhone 11 Pro, iPhone 11 Pro Max, iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone 12, iPhone 12 Pro, iPhone 12 Pro Max, iPhone 12 mini, iPhone 13, iPhone 13 Pro, iPhone 13 Pro Max, iPhone 13 mini, iPhone 14^{*1}, iPhone 14 Plus^{*1}, iPhone 14 Pro^{*1}, iPhone 14 Pro Max^{*1}, iPhone SE (3rd generation)^{*2}, iPod touch (6th, 7th generation).

USB works with iPhone 5s, iPhone 6, iPhone 6 Plus, iPhone 6S, iPhone 6S Plus, iPhone SE, iPhone 7, iPhone 7 Plus, iPhone 8, iPhone 8 Plus, iPhone X, iPhone XS, iPhone XS Max, iPhone XR, iPhone 11, iPhone 11 Pro, iPhone 11 Pro Max, iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone 12, iPhone 12 Pro, iPhone 12 Pro Max, iPhone 12 mini, iPhone 13, iPhone 13 Pro, iPhone 13 Pro Max, iPhone 13 mini, iPhone 14^{*1}, iPhone 14 Plus^{*1}, iPhone 14 Pro^{*1}, iPhone 14 Pro Max^{*1}, iPhone SE (3rd generation)^{*2}, iPod touch (6th, 7th generation).

*1 : Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

*2 : Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

■ USB Flash Drives

- Please use a recommended USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher formatted with FAT16 or FAT32.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Each audio system is compatible the following formats. Some versions of the formats may be unsupported.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, WAV, MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, WAV, Opus, MP4, AVI, MKV, 3GPP, WebM, MPEG2-TS

⌘ USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

■ Recommended Devices

■ MP4 File

Media		USB Flash Drive
Profile (MP4 version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v	
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)

■ AVI File

Media		USB Flash Drive	
Profile (AVI version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (AVI version)	.avi		
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3, WMA		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

■ MKV File

Media		USB Flash Drive	
Profile (MKV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (MKV version)	.mkv		
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 × 480 pixels, 352 × 288 pixels (VC-1)

■ ASF/WMV File

Media		USB Flash Drive	
Profile (ASF/WMV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (ASF/WMV version)	.asf/.wmv		
Compatible audio codec	WMA		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	VC-1	
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)	
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 × 480 pixels, 352 × 288 pixels (VC-1)	

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

■ Recommended Devices

■ MP4 File

Media		USB Flash Drive			
File extension (MP4 version)		.mp4/.m4v			
Compatible audio codec		AAC, MP3			
Compatible video codec* ¹	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	H.263	H.265 HEVC	MEPG-4 SP	MPEG-2
Profile (MP4 version)* ¹	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—
Bit rate* ¹	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—
Maximum image* ¹	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—

■ AVI File

Media		USB Flash Drive			
File extension (AVI version)		.avi			
Compatible audio codec		AAC, MP3, WMA			
Compatible video codec* ¹		MPEG4-AVC (H.264)			
Profile (AVI version)* ¹		BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)			
Bit rate* ¹		10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)			
Maximum image* ¹		1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)			

*1:Some video file format cannot be played on this audio system.

MKV File

Media		USB Flash Drive				
File extension (MKV version)		.mkv				
Compatible audio codec		AAC, MP3				
Compatible video codec* ¹	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	H.263	H.265 HEVC	MPEG-2	VP8	VP9
Profile (MKV version)* ¹	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—	—
Bit rate* ¹	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—	—
Maximum image* ¹	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—	—

*1:Some video file format cannot be played on this audio system.

■ 3GPP File

Media		USB Flash Drive	
File extension (3GPP version)		.3gp	
Compatible audio codec		MPEG-4, AAC LC (Low Complexity)	
Compatible video codec* ¹	H.263	H.264	MPEG-4 SP
Profile (3GPP version)* ¹	—	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	—
Bit rate* ¹	—	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	—
Maximum image* ¹	—	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	—

■ WebM File

Media		USB Flash Drive	
File extension (WebM version)		.webm	
Compatible audio codec		Opus	
Compatible video codec* ¹	VP8	VP9	
Profile (WebM version)* ¹	—	—	
Bit rate* ¹	—	—	
Maximum image* ¹	—	—	

*1:Some video file format cannot be played on this audio system.

■ MPEG2-TS File


Media		USB Flash Drive
File extension (MPEG2-TS version)		.ts
Compatible audio codec		AAC, MP3
Compatible video codec* ¹	MPEG-2	H.264 AVC
Profile (MPEG2-TS version)* ¹	—	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)
Bit rate* ¹	—	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)
Maximum image* ¹	—	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)

*1:Some video file format cannot be played on this audio system.


About Open Source Licences

To see the open source licence information, follow these steps.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **About**.
5. Select **Legal Information**.
6. Select **Licence (License)**.

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Advanced Settings**.
4. Select **System**.
5. Select **Legal Information**.
6. Select **Third-party licenses**.

Licence Information

Bluetooth

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by ALPS ALPINE CO., LTD. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Panasonic Automotive Systems Co., Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

<https://www.bluetooth.com/develop-with-bluetooth/marketing-branding/>



Windows Media

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

■ Apple

“Made for iPod,” and “Made for iPhone,” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.

Apple, the Apple Logo, iPhone, iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Apple CarPlay, iPod, iPhone, iTunes, Siri and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.



MPEG

Mpeg4 Visual

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).

VC-1*

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD ("VC-1 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).

* Not available on all models

AVC/H.264

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

■ OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

■ DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.



Before Driving	456
Towing a Trailer	460
When Driving	
Turning on the Power	461
Precautions While Driving.....	467
Transmission.....	469
Shifting	470
Deceleration Paddle Selector	473
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System.....	476
Drive Mode Switch.....	477
Cruise Control*	487
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System	493


Agile Handling Assist	495
Deflation Warning System*	496
High Voltage Battery.....	500
LaneWatch*	501
Adjusting Headlight Distribution	504
Honda SENSING*	506
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	509
Road Departure Mitigation System.....	523
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow	530
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).....	551
Lead Car Departure Notification System*	564

Front Wide View Camera.....	568
Braking	
Brake System	570
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	577
Brake Assist System	578
Emergency Stop Signal	579
Parking Your Vehicle	
When Stopped	580
Parking Sensor System*	582
Multi-View Rear Camera	587
Refueling	589
Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions	592

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
 - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
 - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving or fall off and impact other road users. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
 - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
 - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
 - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
-  **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 628
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
 - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also, check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
 - Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
 - ✚ **Load Limit** P. 459
- Do not pile items higher than the seatback height.
 - They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
 - An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
 - They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the boot.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
 - Adjust the head restraint, too.
 - ✚ **Seats** P. 216
 - ✚ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions** P. 223
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
 - Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
 - ✚ **Mirrors** P. 213
 - ✚ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 212

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
 - They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
 - 📌 **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 54
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
 - Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
 - 📌 **Indicators** P. 106

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

📖 **Specifications** P. 716

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

📖 **Specifications** P. 716

Load Limit

⚠ WARNING

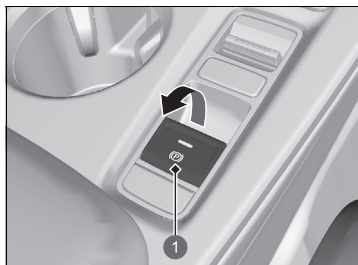
Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

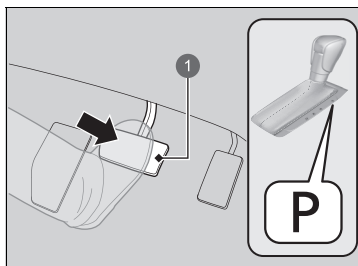
Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

Turning on the Power



① Electric Parking Brake Switch



① Brake Pedal

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.

- The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.

2. Check that the transmission is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.

- Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

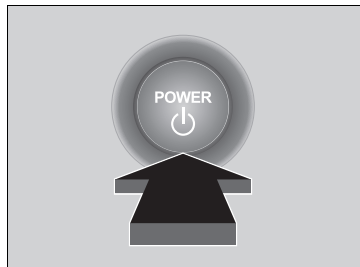
Turning on the Power

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when turning the power system on.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.


When turn on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce the 12-volt battery drain.




If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.



- ① Latin American and Philippine models
- ② Except Latin American and Philippine models

3. Without depressing the accelerator pedal, press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal.

4. Check the **READY** indicator*¹/  (Ready) indicator*².

- ▶ Keep depressing the brake pedal until the **READY** indicator*¹/  (Ready) indicator*² comes on.
- ▶ The **READY** indicator*¹/  (Ready) indicator*² comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.
- ▶ If the outside temperature is extremely low, you cannot drive until conditions are improved. In this case, the **READY** indicator*¹/  (Ready) indicator*² does not come on and a warning message appears on the gauge.

❏ **Indicators** P. 106

▶▶ Turning on the Power


Bring the keyless remote or card key* close to the **POWER** button if the battery in the keyless remote or card key* is weak.


❏ **If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak** P. 680

The power system may not start if the keyless remote or card key* is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **POWER** button to turn on the power system. If the power system does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

The engine may not run when the vehicle is ready for driving.

You can start driving with the **READY** indicator*¹/  (Ready) indicator*² on.

If you press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal with the **READY** indicator*¹/  (Ready) indicator*² on, the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF and you cannot start driving.

❏ **READY Indicator***¹ P. 112

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the power system does not activate.

❏ **Immobilizer System** P. 188

When you set the power mode to ON, you may feel the brake pedal slightly sink down. This is normal.

*1: Latin American and Philippine models

*2: Except Latin American and Philippine models

* Not available on all models

Remote Engine Start



You can remotely turn the power system on using the keyless remote.

To turn the power system on



① LED: Blinks when any button is pressed.



Press the  button, then press and hold the  button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash once.

If the power system is turned on successfully, some exterior lights flash six times.

Remote Engine Start

⚠ WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.



If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the keyless remote, the range will be reduced.

This distance may vary by external electrical interference.



If the power system is not turned on, exterior lights will not flash.

- ▶ Go within the range, and try again.

The power system is on for up to 10 minutes without you starting the vehicle. To extend the time for another 10 minutes during the first 10 minutes, press the  button, then press and hold the  button.


- ▶ Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

▶▶ Remote Engine Start


The power system may not be turned on by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

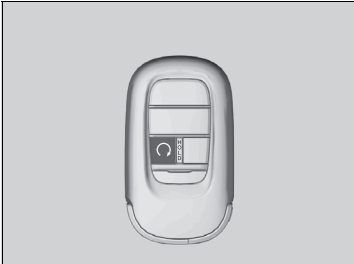
 **Customized Features** P. 303


Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

 **Customized Features** P. 401

- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.
- The transmission is in a position other than **[P]**.
- The bonnet is open, or any door or the boot is unlocked.
- You have already used the remote twice to turn the power system on.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The telematics unit* malfunctions.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The 12-volt battery charge is too low.

■ To turn the power system off



Press and hold the  button for one second.



If the power system is turned off successfully, the exterior lights flash once.



When the keyless remote is out of the keyless access system range, the exterior lights will not flash.

The power system will not be turned off.

▶ Go within the range, and try again.

⌘ Remote Engine Start

The power system may be turned off while it is running if:

- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of turning the power system on with the keyless remote.
- The power system is turned off by using the keyless remote.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The bonnet is open, or any door, or the boot is unlocked.
- You press the shift lever release button.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The 12-volt battery is low.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The malfunction indicator lamp comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.

While the power system is on, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.

When it is warm outside:

Southeast Asian models

- The climate control system is activated in previously selected mode.

Except Southeast Asian models

- The climate control system is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The demister is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear demister is activated.

➡ **Rear Demister Button** P. 209


Continued

■ Starting to Drive

When the power system was turned on using the  button on the keyless remote

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal, then press the **POWER** button.

When the power system was turned on in any case

2. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, check that the **READY** indicator*1/
 (Ready) indicator*2 is on, then put the transmission into **D**. Select **R** when reversing.

3. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.

► Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

🔧 **Parking Brake** P. 570

■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Put the transmission into **D** when facing uphill, or **R** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

■ Stopping the Power System

You can turn the power system off when the vehicle is completely stopped.


1. Put the transmission into **P**.

2. Press the **POWER** button.

*1: Latin American and Philippine models

*2: Except Latin American and Philippine models

» Starting to Drive


When the power system was turned on using the  button on the keyless remote

The power system is turned off when the transmission is taken out of **P** before the **POWER** button is pressed. Follow the step 1 when starting to drive.

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.

When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

As a hybrid vehicle, the sounds and vibrations from the engine may be absent even though the vehicle is ready for driving. It also makes you fail to recognise that you can start.

Make sure to check if the **READY** indicator*1/
 (Ready) indicator*2 is on before you start to drive.

» Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Precautions While Driving

■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

▶▶ Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not select **N** while driving as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

» Precautions While Driving

NOTICE

The following can damage the under spoiler:

- Parking the vehicle by a parking block
- Parallel parking along the road shoulder
- Driving towards the bottom of a hill
- Driving up or down to a different surface level (such as a road shoulder)
- Driving on a rutted or bumpy road
- Driving on a road with potholes

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors, to allow for proper break-in.

» In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you increase the deceleration rate with the deceleration paddle selector. If the road is slippery, sudden regenerative braking can cause the tyres to skid.

Transmission

■ Creeping

As with a conventional petrol-powered vehicle with an automatic transmission, this vehicle will creep.

Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped or ensure that brake-hold is engaged.

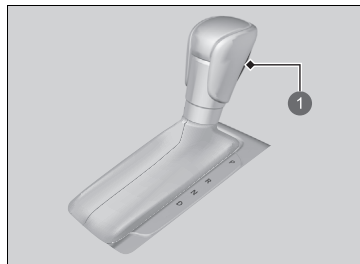
■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the vehicle to react similar to an automatic transmission vehicle, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift positions



1 Release Button

P Park

Used when parking or turning the power on or off.

R Reverse

Used when reversing.

N Neutral

Transmission is not locked.

D Drive

Used for normal driving.

- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used when **SPORT** mode is ON.

► Shifting

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

While the High Voltage battery level is full, or the High Voltage battery temperature is low, regenerative braking may become less effective.

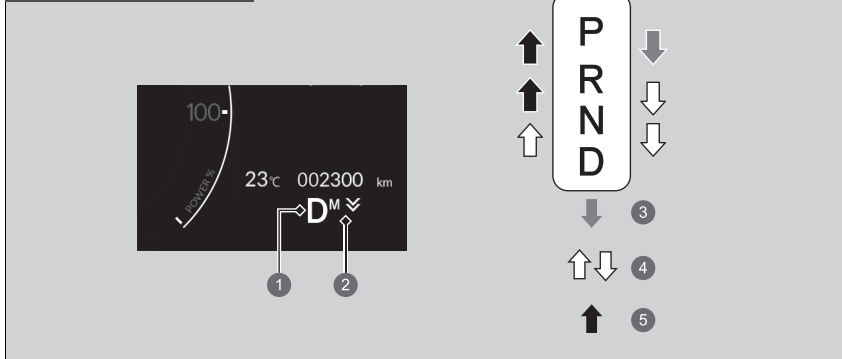
The beeper sounds and the message appears on the driver information interface when you depress the accelerator pedal with the shift position in **N**. Change the shift position to **D** or **R** with the brake pedal depressed.

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift position is in **P**.

You may occasionally find that it takes longer than usual for the vehicle to start moving when you select **R**, release the brake pedal, and/or depress the accelerator pedal. This may occur when the High Voltage battery level is extremely low, and does not indicate a vehicle malfunction.

Shift Operation

Models with A-type meter



- ① Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)
- ② Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator
- ③ Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
- ④ Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
- ⑤ Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Shift Operation

NOTICE

When you change **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift position before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

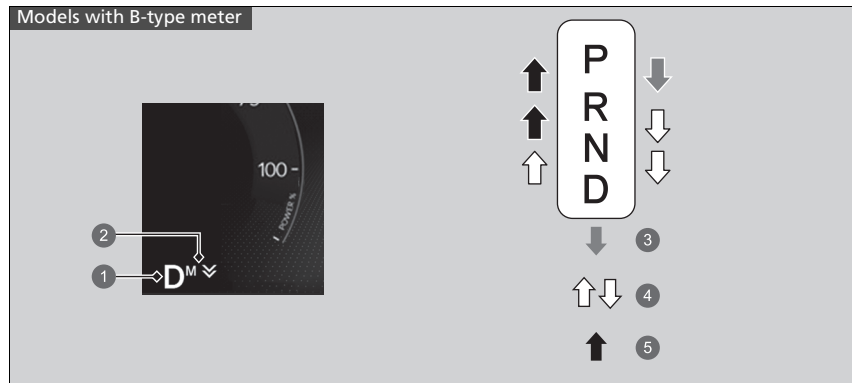
If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (−30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.

Depress the brake pedal first.

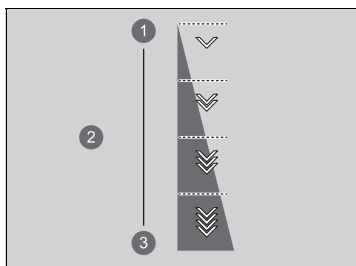


- ① Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)
- ② Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator
- ③ Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
- ④ Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
- ⑤ Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Deceleration Paddle Selector



When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without removing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through four stages of deceleration.


When descending a hill, you can use the deceleration paddle selector to help maintain the rate of deceleration, thereby allowing you to keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.




- 1 Decrease
- 2 Deceleration Stage
- 3 Increase

To select the different stages of deceleration:

- Pull back the  selector (right side) to decrease the deceleration stage.
- Pull back the  selector (left side) to increase the deceleration stage.

Pull the  selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

The default deceleration stage is . Each paddle selector operation makes a single stage deceleration change.

- ▶ The deceleration stage may not change if you keep the paddle selector pulled back.

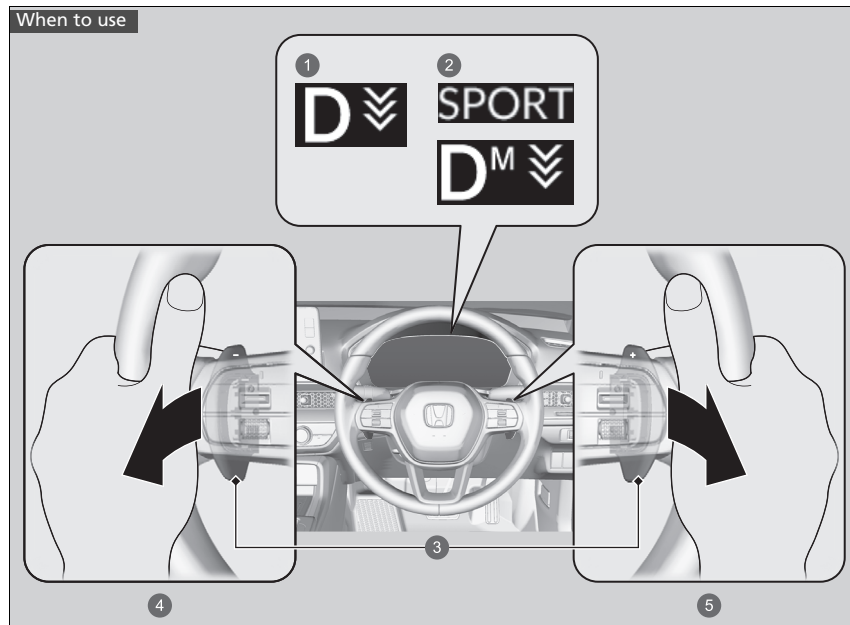
Deceleration Paddle Selector

CAUTION

Rapidly increasing the deceleration rate by quickly shifting the deceleration paddle selector can cause the tyres to skid, resulting in a crash that could injure or kill someone.

Always maintain a reasonable rate of deceleration.

If you pull back the right and left paddle selector at the same time, the deceleration stage may not change.



Shift position is in **D**

- ① When in a mode other than **SPORT** mode, the deceleration stage appears.
- ② When **SPORT** mode is ON, the deceleration stage and **M** appear.
- ③ Paddle Selector
- ④ Increase the deceleration stage when pulling the paddle selector (left side)
- ⑤ Decrease the deceleration stage when pulling the paddle selector (right side)

» Deceleration Paddle Selector


In the following situations, the stage may not change and the stage icon will blink even if you pull back the selector. The deceleration stage may decrease or cancel automatically:

- The High Voltage battery is fully charged or its temperature is too cold or too hot.
- The speed of the vehicle is beyond the deceleration range.
- Hybrid system protection is needed.
- The paddle selector is operated while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow*.
- The brake pad temperature is too hot.
- Change the shift position to **P**, **R** or **N**.

If either paddle selector is operated, ACC with Low Speed Follow* will cancel automatically.

■ When in a mode other than **SPORT** mode


If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the gauge.

When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, pull the  selector (right side) for a few seconds.

The deceleration paddle selector will cancel automatically and deceleration stage in the gauge disappear when you drive with constant speed, situations of acceleration and decelerate just before stopping your vehicle.

■ When **SPORT** mode is ON

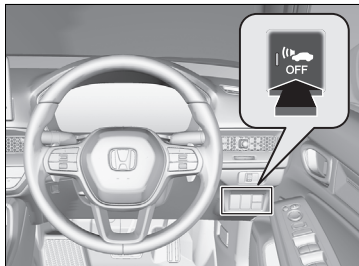
If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the gauge. The deceleration stage will not cancel automatically while **SPORT** mode is ON.

When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, turn the **SPORT** mode OFF, or pull the  selector (right side) for a few seconds. When cancelled, deceleration stage in the gauge disappears.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

Alerts pedestrians when a vehicle is propelled solely by electricity, approaching at speeds around 25 km/h or less.

■ Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button *



Press the button to turn the system on and off.

- ▶ The indicator in the button comes on when the system is off.

The system is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

▶▶ Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button *

The pause function of the Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System shall not be used unless for an obvious lack of necessity to emit sound for alert in the surrounding area and that it is certain that there are no pedestrians within the short distance.

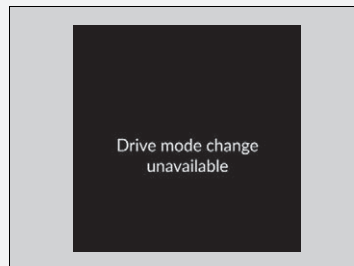
Drive Mode Switch

Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch to select the appropriate mode. The mode you select appears on the driver information interface and audio/information screen.

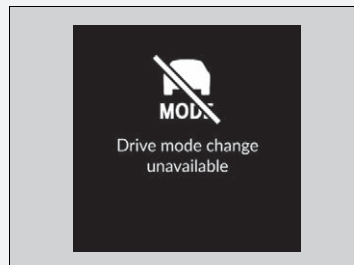
⌘ Drive Mode Switch

The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions.
If there is a vehicle system failure, the following message will also appear on the driver information interface, and you cannot select any other mode.

Latin American and Philippine models

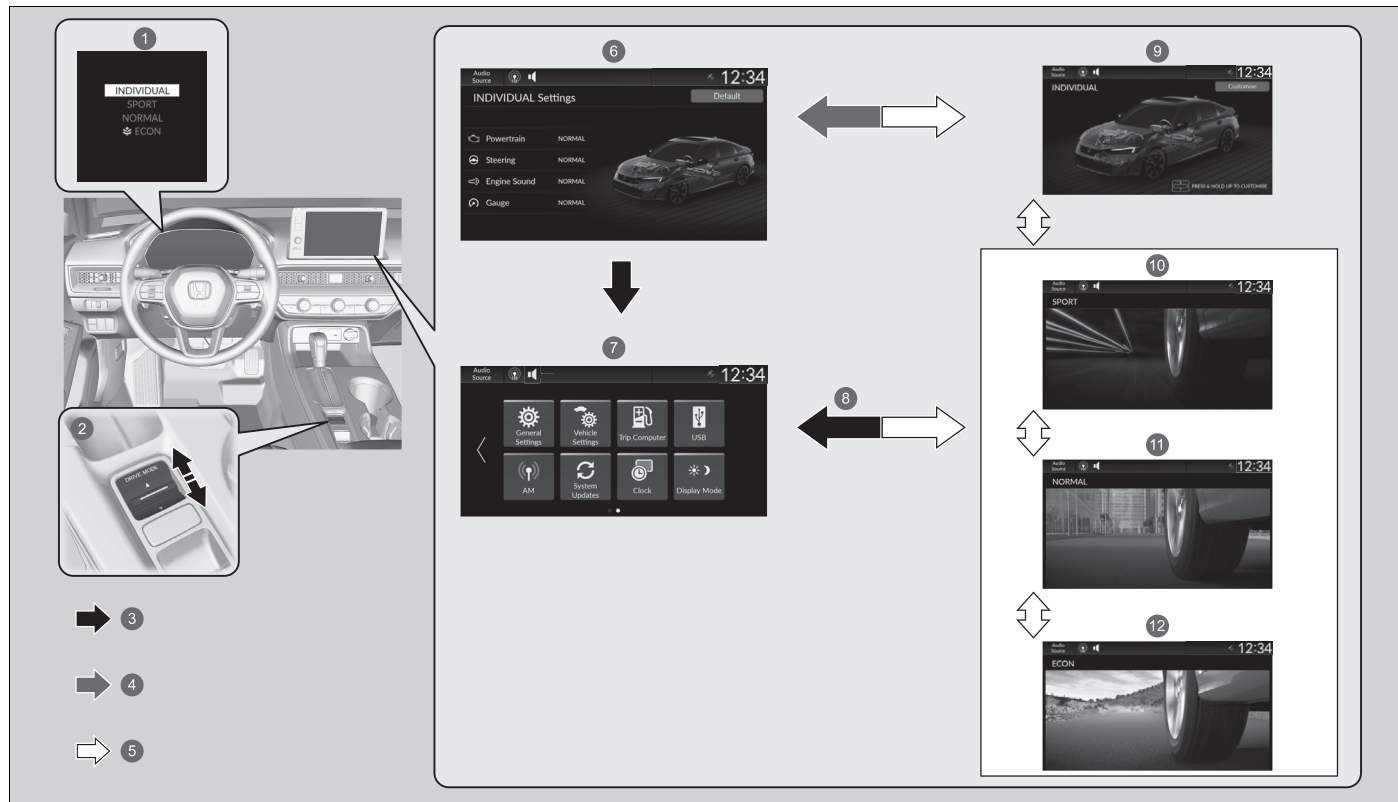





Except Latin American and Philippine models



■ Selecting the Drive Mode

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in



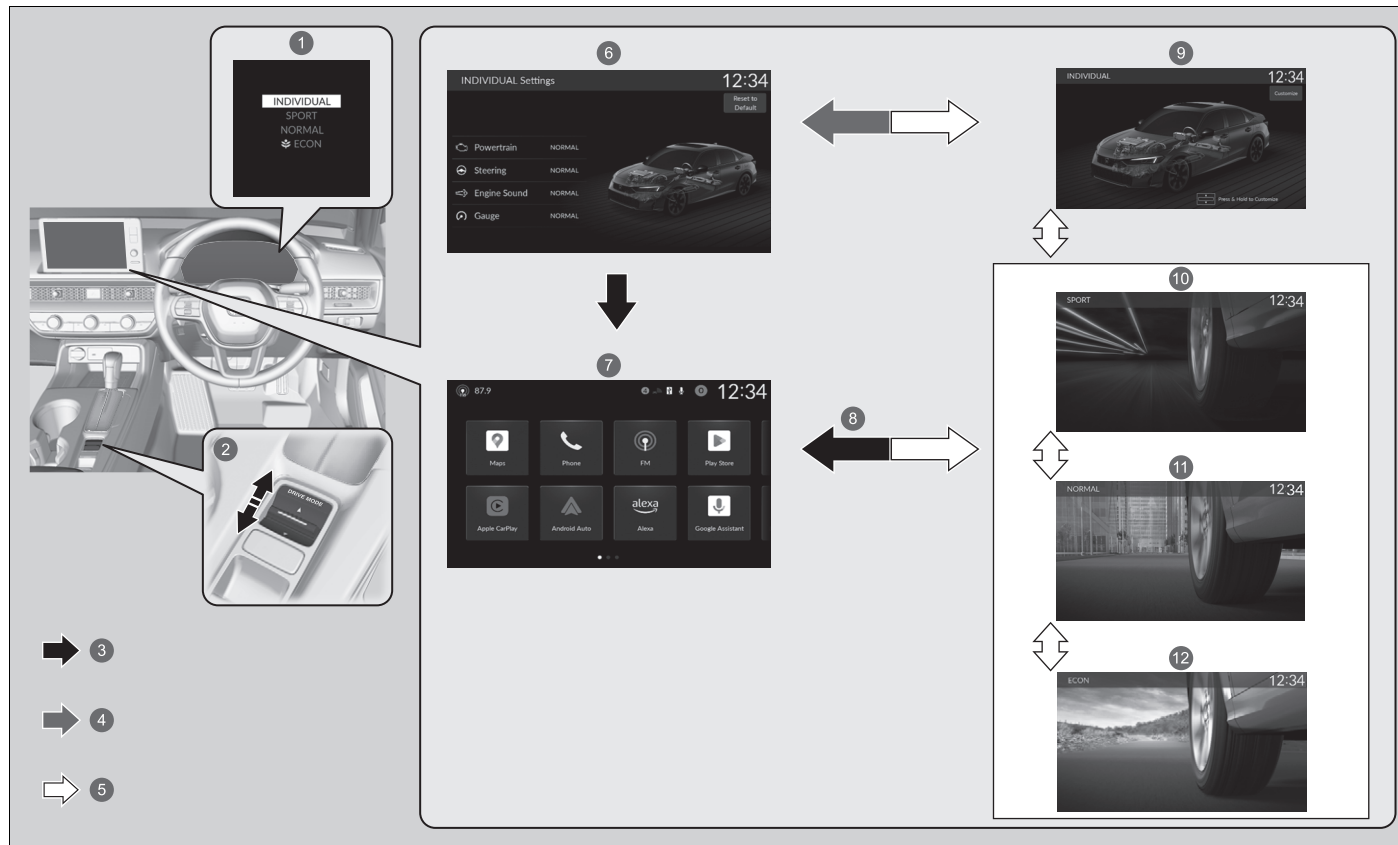
- ① Changing modes by **DRIVE MODE** switch alters the screen on the driver information interface.
- ② **DRIVE MODE** Switch
- ③ Press the  or  button.
- ④ Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch up and hold or select **Customize**^{*1}/**Customise**^{*2}.
 P. 485
- ⑤ Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch up or down.
- ⑥ **INDIVIDUAL Settings** Screen
- ⑦ Audio/Information Screen
- ⑧ The display returns to audio/information screen a few seconds after pressing the **DRIVE MODE** switch up or down.
- ⑨ **INDIVIDUAL** Mode
- ⑩ **SPORT** Mode
- ⑪ **NORMAL** Mode
- ⑫ **ECON** Mode




*1: Latin American models

*2: Except Latin American models

Continued

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in



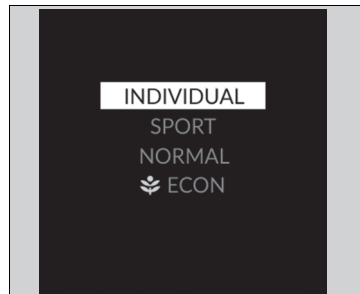
- ❶ Changing modes by **DRIVE MODE** switch alters the screen on the driver information interface.
- ❷ **DRIVE MODE** Switch
- ❸ Press the  or  button.
- ❹ Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch up and hold or select **Customize**^{*1}/**Customise**^{*2}.
 P. 485
- ❺ Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch up or down.
- ❻ **INDIVIDUAL Settings** Screen
- ❼ Audio/Information Screen
- ❽ The display returns to audio/information screen a few seconds after pressing the **DRIVE MODE** switch up or down.
- ❾ **INDIVIDUAL** Mode
- ❿ **SPORT** Mode
- ⓫ **NORMAL** Mode
- ⓬ **ECON** Mode

*1: Brazilian models

*2: Except Brazilian models

Continued

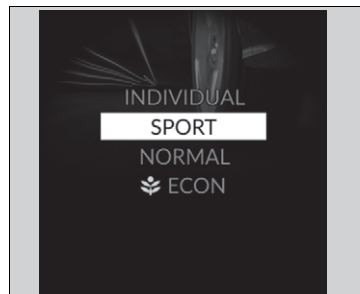
■ INDIVIDUAL Mode



Each category can be customized separately to suit the driver's preference.

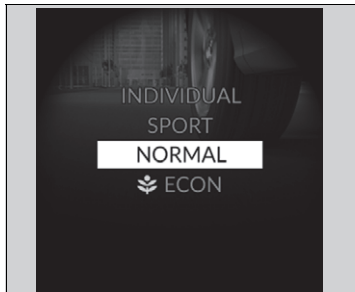
▶ **Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings**
P. 485

■ SPORT Mode



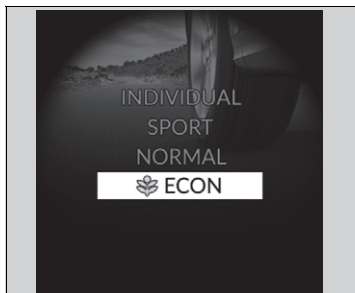
Enhances responsiveness to the driver's input.

■ NORMAL Mode



Optimises the balance between operability and comfort.

■ ECON Mode



Facilitates fuel-efficient driving.

▣ ECON Mode

While in **ECON** mode, the climate control system will be less effective and the vehicle will be slower to accelerate.

■ Next Start-up Mode

The mode for the next start-up is saved according to the following chart.

Last Mode	Next Mode
SPORT, NORMAL, or INDIVIDUAL	NORMAL
ECON	ECON

Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings



Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

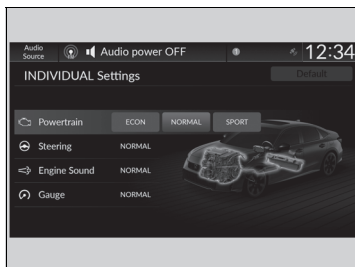
1. Select **INDIVIDUAL** mode.
2. Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch up and hold or select **Customize***1/**Customise***2 to open the **INDIVIDUAL Settings**.

▶ You can also select from Customized Features on the audio/information screen.

✎ **Selecting the Drive Mode** P. 478

✎ **Customized Features** P. 303

3. Select the setting category.
4. Select the desired setting.



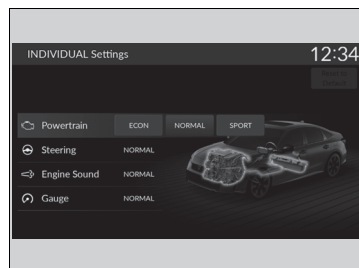
Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

When you select **Default** on the **INDIVIDUAL Settings** screen, all **INDIVIDUAL** settings are reset to their factory defaults.

*1: Latin American models

*2: Except Latin American models



Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

1. Select **INDIVIDUAL** mode.
2. Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch up and hold or select **Customize**^{*1}/**Customise**^{*2} to open the **INDIVIDUAL Settings**.

► You can also select from Customized Features on the audio/information screen.

➤ **Selecting the Drive Mode** P. 478

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

3. Select the setting category.
4. Select the desired setting.

Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

When you select **Reset to Default** on the **INDIVIDUAL Settings** screen, all **INDIVIDUAL** settings are reset to their factory defaults.

*1 : Brazilian models

*2 : Except Brazilian models

Cruise Control *

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

⌘ Cruise Control *

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

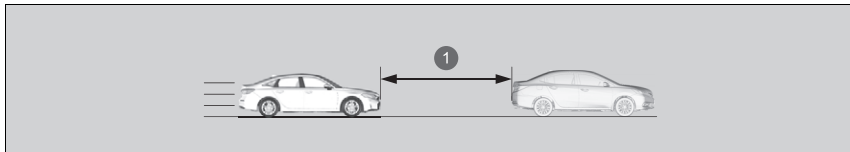
When not using cruise control:
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE** button.

While in ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

* Not available on all models

When to use

- Vehicle speed for cruise control: Desired speed in a range above roughly 40 km/h
- Shift positions for cruise control: In **D**



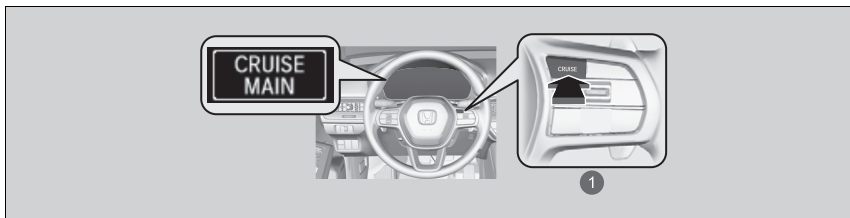
- ① Always keep sufficient distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.



How to use

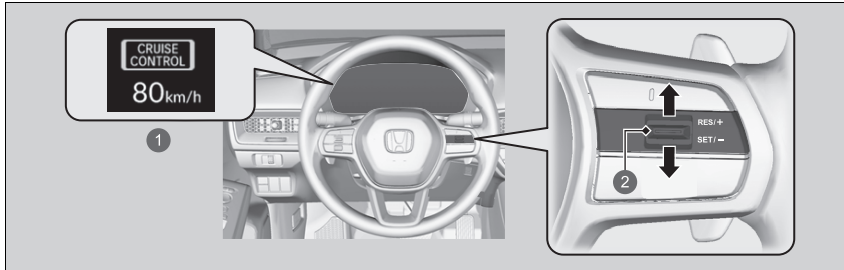
CRUISE MAIN is on in the gauge.

Cruise control is ready to use.



- ① Press the **CRUISE** button on the steering wheel.

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



① On when cruise control begins

② **RES/+**/**SET/-** Switch
Up or down

Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+**/**SET/-** switch up or down when you reach the desired speed.

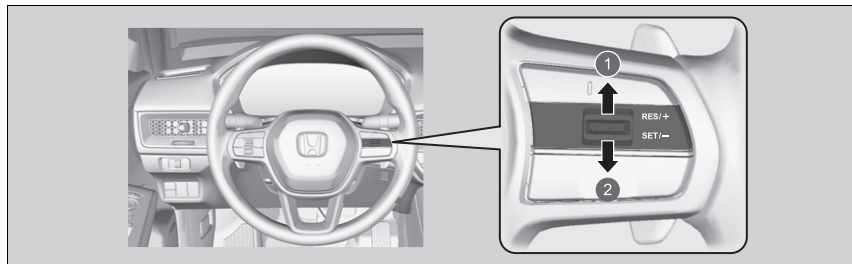
The moment you release the **RES/+**/**SET/-** switch, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

When you use cruise control, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.

By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+**/**SET/-** switch on the steering wheel.



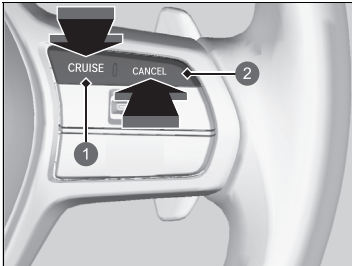
- ① To increase speed
- ② To decrease speed

- Each time you press the **RES/+**/**SET/-** switch up or down, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the **RES/+**/**SET/-** switch pressed up or down, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.
- The vehicle may accelerate or decelerate until the set speed is reached.

▶▶ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **RES/+**/**SET/-** switch on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

To Cancel



- ❶ **CRUISE** button
- ❷ **CANCEL** button

To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

To Cancel

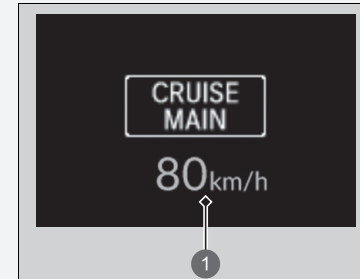
Resuming the prior set speed:

After you have cancelled cruise control, you can activate the cruise control with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in grey) by pressing the **RES/+SET/-** switch up while driving at a speed of at least 40 km/h or more.

When you turn the cruise control off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in grey.

When pressing the **RES/+SET/-** switch up, the cruise control is activated with displayed speed.

If the **CRUISE MAIN** indicator is displayed and you press the **RES/+SET/-** switch up, but no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.



- ❶ Prior Set Speed (Grey)

» To Cancel

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

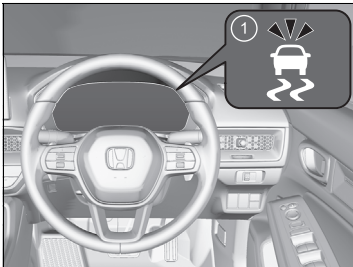
- When vehicle speed is less than 40 km/h
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 35 km/h or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine and motor output and selectively applying the brakes.

VSA Operation



1 VSA System Indicator

When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine and motor do not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

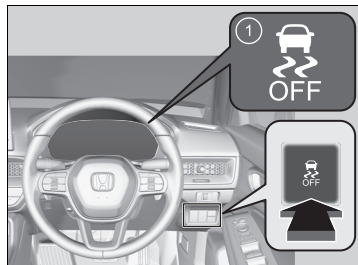
The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF***, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*, Road Departure Mitigation*, and safety support* indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models


■ VSA On and Off



① VSA **OFF** Indicator

This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.


Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the  (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

» Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the  button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after turning the power system on or while driving. This is normal.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

ⓘ Agile Handling Assist

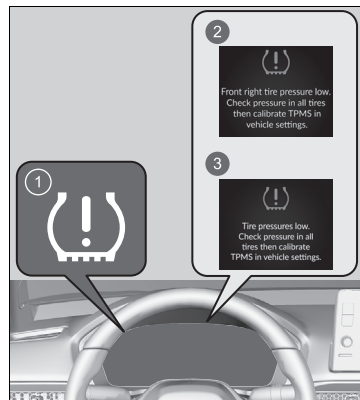
The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Deflation Warning System *

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



- ① Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator
- ② Appears when any one tyre is significantly under-inflated.
(e.g., a front right side tyre)
- ③ Appears when two or more tyres are significantly underinflated.

This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the gauge.

►► Deflation Warning System *

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become overinflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

► **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 628

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains are used.
- The tyre loses air pressure rapidly.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- A compact spare tyre is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres than the condition at calibration.
- Tyre chains are used.

■ Deflation Warning System Calibration

You must start deflation warning system calibration every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the deflation warning system:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.

🔧 **Checking Tyres** P. 628

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The transmission is in **P**.
- The power mode is in ON.

🔧 Deflation Warning System*

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.

Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

🔧 Deflation Warning System Calibration

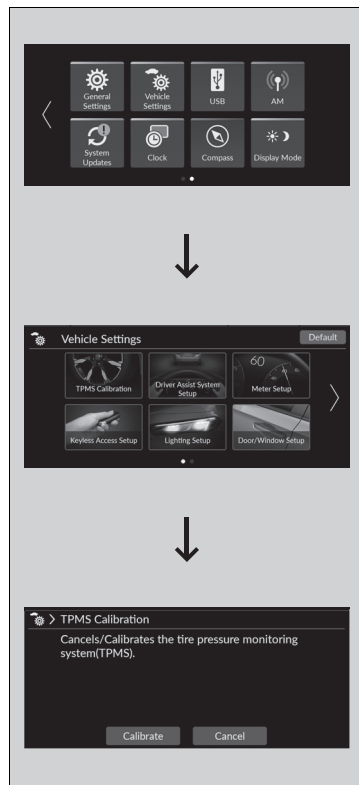
Deflation warning system cannot be calibrated if a compact spare tyre is installed.

The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40-100 km/h. During this period, if the power mode is set to on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the tyre chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.




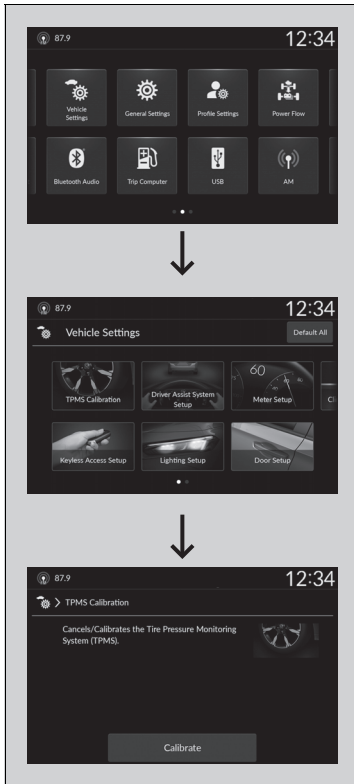
Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

When you calibrate the deflation warning system, do the following.

▶ Display Audio without Google built-in

P. 249


1. Set the power mode to ON.
 2. Press the  button.
 3. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
 4. Select **TPMS Calibration**.
 5. Select **Calibrate** or **Cancel**.
- If the **Calibration Failed To Start** message appears, repeat step 5.
 - The calibration process finishes automatically.



Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

When you calibrate the deflation warning system, do the following.

Display Audio with Google built-in P. 342

1. Set the power mode to ON.
 2. Press the  button.
 3. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
 4. Select **TPMS Calibration**.
 5. Select **Calibrate**.
- If the **Calibration failed to start** message appears, repeat step 5.
 - The calibration process finishes automatically.

High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery charge level will become low. Extended periods of time at a low state of charge will shorten battery life. To maintain the battery state of charge, drive your vehicle for more than 30 minutes at least once every three months.

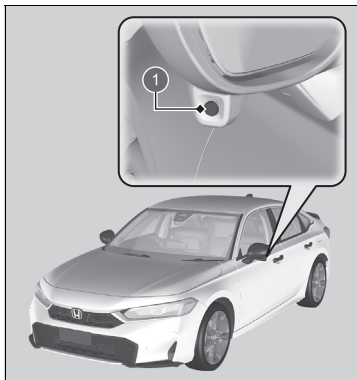
Extreme high temperatures can affect the battery life. You can minimise the effects by parking the vehicle in the shade during the summer.

⚡ High Voltage Battery

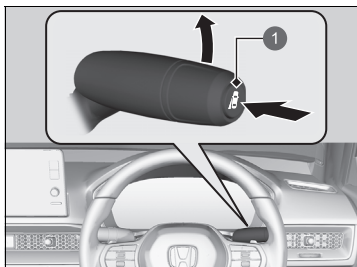
Be careful not to let the High Voltage battery drain too much. If the battery level becomes close to zero, it will make it impossible to turn the power system on.

LaneWatch*

LaneWatch is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side.



1 Camera



1 LaneWatch button

A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicles, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.

The system activates when you do either of the following operations:

- Press the LaneWatch button.
- Move the turn signal lever to the passenger side.

The system deactivates when you press the LaneWatch button again.

⚠ LaneWatch*

⚠ WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder

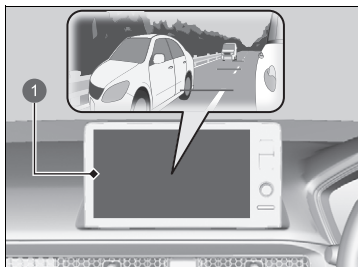
Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Overreliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tyres are over or under inflated.
- Your tyres or wheels are of varied size or construction.

* Not available on all models



① Audio/Information Screen

■ Customizing the LaneWatch settings

You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen.

- **Show with Turn Signal^{*1}/Show with turn signal^{*2}/Show with indicator^{*3}:**
Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal lever.
- **Display Time after Turn Signal Off^{*1, *2}/Display Time after Indicator Off^{*3}:**
Changes the remaining LaneWatch display time after you pull the turn signal lever back.
- **Show Reference Line:** Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch monitor.
- **Display:** Adjusts display settings.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

*1 : Brazilian models

*2 : Latin American models except Brazilian models

*3 : Except Latin American models

* Not available on all models

▶ LaneWatch*

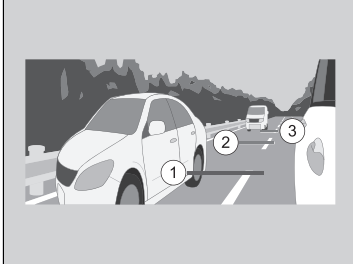
The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen look slightly different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the transmission is in **[R]**.

For proper LaneWatch operation:

- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

■ Reference Lines



Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line ① (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line ③ is farther away.

☒ Reference Lines

The area around the reference line ① (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines ①, ② and ③ on the screen vary depending on road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

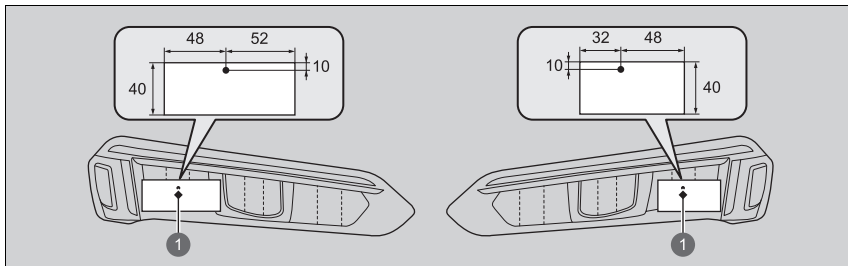
Consult a dealer if:

- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Driving the right-hand type vehicle in right-hand traffic, or the left-hand type vehicle in left-hand traffic causes headlight glare to oncoming vehicles. You need to alter the headlight beam distribution using masking tape.

Right-hand Drive Type



1 Centre point

1. Prepare for two rectangular pieces of masking tape, measuring 40 mm wide and 100 mm*¹ or 80 mm*² long.
 - Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.
2. Affix the tape to the lens as shown.

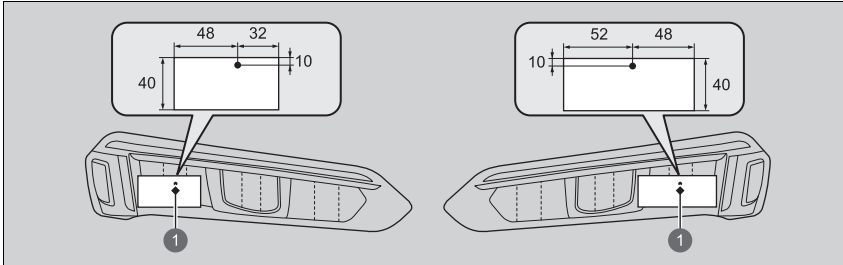
*1 : For the driver's side headlight

*2 : For the passenger's side headlight

Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Be careful not to adhere the tape to an incorrect location. If the headlight beam is distributed incorrectly, it may not comply with your country's legal requirements. Ask your dealer for details.

Left-hand Drive Type



① Centre point

1. Prepare for two rectangular pieces of masking tape, measuring 40 mm wide and 100 mm^{*1} or 80 mm^{*2} long.
 - Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.
2. Affix the tape to the lens as shown.

*1: For the driver's side headlight

*2: For the passenger's side headlight

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda SENSING has the following functions:

■ The functions that do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 📄 P. 509
- Road Departure Mitigation System 📄 P. 523
- Lead Car Departure Notification System* 📄 P. 564
- Parking Sensor System* 📄 P. 582
- Auto High-Beam* 📄 P. 204
- Driver Attention Monitor 📄 P. 138, 158

■ The functions that require switch operations to activate

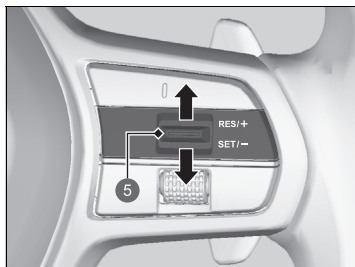
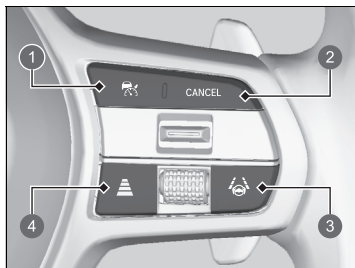
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 📄 P. 530
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 📄 P. 551


📄 Honda SENSING*

Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type, and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

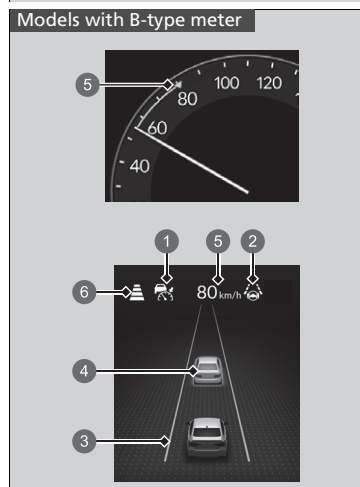
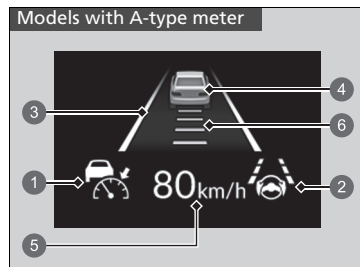
Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)



- 1**  Button
Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow.
Or press to cancel the system.
- 2** **CANCEL** Button
Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- 3** **LKAS** Button
Press to activate standby mode for LKAS.
Or press to cancel the system.
- 4** **Interval** Button
Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.
- 5** **RES/+ / SET/-** Switch
Press the **RES/+ / SET/-** switch up to set or resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or increase the vehicle speed.
Press the **RES/+ / SET/-** switch down to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow or decrease the vehicle speed.

Gauge Content

You can see the current state of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).



① Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to be activated.

- Green: The system is on.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

② Indicates that LKAS is ready to be activated.

- Green: The system is operating.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

③ Indicates that LKAS is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.

- Green lines: The system is operating.
- White lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
- Amber line: Lane departure is detected.

④ Indicates whether or not a vehicle is detected ahead.

Models with B-type meter

• Control target vehicle: White and outlined in green

• Outside of control target vehicle: Grey

⑤ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle speed.

⑥ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle interval.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle).

The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

⚠ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

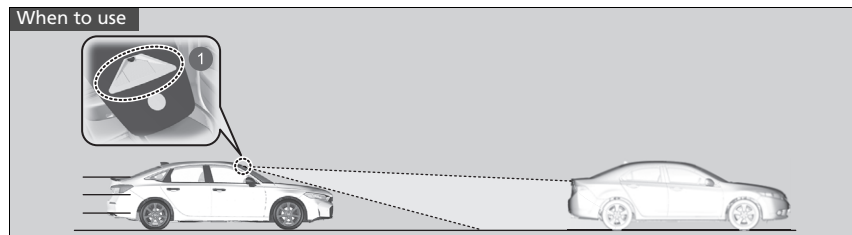
➤ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 515

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.

➤ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 568

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

■ How the system works



- ① The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h or above and will search for a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 30 km/h or less and there is a chance of a frontal collision with a detected oncoming vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle when you turn right*¹/left*² at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
 - An oncoming or stationary vehicle detected in front of you.
 - A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.
 - A vehicle approaching from the side in front of you.

*1: Right-hand Drive Type

*2: Left-hand Drive Type

▶▶ How the system works

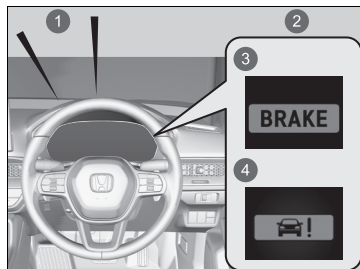
The front wide view camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians. However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions. Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

▶ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 515

The CMBS will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or the system determines there no longer is the potential for a collision.

The CMBS may also be cancelled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

■ When the system activates



The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

- ▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)

- ① Audible Alert
- ② Visual Alerts
- ③ Philippine and Latin American except Brazilian models
- ④ Brazilian and Southeast Asian except Philippine models

You can change the distance (**Long**^{*1}/**Far**^{*2}, **Normal** or **Short**^{*1}/**Near**^{*2}) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

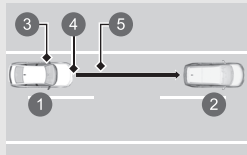


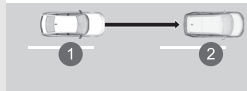
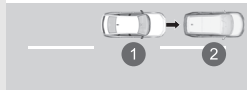
When in **Long**^{*1}/**Far**^{*2}, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Short**^{*1}/**Near**^{*2}, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.

*1: Latin American models

*2: Except Latin American models

Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS		
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	<p>The visual alert flashes. If the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you continues to decrease, the audible alert sounds in addition to the visual alert flashing.</p> <p>▶ The collision warning distance can be changed.</p> <p>Models with Display Audio without Google built-in  Customized Features P. 303</p> <p>Models with Display Audio with Google built-in  Customized Features P. 401</p>	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

① Your Vehicle

③ Long*¹/Far*²

⑤ Short*¹/Near*²

② Vehicle Ahead

④ Normal

*1: Latin American models

*2: Except Latin American models

■ CMBS On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➤ **Switching the Display** P. 130, 147

➤ **Safety Support** P. 142, 162

The CMBS is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

▣ CMBS On and Off

You cannot turn the CMBS off while driving.

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions.

➤ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 515

The CMBS is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF***, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/ deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.

Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

In the following situations, the front wide view camera may be unable to correctly detect vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road conditions, potentially causing the CMBS to operate improperly.

📷 **Front Wide View Camera** P. 568

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles (including motorcycles), pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road surfaces.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, vehicles [including motorcycles], pedestrians, or moving bicycles may not be illuminated).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

📷 CMBS Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

■ Vehicle conditions

- Tyre chains* are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- Camera vision is blocked by drops of water from the window washer, or by the wiper blades.
- Operation of the vehicle is unstable due to a slippery road, etc.

■ **Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the front wide view camera due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrians, or moving bicycles**

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- The bicycle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is sideways or facing diagonally.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising them.
- When several pedestrians are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When several bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by a carried object.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.
- A vehicle is approaching diagonally from the side.
- A specially-shaped vehicle (such as a tank lorry or a lorry without a luggage) is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle approaching from the side is driving on a curve or hill.

Continued

■ Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

Latin American models

- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, or other specially shaped vehicle.

Except Latin American models

- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, three-wheeled vehicle, or other specially shaped vehicle.

All models

- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a luggage, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle approaching from the side is significantly large.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrians, or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning right*¹/left*² at an intersection etc.)*³.

*1: Right-hand Drive Type

*2: Left-hand Drive Type

*3: When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning right*¹/left*², the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the front wide view camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When a vehicle (including motorcycles) that has an extremely high minimum ground clearance is ahead of you or approaching from the side.

■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicator (amber) come and stay on when:

- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The front wide view camera temperature gets too high.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (incorrect tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).

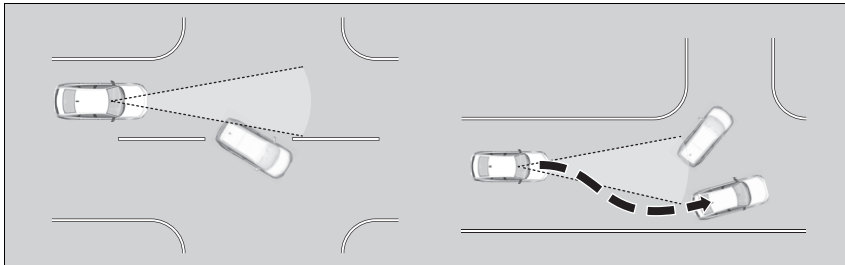
Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

■ With Little Chance of a Collision

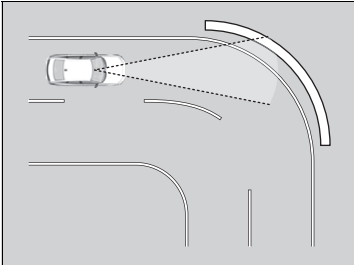
Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under the following conditions:

Also, the system may activate if it detects a possibility of collision with pedestrians, moving bicycles, or vehicles.

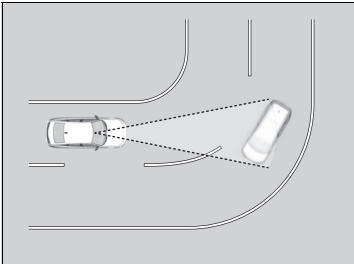
- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.



- When your vehicle approaches vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles.
- When vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles are passing in front of you.
- When you drive under a low structure or through a narrow gate at high speed.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails beside the road along a curve.



- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.



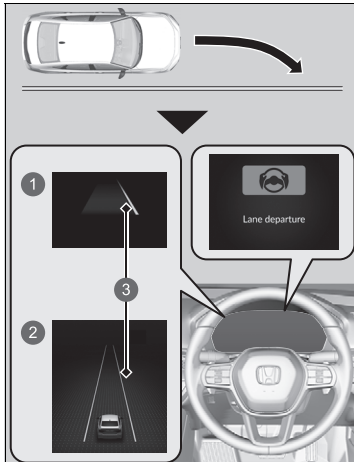
- When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

- A vehicle approaches from the side as it is driving through a curve.
- You pass by a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is turning left or right.
- You pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle turns left or right while approaching your vehicle from the side.
- You attempt to pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle is attempting to pass in front of your vehicle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- When you are turning left or right, a crossing pedestrian enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- You pass close by the side of a vehicle parked on the street.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

How the System Works



- ① Models with A-type meter
- ② Models with B-type meter
- ③ Amber line

The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

▶ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

▶ **Customized Features** P. 401

As a visual alert, the **Lane departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations. Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 568

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

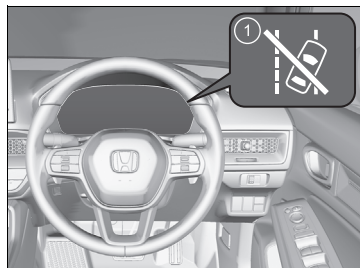
▶ **Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations** P. 527

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

Latin American models

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

Except Latin American models



① Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator comes on, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.

After a few minutes, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator goes off and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

Road Departure Mitigation System

There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

You can change the settings for the Road Departure Mitigation system.

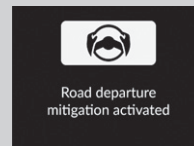
If LKAS is off, the message below may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401



*1 : Latin American models

*2 : Except Latin American models

■ How the System Activates

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.

▣ How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) and Road Departure Mitigation indicator (amber) come and stay on.

➡ **Indicators** P. 106

The Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

■ Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➤ **Switching the Display** P. 130, 147

➤ **Safety Support** P. 142, 162

The Road Departure Mitigation system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you turn the power system on.

▣ Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only***¹/**Warning only***², the system does not operate the steering wheel.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF***, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/ deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.

Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1: Latin American models

*2: Except Latin American models

■ Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

■ Vehicle conditions

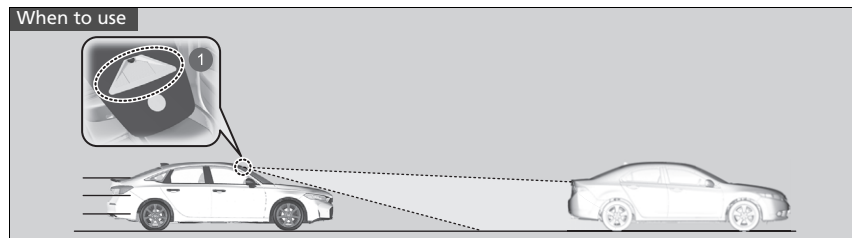
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The suspension has been modified.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.

* Not available on all models

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.



- ① A front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.
- Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 180 km/h.
No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 30 km/h or above.
- Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In **D**.

▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

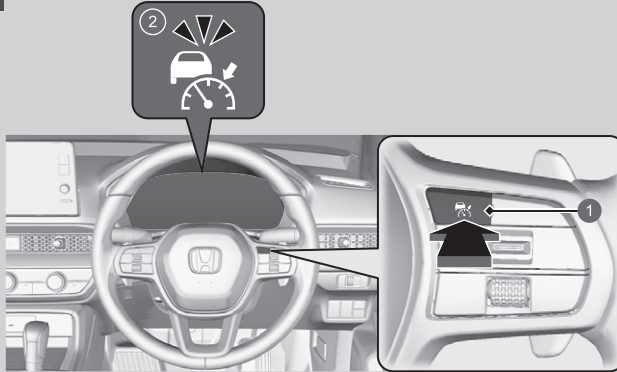
⚠ WARNING




ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

■ How to activate the system

How to use



- 1  Button
Press the  button on the steering wheel.
- 2 **The  (white) is on in the gauge.**
ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to use.

▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

⚠ WARNING

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Thai models

CAUTION: This equipment should be operated keeping the radiator at least 20 cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.

This telecommunication equipment has EMF radiation conforms to NTC EMF exposure standard.

Important Reminder

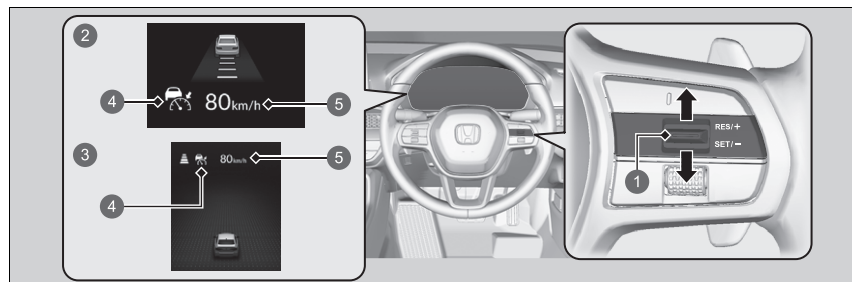
As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 568

Continued

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed




① RES/+SET/- Switch

Up or down

② On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins for models with A-type meter

③ On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins for models with B-type meter


④  (green)

⑤ Set Vehicle Speed (white)

▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

▶ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations P. 541

When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the  button.

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

- On roads with frequent lane change or continuous stop and go traffic, ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot keep an appropriate distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.), ACC with Low Speed Follow may not detect the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.
- On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes.
- On roads with undulating slopes.

When driving at about 30 km/h or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+SET/-** switch up or down when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the switch, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

When you use ACC with Low Speed Follow, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.

By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

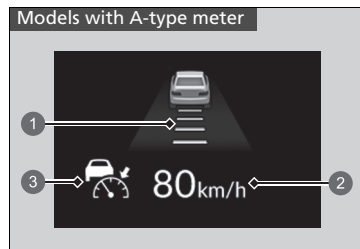
When driving slower than about 30 km/h: If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the switch fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h regardless of current vehicle speed.
If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.

⚠ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow


The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF***, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

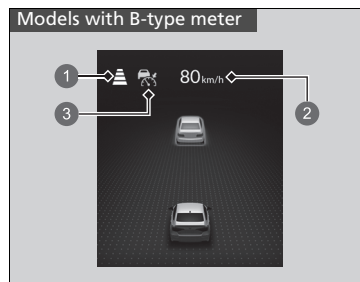
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.


* Not available on all models



When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars, and set speed appear on the gauge.

- ① Set Vehicle Interval
- ② Set Vehicle Speed
- ③  (green)



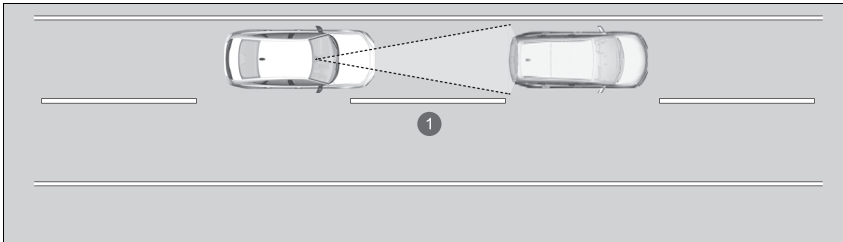
- ① Set Vehicle Interval
- ② Set Vehicle Speed
- ③  (green)

■ When in Operation

■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

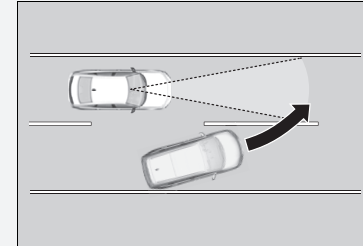
🚦 **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 546



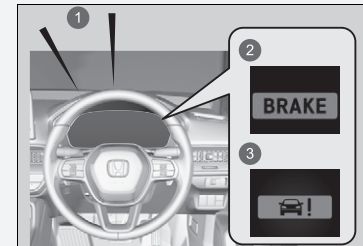
① ACC with Low Speed Follow Range: 120 m

▶ When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



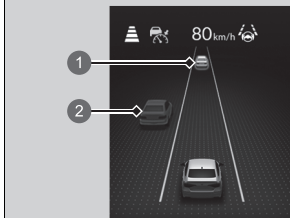
- ① Audible Alert
- ② Philippine and Latin American except Brazilian models
- ③ Brazilian and Southeast Asian except Philippine models

Models with A-type meter



- ① A vehicle icon appears on the gauge.

Models with B-type meter



A vehicle icon appears on the gauge.

- ① Control target vehicle: White and outlined in green
- ② Outside of control target vehicle: Grey

When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

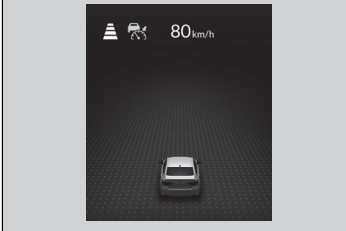
■ There is no vehicle ahead

Models with A-type meter



- 1 A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the gauge.

Models with B-type meter



Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

While driving down steep hills, ACC with Low Speed Follow brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed. However, the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.

▶▶ When in Operation

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range. A vehicle detect beep on and off can be selected.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

➤ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 541

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

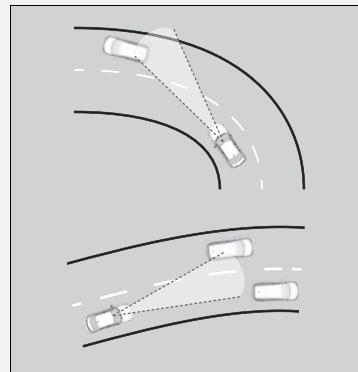
You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes the set speed.

There are times when the vehicle speed will decrease when the accelerator pedal is lightly applied.

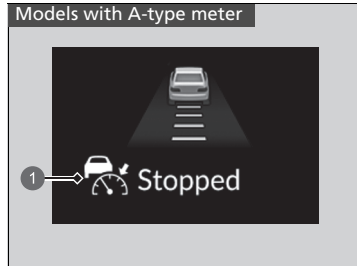
▶▶ When in Operation

- ACC with Low Speed Follow may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g., curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g., operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).

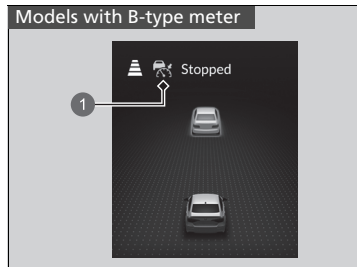



- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC with Low Speed Follow may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop



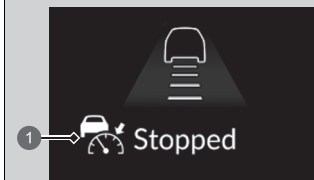
1  (green)




1  (green)

Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The **Stopped** message appears on the gauge. When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, if you press the **RES/+SET/-** switch up or down, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow operates again within the previously set speed.

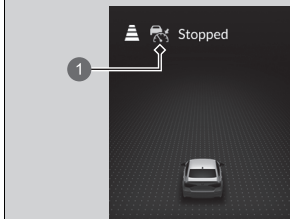
Models with A-type meter




If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

①  (green)

Models with B-type meter



①  (green)

■ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC with Low Speed Follow functions.

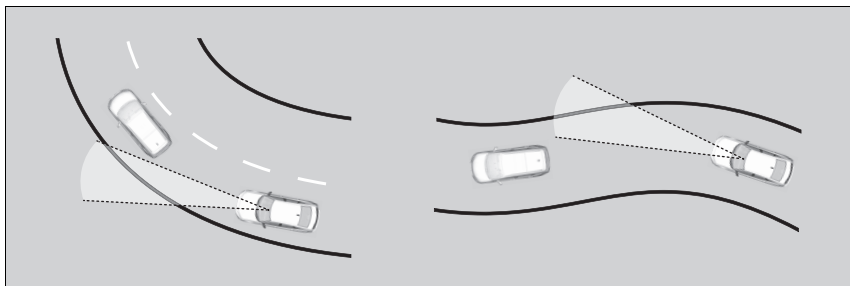
📷 **Front Wide View Camera** P. 568

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.



- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

■ **Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you**

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

■ Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly

- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.

Latin American models

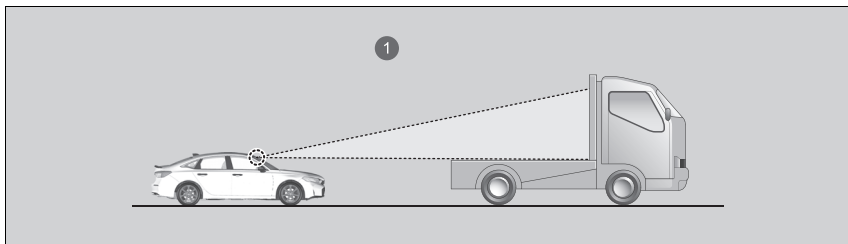
- When a vehicle ahead of you is a specially shaped vehicle.

Except Latin American models

- When the vehicle ahead of you is a three-wheeled vehicle or specially shaped vehicle.

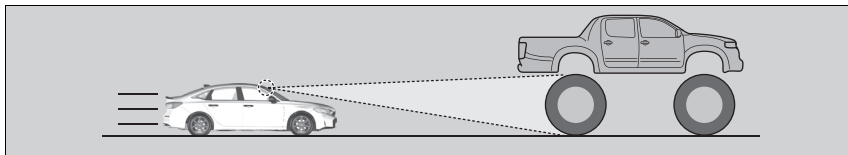
All models

- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a luggage, or a narrow vehicle.



- ① Camera detects upper section of an empty carrier lorry.

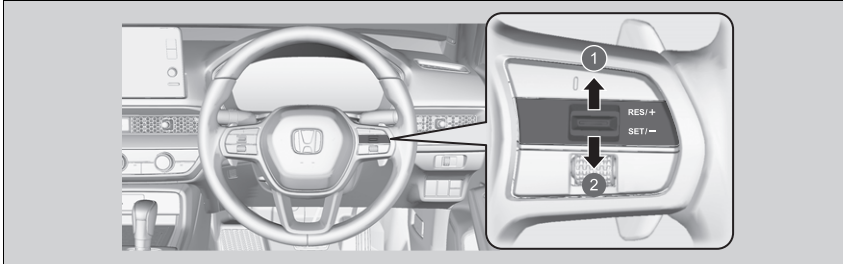
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.



- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+SET/-** switch on the steering wheel.



- ① To increase speed
- ② To decrease speed

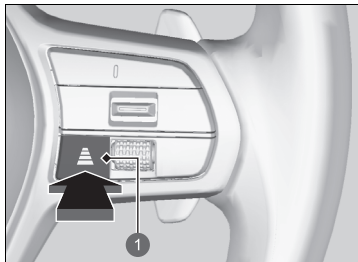
- Each time you press the **RES/+SET/-** switch up or down, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you press and hold the **RES/+SET/-** switch up or down, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

☒ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then press down and release the **RES/+SET/-** switch, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

■ To Set or Change Following-interval











① Interval Button

Press the interval button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short	 *1  *2	26.6 metres 1.2 sec	33.7 metres 1.2 sec
Middle	 *1  *2	34.6 metres 1.6 sec	44.9 metres 1.6 sec
Long	 *1  *2	44.0 metres 2.0 sec	57.1 metres 2.0 sec
Extra Long	 *1  *2	53.6 metres 2.4 sec	70.0 metres 2.4 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

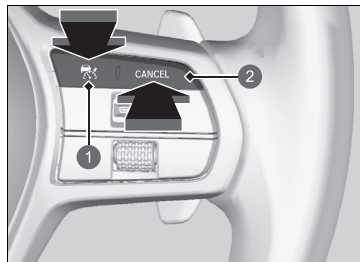
*1: Models with A-type meter

*2: Models with B-type meter

⚠ To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

■ To Cancel



- ① Button
- ② **CANCEL** Button

To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
 - ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the button.
 - ▶ indicator (green) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
 - ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

▶▶ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in grey) by pressing the **RES/+SET/-** switch up even if the vehicle is stopped.

When you turn the ACC with Low Speed Follow off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in grey.

When pressing the **RES/+SET/-** switch up, the ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated with displayed speed.

If the indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+SET/-** switch up, but no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road for extended periods, or driving off road.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA, or CMBS is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- When passing through a dark place, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS is also activated.

▶▶ To Cancel

Models with A-type meter



- ① (white)
- ② Prior Set Speed (grey)

Models with B-type meter



- ① (white)
- ② Prior Set Speed (grey)

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the

button. Press the button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The power system is turned off.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

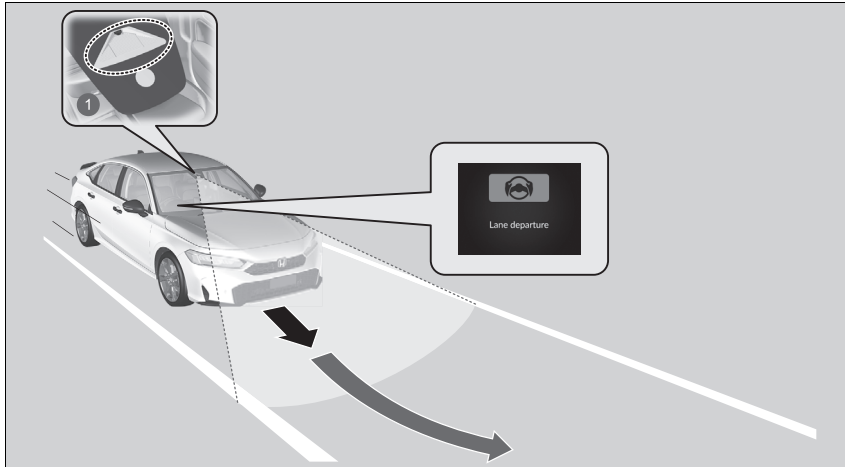
Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible* and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.

■ Tactile, audible* and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible* and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



① Front wide view camera: Monitors the lane lines

* Not available on all models

☒ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

☒ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 568

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

☒ **LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 560

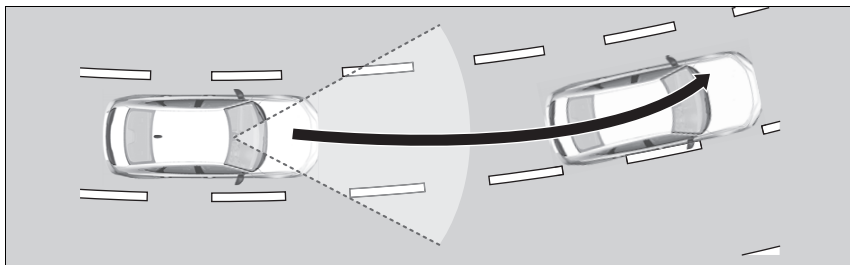
Continued

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



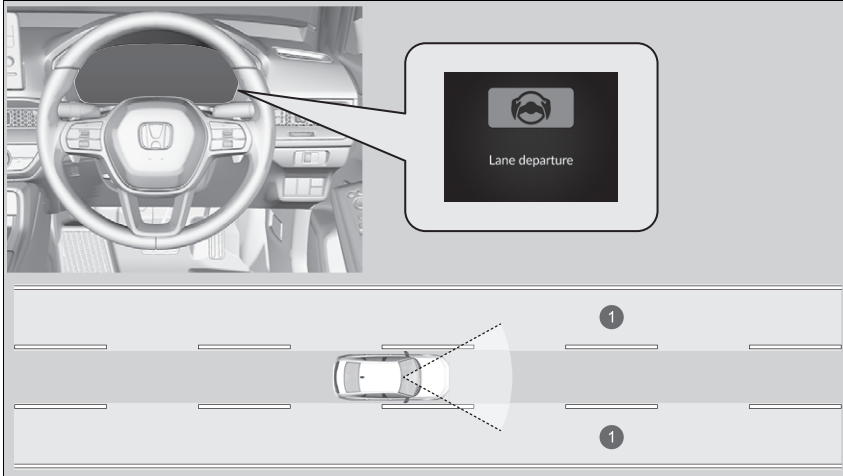
▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible* and visual warnings.



① Warning Area

* Not available on all models

■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not suddenly depressed.

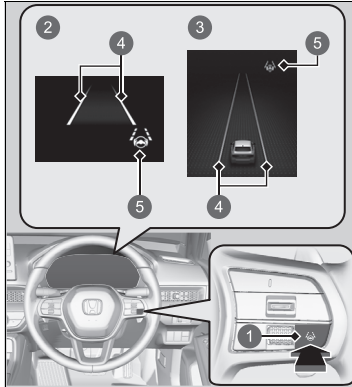
▶▶ When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Follow the points below to properly activate the system:

- Always keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the camera.

■ How to activate the system



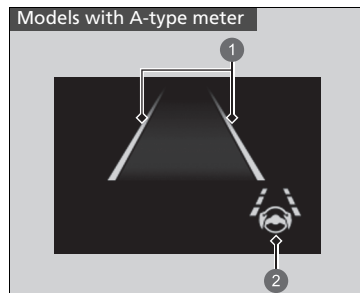
- ❶ LKAS Button
- ❷ Models with A-type meter
- ❸ Models with B-type meter
- ❹ White Lines
- ❺ LKAS indicator (white)

1. Press the LKAS button.

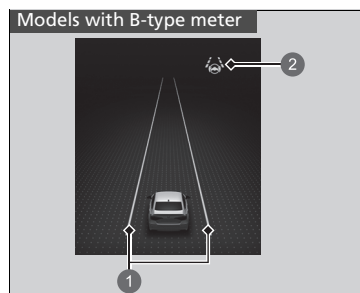
- ▶ LKAS indicator (white) appears on the gauge.
The system is standby.
- ▶ If traffic lane lines are detected, white lines appear on the gauge.

▶▶ When the System can be Used

If LKAS button is pressed when the system can be used, LKAS is on without standby.



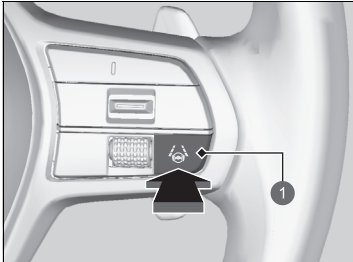
- ① Green lines
- ② LKAS indicator (green)



- ① Green lines
- ② LKAS indicator (green)

2. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
 - ▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

■ To Cancel



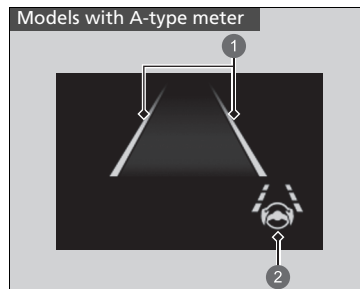
① LKAS Button

Press the LKAS button.

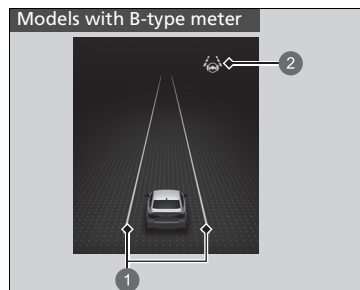
The LKAS is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

■ The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

When the LKAS is suspended under the following circumstances, green lines on the gauge change to white lines or disappear, and the beeper sounds (if activated).



- ① White lines
- ② LKAS indicator (white)



- ① White lines
- ② LKAS indicator (white)

- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h or less.
 - ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.
- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

▶▶ The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

You can change the setting for the LKAS. LKAS suspended beep on and off can be selected.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

■ **The LKAS may be automatically cancelled when:**

In the following cases, traffic lane lines may disappear on the gauge, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may be automatically cancelled:

- The camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.

■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

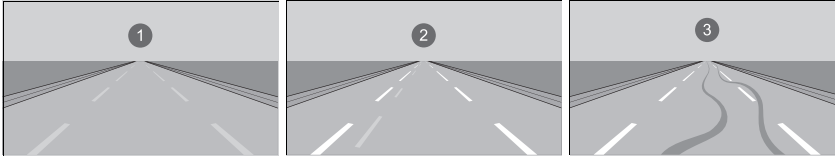
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.

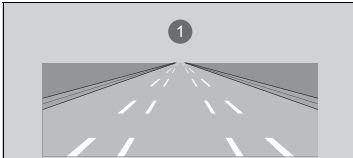


① Faded lines

② Duplicate lines

③ Tyre tracks

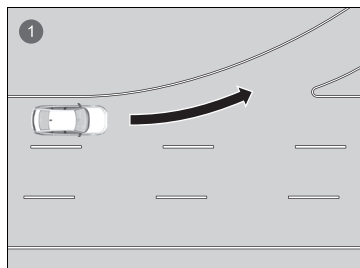
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



① Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



① Lane void of lines at junction

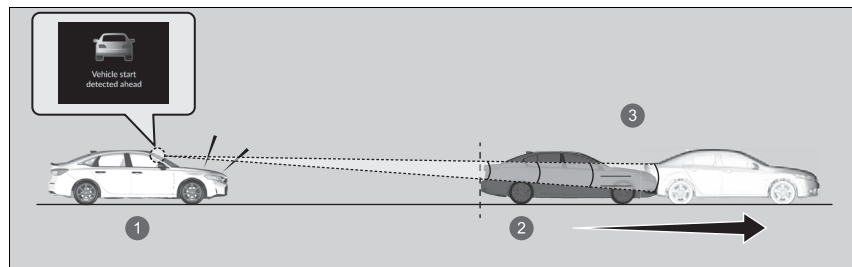
■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains* are installed.

* Not available on all models

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.



- ① When stopped
- ② Vehicle ahead is stopped
- ③ Vehicle ahead starts moving

How the System Works

The system detects a stopped vehicle in front of you, on the condition that the vehicles are within 10 m of each other and both vehicles have been stopped for a period of time. When the detected vehicle moves but yours does not, the system will activate.

When the shift position is in **D**

The system will work when the brake pedal is depressed, the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation, or the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

⚠ WARNING

Lead Car Departure Notification System is an supplemental system that provides driving assistance. It is not a system that informs you if it is safe to start driving.

Improper use of this system may lead to a collision.

Always visually confirm the safety of your surroundings before driving the vehicle and maintain a safe following-interval when driving.

You can read about handling information for the camera located behind the rearview mirror.

📺 **Front Wide View Camera** P. 568

Like other assistance systems, this system may not function properly depending on weather, environmental conditions, and so on.

■ When the shift position is in **N**

The system will work when the vehicle is stopped, the brake pedal is depressed, the parking brake is in operation, or the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

You can choose from two system operation timing modes, **Normal** and **Early**.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

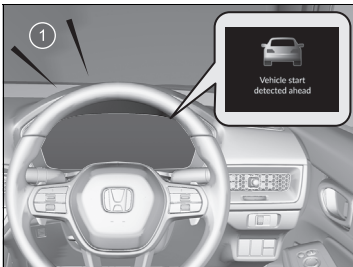
Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

In **Normal** mode, the system operates when the vehicle ahead of you has moved approximately 3 m from where it stopped.

In **Early** mode, the system operates as soon as movement has been detected.

■ When the System Activates



① Audible Alert

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when the system is activated.

▶▶ Lead Car Departure Notification System*

You can turn off the Lead Car Departure Notification System.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

The Lead Car Departure Notification System will not activate while the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator is on.

➤ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 530

■ Lead Car Departure Notification System Conditions and Limitations

In the following conditions, the system may or may not activate regardless of whether the vehicle ahead of you starts to move.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads or immediately after turning to the left or right.

■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- The vehicle is only stopped for a short time.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

* Not available on all models

■ Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

- The vehicle ahead of you is only stopped for a short time.
- The space between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you is moving too slowly.
- The vehicle ahead of you suddenly turns around or to the left or right.
- The vehicle ahead of you blends into the scenery and can't be detected.
- The vehicle ahead of you has only one or neither of their taillights on.

■ Examples of other limitations on detection

- There is a pedestrian, bicycle, motorcycle, or other specially-shaped vehicle in front of you.
- Another vehicle, pedestrian, or bicycle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you is not directly in front of you.

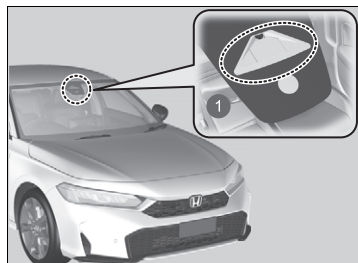
■ Examples of other limitations on system operation

- The camera cannot correctly detect the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you has very high ground clearance.
- The vehicle ahead of you, such as a lorry without a trailer, has a rear that is smaller than the front.

Front Wide View Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Lead Car Departure Notification System*, and Auto High-Beam, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

■ Camera Location and Handling Tips



① Front Wide View Camera

This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

❏ Front Wide View Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.

After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

▶ Front Wide View Camera

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Clean front windshield or poor viewing condition.*1/Some driver assist system cannot operate: Clean front windscreen or poor viewing condition.*2** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean.

Clean the windscreen if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

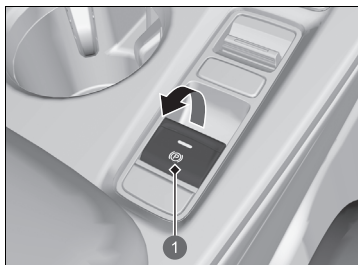
*1: Latin American and Philippine models

*2: Except Latin American and Philippine models

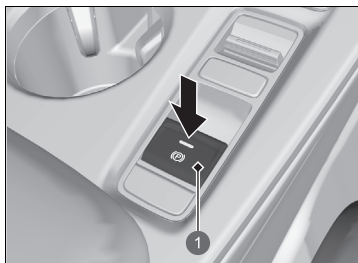
Brake System

Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch

To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has 12-volt battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

- ▶ The indicator in the switch comes on.
- ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.

To release

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
 - ▶ The indicator in the switch goes off.
 - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle to start slowly and smoothly when facing downhill on steep hills.

Brake System

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.

❏ **If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead** P. 684

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the electric servo brake system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

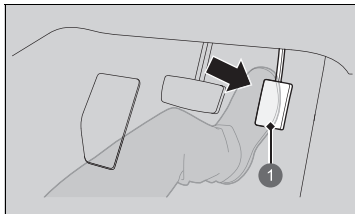
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

► **Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature** P. 572

■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



① Accelerator Pedal

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The power system is on.
- The transmission is not in **P** or **N**.

Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

- The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

►► Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the power system is turned off while brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the Brake Hold System while brake hold is applied.

Models with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the power system is turned off while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Put the transmission into [P].
2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
 - Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has come on.
3. Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within three seconds pull up and hold the switch again.
4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
 - Two beeps indicate that the feature has been activated.
 - One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
 - When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn the power system off.
 - To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature, follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
2. Set the power mode to OFF and then within two seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
 - Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
 - Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both ACC with Low Speed Follow* and the automatic brake hold system.
 - To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

▣ Parking Brake

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Parking brake and brake system indicator (red)
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

▣ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

🔧 **Brake Assist System** P. 578

🔧 **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 577

🔧 Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Applying constant pressure to the brakes while going down a long hill can cause the brakes to heat up, resulting in a loss of stopping power.

Therefore, when descending a long hill, release the accelerator pedal and allow regenerative braking to slow the vehicle down.

To adjust the rate of deceleration, use the deceleration paddle selector.

When the high voltage battery has fully recharged, regenerative braking may not be possible.

🔧 **POWER Gauge** P. 126

🔧 **CHARGE/DECEL Gauge** P. 126

🔧 **High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge**
P. 127

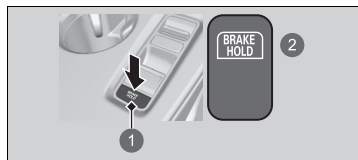
🔧 **Deceleration Paddle Selector** P. 473

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

■ Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■ Turning on the system



- ① Automatic Brake Hold Button
- ② Comes On

Fasten your seat belt properly, then turn the power system on. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

The system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you fasten the driver's seat belt and turn the power system on.

► Automatic Brake Hold

⚠ WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

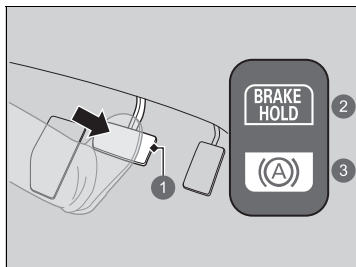
⚠ WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

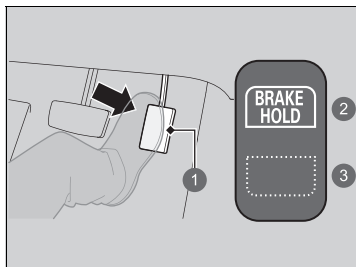
Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in **P** and applying the parking brake.

■ Activating the system



- ① Brake Pedal
- ② On
- ③ Comes On

■ Cancelling the system



- ① Accelerator Pedal
- ② On
- ③ Goes Off

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The transmission must not be in **P** or **R**.

- The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

Depress the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in a position other than **P** or **N**. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

- The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

►► Automatic Brake Hold

⚠ WARNING

When using the automatic brake hold, keep your foot on the brake pedal until the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

If the vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Release your foot from the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

While the system is activated, you can turn the power system off or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

❏ **When Stopped** P. 580

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

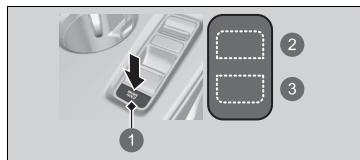
■ The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into **P** or **R**.

■ The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The power system is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

■ Turning off the automatic brake hold system



- 1 Automatic Brake Hold Button
- 2 Goes Off
- 3 Goes Off

Only the automatic brake hold system indicator comes on:

- Press the automatic brake hold button.
 - The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

When the automatic brake hold indicator comes on at the same time:

- Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.
 - The automatic brake hold system indicator and the automatic brake hold indicator go off.

►► Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

If you turn off the power system or unfasten the driver's seat belt while the automatic brake hold system is on, the automatic brake hold system will automatically turn off. In this case, when the driver's seat belt is fastened and the engine is turned back on, the automatic brake hold system will turn on without needing to press the automatic brake hold button.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

⌘ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the incorrect size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains*.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the power system has been turned on and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

* Not available on all models

Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

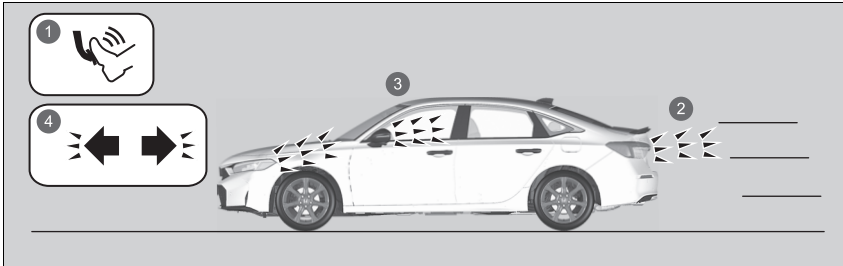
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ When the system activates:



- ① Hard Braking
- ② Brake Lights Come On
- ③ Hazard Warning Lights Flash
- ④ Hazard Warning Indicators Blink

The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

⚠ Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Put the transmission into **P**.
4. Turn the power system off.

Always set the parking brake, especially if you are parked on an incline.

» Parking Your Vehicle

WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

»» When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the driveline:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Putting the transmission into **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

When facing uphill, do not hold the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal.

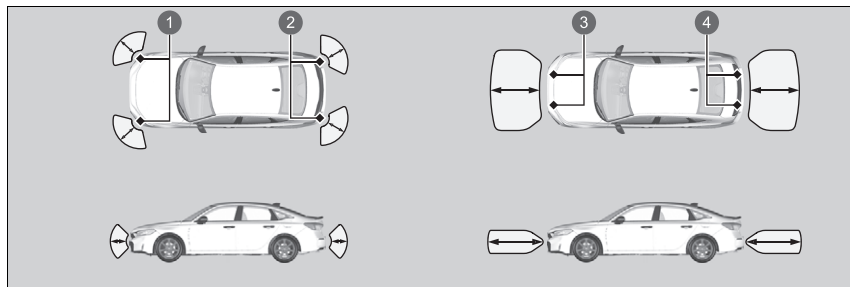
Doing so may cause the power system to overheat and fail.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System *

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The sensor location and range



- ① Front Corner Sensors
- ② Rear Corner Sensors
- ③ Front Centre Sensors
- ④ Rear Centre Sensors

►► Parking Sensor System *

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- There is something nearby that emits ultrasonic waves or high frequency sounds.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

The system may not detect these obstacles:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

The system may falsely detect obstacles in the following situations:

- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- There is splashing water near the sensors due to heavy rains, etc.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

► If you put any accessories (such as bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the system may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

► Customized Features P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

► Customized Features P. 401

■ Parking sensor system on and off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➤ **Switching the Display** P. 130, 147

➤ **Safety Support** P. 142, 162

The front corner, rear centre and rear corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in **[R]**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The front corner and front centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in any position other than **[P]** or **[R]**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

⌘ Parking sensor system on and off

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

You can turn the rear parking sensor system on and off using the audio/information screen.

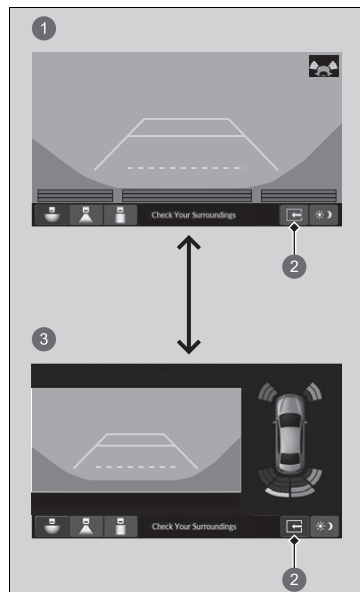
Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401


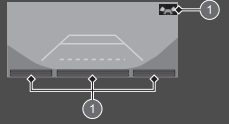




■ Screen Operation



You can switch between split view off and split view on by touching the split screen tab.

- ① Split View Off
- ② Split Screen Tab
- ③ Split View On

■ When the distance between your vehicle and detected obstacles becomes shorter

Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface	Audio/information screen
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors			
Moderate	—	Front: About 90-70 cm Rear: About 110-70 cm	Comes on* ¹ /Blinks* ² in Yellow* ³	<div>Latin American and Philippine models</div> 	
Short	Front: About 63-45 cm Rear: About 60-45 cm	About 70-55 cm	Comes on* ¹ /Blinks* ² in Amber	<div>Warning: Approaching object</div> 	
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 55-45 cm			
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 45 cm or less	Comes on* ¹ /Blinks* ² in Red	<div>Except Latin American and Philippine models</div> 	<div>WARNING: APPROACHING OBJECT</div> 

*1: On the driver information interface

*2: On the audio/information screen

*3: At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

① Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle.

To temporarily turn off the beeper, press the left*¹/right*² selector wheel while it is sounding. Temporary OFF will be cancelled when the shift position is switched or the vehicle speed reaches 14 km/h or higher.

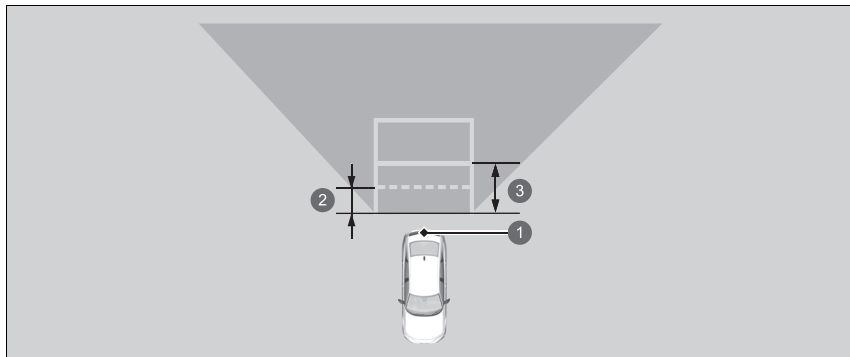
*1 : Models with A-type meter

*2 : Models with B-type meter

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into **R**.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



- ❶ Camera
- ❷ Approx. 50 cm
- ❸ Approx. 1 m

*1: Brazilian models
*2: Except Brazilian models

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display, which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

The rear camera view is displayed prior to the audio/information screen.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 303

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➤ **Customized Features** P. 401

Fixed Guideline

On*1/ON*2: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into **R**.

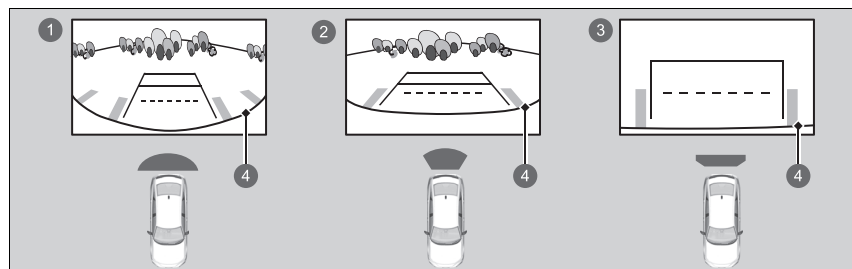
Off*1/OFF*2: Guidelines do not appear.





Dynamic Guideline

On*1/ON*2: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

Off*1/OFF*2: Guidelines do not move.

You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen. Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.



- 1  Wide View Mode
- 2  Normal View Mode
- 3  Top Down View Mode
- 4  Bumper

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into **R**.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned the power system off, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into **R**.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of **R**, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into **R**.
- If you were using Top down view mode and put the transmission back into **R** within 10 seconds after you took it out of **R**, Top down view mode will be activated.

► About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

If the vehicle's rear view is not displayed on the audio/information screen while the shift position is in **R**, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Fuel Information

Fuel recommendation

Brazilian models

Unleaded petrol

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Thai and Paraguayan models

Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Indonesian models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Use of petrol with a research octane less than 90 can lead to engine damage.

Models for other countries

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Fuel tank capacity: 40L

Engine cleaner

Fuel quality varies by region. Add genuine injector cleaner agent according to the time and distance instructions in the maintenance schedule.

Please use a genuine Honda injector cleaner agent. If not available, please use a PEA (polyetheramine) based cleaning agent instead.

Regular use of injector cleaner may be needed in countries or regions without a maintenance schedule. Consult your dealer for more information.

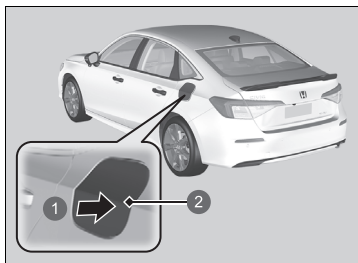
Fuel Information

NOTICE

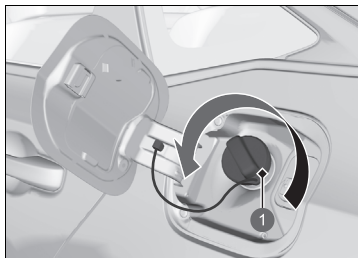
Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

How to Refuel



- 1 Press
- 2 Fuel Fill Door



- 1 Cap

1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn the power system off.
3. Unlock the driver's door.
 - ▶ The fuel fill door on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.

🔒 Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside P. 182

4. Press and release the area indicated by the arrow to release the fuel fill door. You will hear a click and the lid will open slightly.
5. Manually pull the fuel fill door to a fully open position.
6. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.

▶▶ How to Refuel

⚠ WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

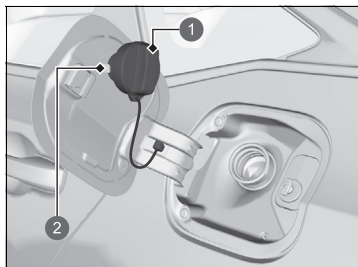
- Turn the power system off, and keep heat, sparks, and flames away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity and cause fuel to spill.

Use the lock tab or the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door. The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.



- ① Cap
- ② Holder

7. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
8. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
 - ▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
9. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
 - ▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

▶▶ How to Refuel

Models with Walk away auto lock

Using the Walk away auto lock feature will also lock the fuel fill door. Always make sure both the driver's door and fuel fill door are unlocked before attempting to open the fuel fill door.

▶ Locking the doors (Walk away auto lock)

P. 176

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO₂ emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult the service information provided for your vehicle.

On vehicles without service reminder system, follow the Maintenance schedule.

🔧 Maintenance Schedule P. 597

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.

🔧 Recommended Engine Oil P. 607

- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

🔧 Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \boxed{100} & \times & \boxed{\text{Litres of fuel}} & \div & \boxed{\text{Kilometres driven}} = \boxed{\text{L per 100 km}} \\ \boxed{\text{Kilometres driven}} & \div & \boxed{\text{Litres of fuel}} & = & \boxed{\text{Kilometres per Litre}} \end{array}$$

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance	594
Safety When Performing Maintenance	595
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance	
Service	596

Maintenance Schedule

Severe Conditions	602
Maintenance Record	603

Maintenance Under the Bonnet

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet ...	604
Opening the Bonnet	605
Recommended Engine Oil	607

Oil Check	609
Adding Engine Oil	610
Engine Coolant	611
High Voltage System Coolant	614
Transmission Fluid	615
Brake Fluid	616
Refilling Window Washer Fluid	617
Fuel Filter	617
Replacing Light Bulbs	618
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades	626
Checking and Maintaining Tyres	
Checking Tyres	628

Wear Indicators	629
Tyre Service Life	629
Tyre and Wheel Replacement	630
Tyre Rotation	631
Snow Traction Devices	633
12-Volt Battery	634

Remote Transmitter Care

Replacing the Remote Battery	639
------------------------------------	-----

Climate Control System Maintenance

Cleaning

Interior Care	644
Exterior Care	647

Accessories and Modifications

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 597

Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
 - **Brake Fluid** P. 616
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
 - **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 628
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
 - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 618
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
 - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 626

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery, all High Voltage systems, and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
 - Heat from the surrounding parts can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
 - Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
 - ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is turned off.
- Make sure that the radiator fan is stopped before inspecting the motor compartment.
 - ▶ Depending on the vehicle condition, the radiator fan may operate even when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
 - ▶ Make sure to let the power system including the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
 - ▶ Do not activate the power system unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts. When the power mode is on, the engine can automatically start, or the radiator fan may start operating without the engine running.
- Do not touch the high-voltage battery and wiring (orange).

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda Genuine Parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda Genuine Parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

▶▶ Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

NOTICE

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

Maintenance Schedule

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult the service information provided for your vehicle for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Except Brazilian models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000 months	20 12	40 24	60 36	80 48	100 60	120 72	140 84	160 96	180 108	200 120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
	Severe	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Replace spark plugs		Every 100,000 km									
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Add genuine injector cleaner agent* ¹		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace transmission fluid* ²	Normal	Every 150,000 km or 6 years									
	Severe	Every 75,000 km or 3 years									
Replace transmission fluid* ³	Normal	Every 150,000 km or 6 years									
	Severe	Every 80,000 km or 4 years									
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									

*1: Regular use of injector cleaner is required for models designated for Honduras, Nicaragua, Gambia, Nigeria, Cape Verde, Peru, Djibouti, Guinea, Guatemala, Venezuela, Haiti, Togo, Equatorial Guinea, Afghanistan, Iraq, Liberia, Philippines, Sierra Leone, Dominica, Grand Cayman, and Bangladesh.

*2: Except Jordanian, Lebanese, Moroccan, and Tunisian models

*3: Jordanian, Lebanese, Moroccan, and Tunisian models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace brake fluid		Every 3 years									
Replace fuel filter in tank* ⁴	Normal	Every 180,000 km									
	Severe	Every 110,000 km* ⁶									
Replace fuel filter in tank* ⁵	Normal	Every 150,000 km									
	Severe	Every 70,000 km* ⁶									
Check expiry date for tyre repair kit bottle (If equipped)		Every 1 year									
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)		Every 10,000 km									

Visually inspect the following items:

Driveshaft boots	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots										
Suspension components										
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA)										
Exhaust system	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Fuel lines and connections										
All fluid levels and condition of fluid										

*4:Except African, Latin American, and Indonesian models

*5:African, Latin American, and Indonesian models

*6:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Brazilian models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
	Severe	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Replace spark plugs		Every 100,000 km									

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Add genuine injector cleaner agent		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace transmission fluid	Normal	Every 150,000 km or 6 years									
	Severe				•				•		
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace brake fluid		Every 3 years									
Replace fuel filter in tank	Normal	Every 180,000 km									
	Severe	Every 110,000 km*1									
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)		Every 10,000 km									

Visually inspect the following items:

Driveshaft boots	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots										
Suspension components										
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA)										
Exhaust system	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Fuel lines and connections										

*1: It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Severe Conditions

Follow the Severe Conditions Maintenance Schedule if you drive your car MAINLY under one or more of the following conditions:

- Driving less than 8 km per trip or, in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km per trip.
- Driving in extremely hot, over 35°C condition.
- Extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go driving.
- Driving with a loaded car-top carrier or driving in mountainous conditions.
- Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

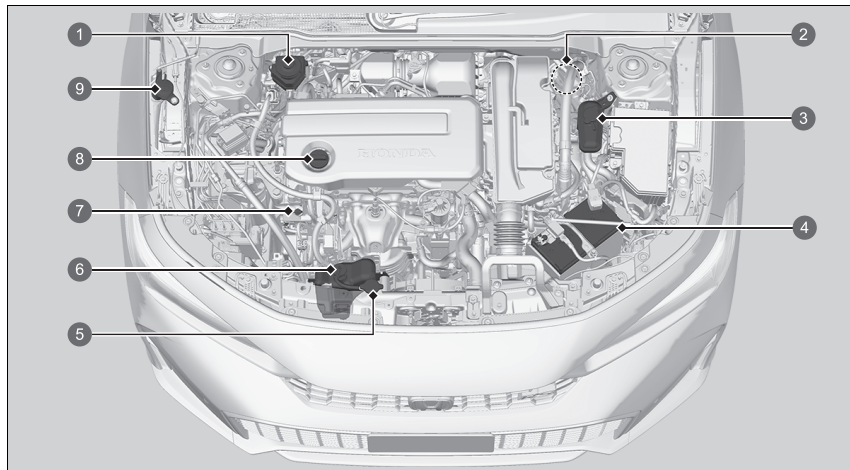
NOTE: If you only OCCASIONALLY drive under "severe" conditions, you should follow the Normal Conditions Maintenance Schedule.

Maintenance Record

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

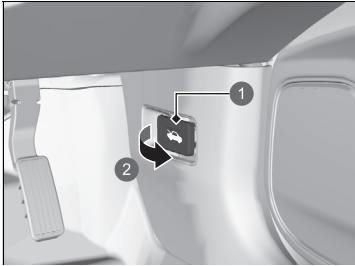
Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)		
40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)		
60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)		
80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)		
100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)		
120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)		
140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)		
160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)		
180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)		
200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)		

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet

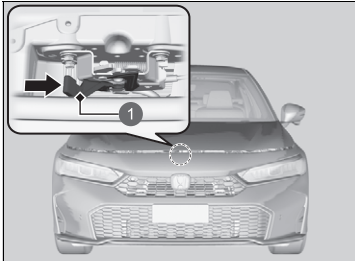


- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1 Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Right-hand Drive Type) | 5 Radiator Cap |
| 2 Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Left-hand Drive Type) | 6 Engine Coolant Reserve Tank |
| 3 High Voltage System Coolant Tank | 7 Engine Oil Dipstick (Orange) |
| 4 12-volt Battery | 8 Engine Oil Fill Cap |
| | 9 Washer Fluid (Blue Cap) |

Opening the Bonnet



- ❶ Bonnet Release Handle
- ❷ Pull



- ❶ Lever

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
► The bonnet will pop up slightly.
3. Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

Opening the Bonnet

⚠ WARNING

The bonnet support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine.

To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod: Use the foam grip instead.

NOTICE

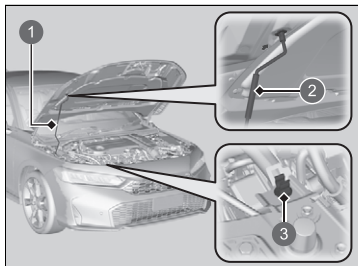
Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

NOTICE

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.



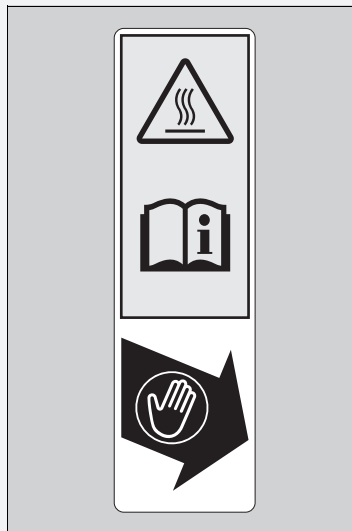
- ❶ Support Rod
- ❷ Grip
- ❸ Clamp

4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

► Opening the Bonnet

Models with pictogram label



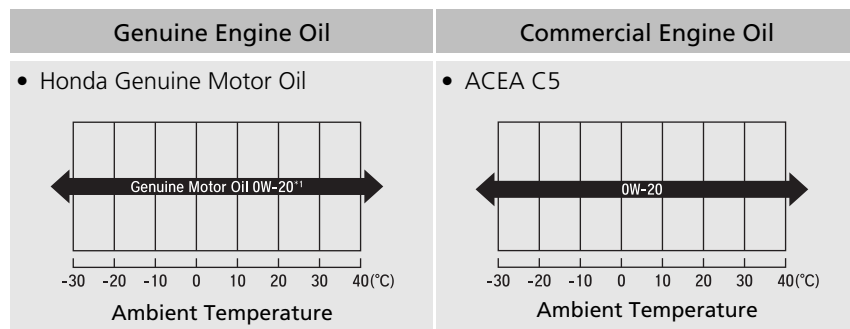
- The support rod gets very hot.
- Refer to the owner's manual.
- Grab the foam.

Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

Singaporean models



*1: Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

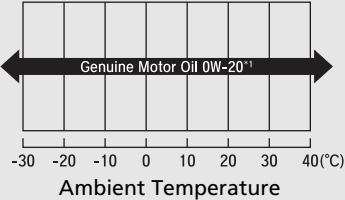
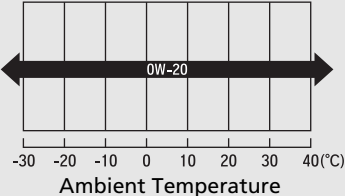
Singaporean models

You cannot use Engine Oil Additives.

Except Singaporean models

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Except Singaporean models

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none">Honda Genuine Motor Oil  <p>Ambient Temperature</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">API service SN or higher grade fuel-efficient oilAPI Certification Mark "Starburst"  <p>Ambient Temperature</p>

*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

►► Recommended Engine Oil

Except Singaporean models

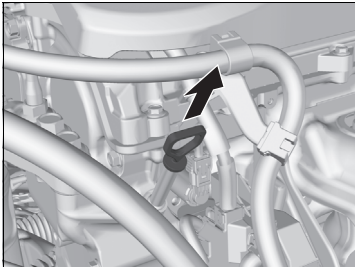
The following seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.



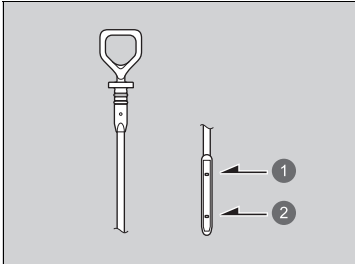
Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel. Park the vehicle on level ground.

Turn off the power system. You can check the oil level without the engine having run beforehand. If the engine has been running, wait approximately three minutes before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.



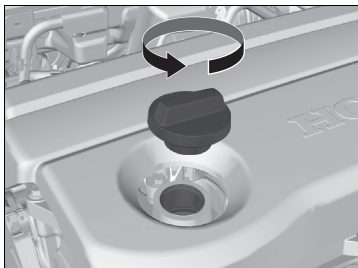
4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

- 1 Upper Mark
- 2 Lower Mark

Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

►► Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

Use a neutral detergent to remove it if it spills on the engine cover. Do not use organic solvents such as brake cleaner.

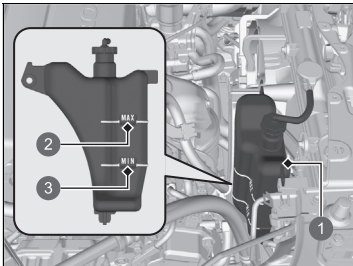
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank



- ① Reserve Tank
- ② **MAX**
- ③ **MIN**

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
 - If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

Engine Coolant

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

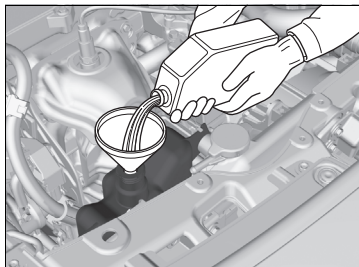
Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

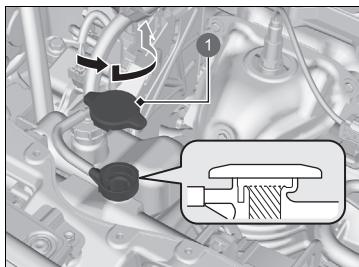
If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.



3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Radiator



1 Radiator Cap

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8th turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Radiator Cap

Models with pictogram label

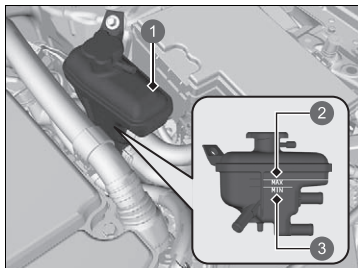


- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 108 kPa.

High Voltage System Coolant

When checking the coolant level, make sure to follow the procedures listed below. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

■ High Voltage System Coolant Tank



- ① Coolant Tank
- ② **MAX**
- ③ **MIN**

1. Check the coolant level in the tank.
2. If the coolant level has dropped below the **MIN** level, have your vehicle serviced at a dealer.
 - Only a properly trained technician can refill the coolant and check the system for leaks.

⚡ High Voltage System Coolant

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the motor components.

Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HEVF-Type 1

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change transmission fluid.

📖 **Maintenance Schedule** P. 597

Do not attempt to check or change the transmission fluid by yourself.

Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda HEVF-Type 1 with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HEVF-Type 1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

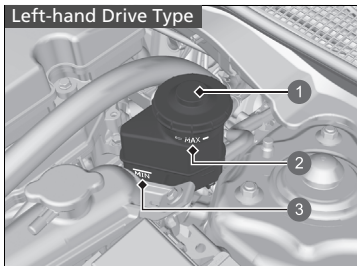
Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HEVF-Type 1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Checking the Brake Fluid

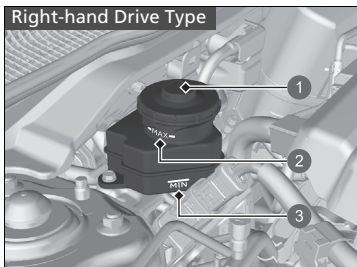
Left-hand Drive Type



- ① Reserve Tank
- ② **MAX**
- ③ **MIN**

The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

Right-hand Drive Type



- ① Reserve Tank
- ② **MAX**
- ③ **MIN**

» Brake Fluid

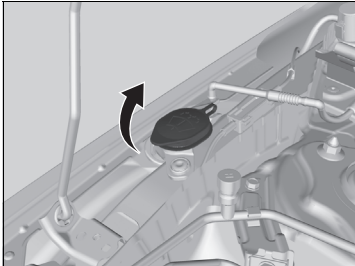
NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



Check the amount of window washer fluid.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

✕ Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale buildup.

Headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal Lights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Door mirror side turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Headlights

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

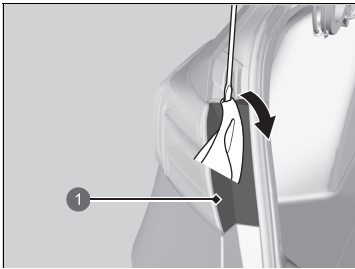
Brake Lights, Taillights, and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

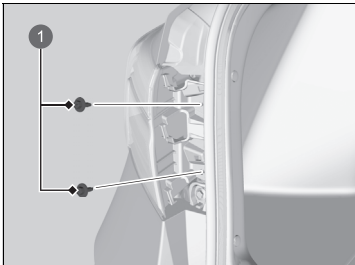
Brake Light: LED

Taillight: LED

Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)



1 Cover



1 Bolt

1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.

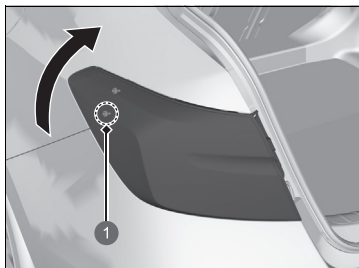
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

2. Unscrew the bolts.

► Brake Lights, Taillights, and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

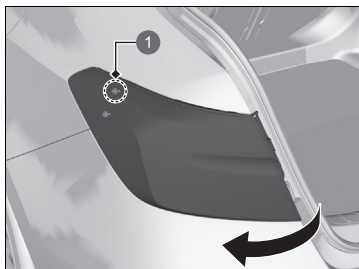
Brake lights and taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Continued



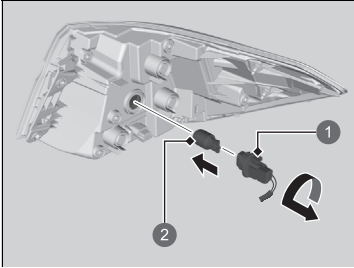
❶ Lower Snap Pin

3. Grasp underneath the taillight and rotate it upward to release the lower snap pin.



❶ Upper Snap Pin

4. Rotate the taillight outward to release the upper snap pin.
5. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.



① Socket

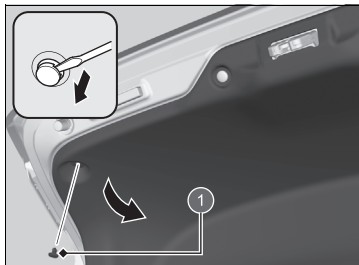
② Bulb

6. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
7. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.
8. Align the pins with the body grommets, then push in until they fully seat.

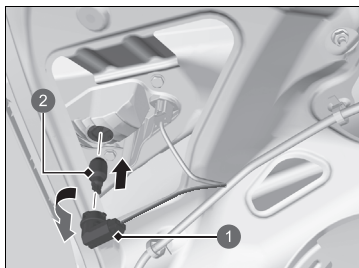
Taillights, Rear Fog Light*, and Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Taillight: LED
Rear Fog Light*: LED
Back-Up Light: 16 W



① Holding Clip



① Socket
 ② Bulb

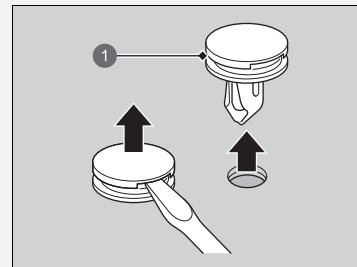
1. Remove the holding clip using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.

2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

► Taillights, Rear Fog Light*, and Back-Up Light Bulbs

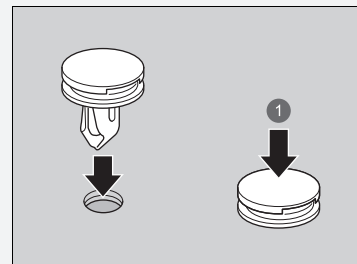
Taillights and rear fog light* are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

When removing the clip, insert a flat-tip screwdriver, then lift and remove the clip.



① Clip

Insert the clip with the pin raised, and push until it is flat.



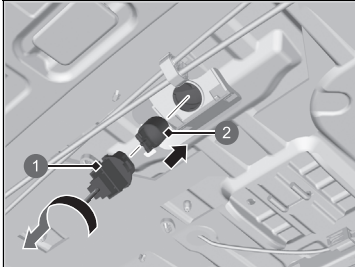
① Push until the pin is flat.

High-Mount Brake Light Bulb

Models without LED high-mount brake light

When replacing, use the following bulb.

High-Mount Brake Light: 21 W



- ① Socket
- ② Bulb

1. Open the boot.
2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

► High-Mount Brake Light Bulb

Models with LED high-mount brake light

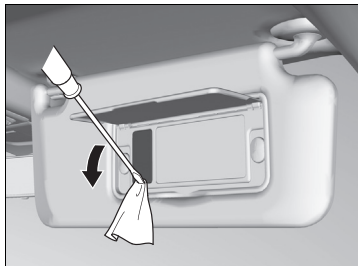
High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Other Light Bulbs

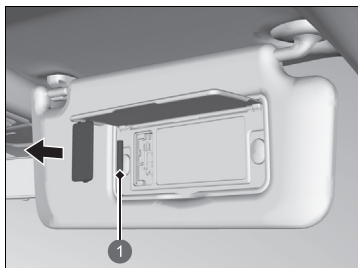
■ Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Vanity Mirror Light: 2 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
 - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

1 Bulb

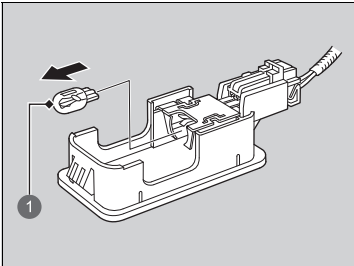
■ Boot Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Boot Light: 5 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
 ► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



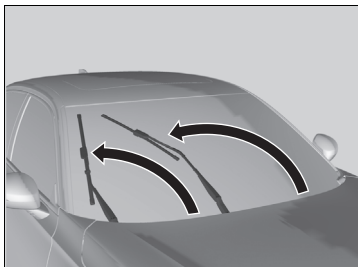
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

① Bulb

Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

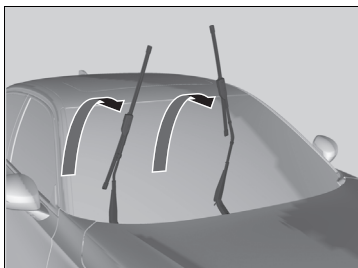
Lifting the Wiper Arms



1. Set the power mode to ON, then to VEHICLE OFF.
2. Within 10 seconds of setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, hold the wiper switch in the **MIST** position for more than two seconds.

► Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.

3. Lift both wiper arms.



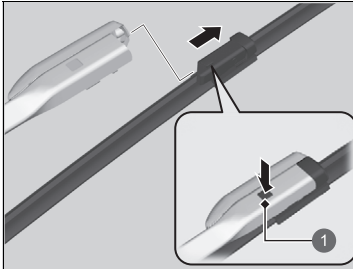
» Lifting the Wiper Arms

NOTICE

When lifting the wiper arms, always follow the instructions to move them into the maintenance position.

The wiper arms may be damaged if they are moved manually.

Changing the Wiper Blade



1 Tab

1. Lift both wiper arms.
 ▶ **Lifting the Wiper Arms** P. 626
2. Depress the lock tab, then slide the wiper blade off the wiper arm.
3. Slide the new wiper blade onto the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
4. Lower both wiper arms.
5. Set the power mode to ON, then set the wiper switch to the **MIST** position once.
 ▶ The wiper arms return to the standard position.

✕ Changing the Wiper Blade

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, as it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare*. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10–20 kPa (0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems. Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

🔧 **Wear Indicators** P. 629

- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

* Not available on all models

🔧 Checking Tyres

⚠️ WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

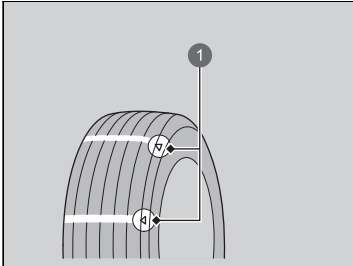
High speed driving

Models with 215/50R17 91V tyres

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 160 km/h), adjust the cold tyre pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat buildup and sudden tyre failure.

Tyre Size	215/50R17 91V
Pressure	Front: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi) Rear: 230 kPa (2.3 bar, 33 psi)

Wear Indicators



- ① Example of a Wear Indicator mark

The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre.

Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare*, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

* Not available on all models

✎ Checking Tyres

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system*.

✎ Deflation Warning System Calibration

P. 497

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

► Tyre and Wheel Replacement

WARNING

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

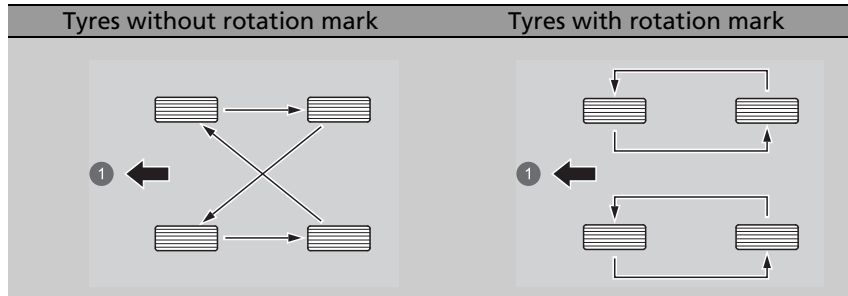
Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

■ Your Vehicle's Tyre Rotation Pattern

Models with a compact spare tyre or tyre repair kit

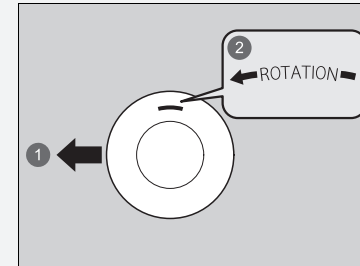
Rotate the tyres as shown here.



1 Front

✎ Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



- 1 Front
- 2 Rotation Mark

When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Wheel nut torque for the tyres that come standard-equipped with your vehicle is as follows.

Wheel nut torque:
108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

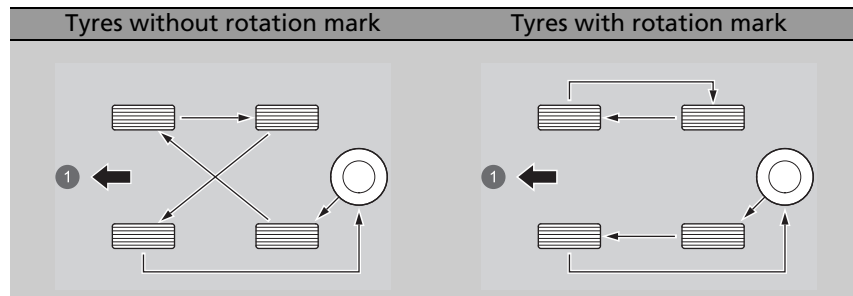
Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the deflation warning system*.

✎ **Deflation Warning System Calibration**
P. 497

* Not available on all models

Models with a full-size spare tyre

Rotate the tyres, including a spare, as shown here.



① Front

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Latin American, Jordanian, Lebanese, Singaporean, and Tunisian models

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
215/50R17 91V	RUD-matic classic 48489

*1:Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

⚠ Snow Traction Devices

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

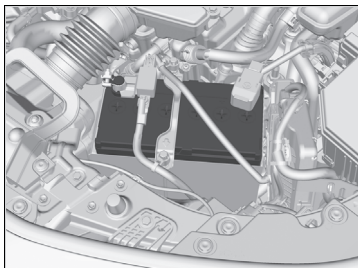
When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Checking the 12-Volt Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled*.

➤ **Reactivating the audio system** P. 248

12-Volt Battery

⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

⚠ WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

Charging the 12-Volt Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

If the battery cable is removed while a system update is being performed, the electrical system can be permanently damaged. Only remove the battery cable when a system update is not being performed.

12-Volt Battery

Emergency Procedures

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Consult a dealer for more information.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF***, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*, Road Departure Mitigation* and safety support* indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Brazilian models

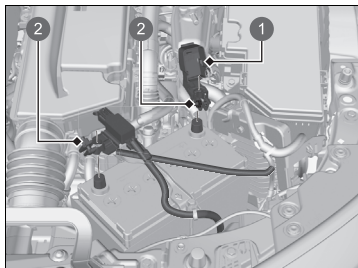
Replacing the 12-Volt Battery

When you remove and replace the battery, always follow the maintenance safety and the warnings for when checking the battery to prevent potential hazards.

➤ **Maintenance Safety** P. 595

➤ **Checking the 12-Volt Battery** P. 634

If the battery cable is removed while a system update is being performed, the electrical system can be permanently damaged. Only remove the battery cable when a system update is not being performed.



- ① Cover
- ② Nut

1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
Open the bonnet.
2. Loosen the nut on the negative battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the negative (-) terminal.
3. Open the positive battery terminal cover.
Loosen the nut on the positive battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the positive (+) terminal.

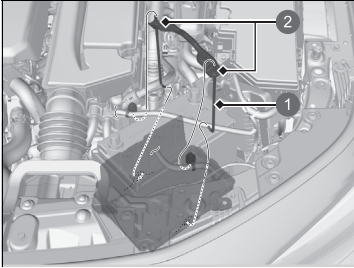
►► Replacing the 12-Volt Battery

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

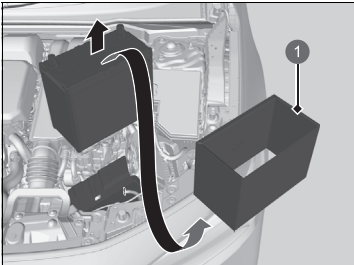
This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.





- ① Stay
- ② Nut

4. Loosen the nuts on each side of the battery bracket with a wrench.
5. Pull the bottom end of each battery stay out of the hole on the battery base, and remove the combination of the battery bracket and the stays.



- ① Battery Cover

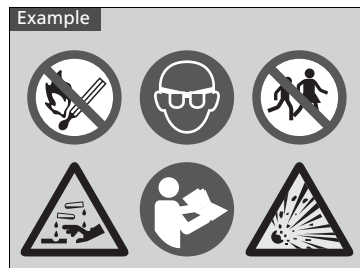
6. Remove the battery cover.
7. Take out the battery carefully.

► Replacing the 12-Volt Battery

To install a new battery, reverse this procedure.

Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

Battery Label



» Battery Label

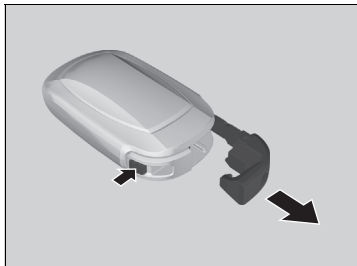
DANGER

- Keep flames and sparks away from the battery. The battery produces explosive gas that can cause an explosion.
- Wear eye protection and rubber gloves when handling the battery to avoid risk of burns or loss of eyesight if exposed to battery electrolyte.
- Do not allow children to handle the battery, under any circumstance. Ensure that anyone handling the battery has a proper understanding of the hazards and correct handling procedures involved.
- Handle battery electrolyte with extreme care, as it contains dilute sulfuric acid. Exposure to eyes or skin can cause burns or loss of eyesight.
- Read this manual carefully, and understand it before handling the battery. Failure to do so can cause personal injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not use the battery if the level of electrolyte is at or below the recommended level. Using the battery with low electrolyte can cause it to explode, causing serious injury.

Replacing the Remote Battery

■ Keyless remote

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.
2. With the buttons facing down, remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the slot with the key grip.
 - Wrap a key grip with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.



⌘ Replacing the Remote Battery

⚠ ⚠ WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

CAUTION: Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

CAUTION: Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

CAUTION: Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

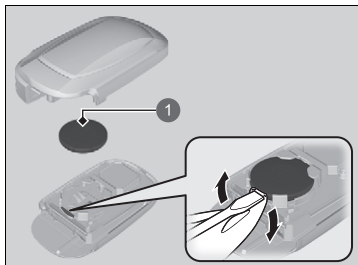
CAUTION: Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.

A warning mark is located adjacent to the button battery*.

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

* Not available on all models



1 Battery

3. Remove the battery by prying on the edge with flat-tip screwdriver. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.
 - Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

►► Replacing the Remote Battery

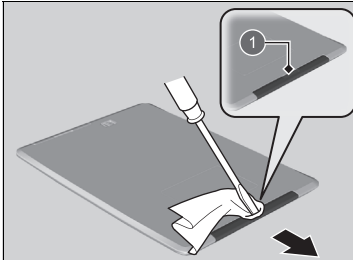
Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

Brazilian models

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.



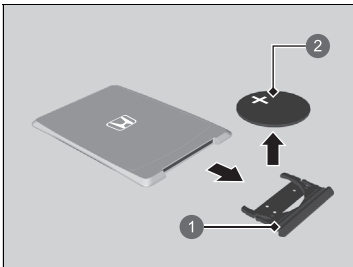
■ Card Key*



Battery type: CR2412

1. Put the H logo side down of the card key.
2. Push to slide the groove of the battery holder using a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the battery holder.
 - ▶ Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the battery holder.

① Groove



3. Remove the battery. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.
4. To reinstall the battery holder, push the battery holder into the card key until it clicks.
 - ▶ Make sure to install the battery holder in the correct side.

① Battery Holder

② Battery

* Not available on all models

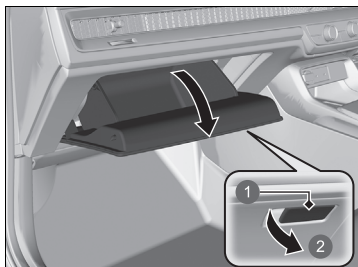
Dust and Pollen Filter

■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 597

■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



- ① Handle
- ② Pull

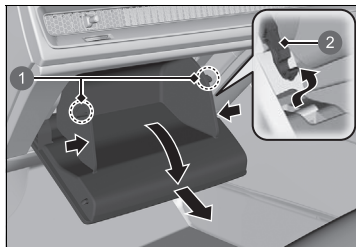
1. Open the glove box.

» Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

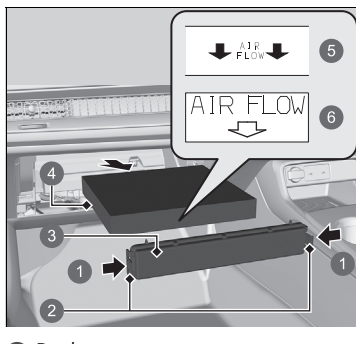
The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.



- ① Tab
- ② Stopper

2. Push the stopper on the driver's side of the glove box to detach it from the glove box.
3. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
4. Remove the glove box.



- ① Push
- ② Tab
- ③ Cover
- ④ Dust and Pollen Filter
- ⑤ Southeast Asian models
- ⑥ Latin American, Jordanian, Lebanese, and Tunisian models

5. Push in the tabs on the sides of the filter case cover, and remove it.
6. Remove the filter from the case.
7. Install a new filter in the case.
 - Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.



1 Opening

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone-based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone-based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles. Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin-based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

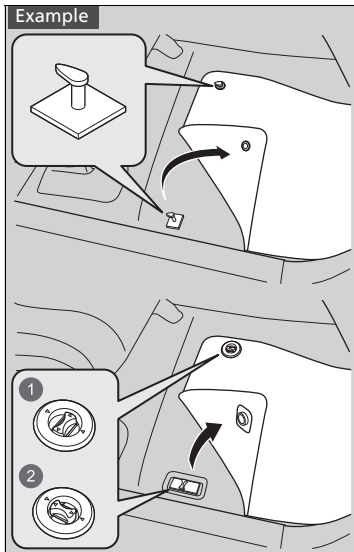
Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of the electrical components around the rearview mirror.

Floor Mats



- 1 Unlock
- 2 Lock

The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchorages, which keep the mat from sliding forward.

Do not put any additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchorages. Position any rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

Continued

■ Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

▣ Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather, resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats, resulting in discolouration or stains.

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap is stuck to painted surfaces.

■ Using an Automated Car Wash

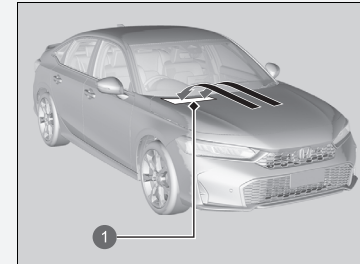
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.
- Do not spray water directly onto the camera or the area around it. Water may enter the lens and cause the camera to malfunction.

❏ Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



❶ Air Intake Vents

Lock the doors when washing the vehicle. Do not spray water onto the fuel fill door directly. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.

If you need to lift the wiper arms away from the windshield, first set the wiper arms to the maintenance position.

❏ Lifting the Wiper Arms P. 626

If water and any chemicals are on the brakes when your vehicle is being washed, drive a short distance and apply the brakes several times before parking. Parking while brakes are wet may cause them to be stuck by rust.

■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin-coated parts, they may stain or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

» Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

» Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

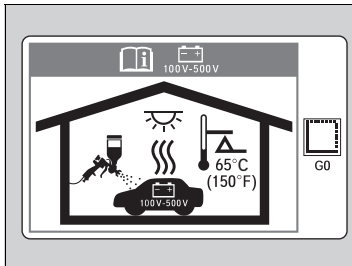
The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

■ Painting the Vehicle

Except Latin American models



High temperature may damage the high-voltage battery used to power the electric motor.

When painting the vehicle in a heated paint booth, make sure the temperature does not exceed 65°C.

Latin American models

Refer to the colour code label and the temperature notice label affixed to the driver's doorjamb before painting the vehicle.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle over areas marked **SRS AIRBAG**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on the sides of the rear seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows.

Items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.

- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.

➤ **Fuses** P. 699

- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Accessories and Modifications

WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

WARNING

Use of improperly designed, engineered or manufactured high-voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.

A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.

Only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high voltage hybrid power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's high voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a Genuine Honda high voltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda high voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's hybrid power system and have been designed, engineered and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine high voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

Accessories and Modifications

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine Accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Some Honda Genuine Accessories are supplied with an exclusive owner's manual for the operation and care detail of the product. If an accessory owner's manual is provided to you, please refer to it for full detail.

If any Honda Genuine Accessories become inoperable, refer to the separate accessory owner's manual (if applicable) or consult a dealer for assistance to troubleshoot the potential faulty condition.

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools

Types of Tools 654

If a Tyre Goes Flat

Models with spare tyre

Changing a Flat Tyre 656

Models with tyre repair kit

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre 665

Handling of the Jack 677

Power System Won't Start

Checking the Procedure 678

If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak 680

Emergency Power System On 682

Emergency Power System Off 683

If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 684

Shift Lever Does Not Move 687

Overheating 689

Indicator Coming On/Blinking

If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears 691

If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On 692

If the Reduced stopping power Warning Appears 693

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks 694

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks 695

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On 696

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On 697

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator* Comes On or Blinks ... 698

Fuses

Fuse Locations 699

Inspecting and Changing Fuses 708

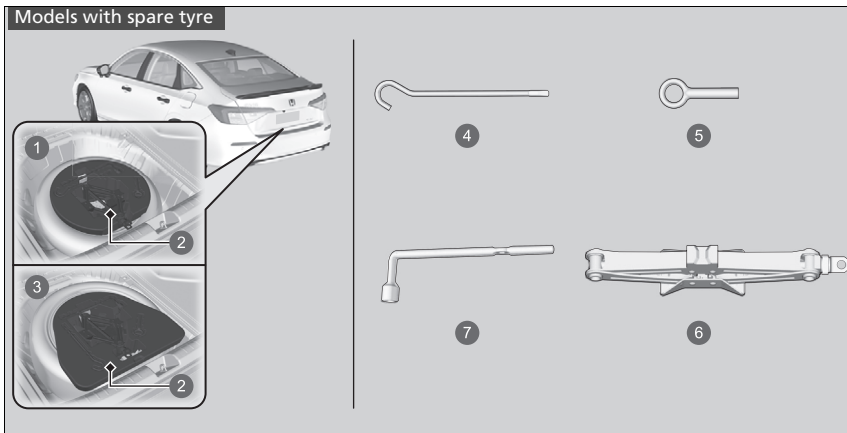
Emergency Towing 711

If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door 712

If You Cannot Open the Boot 713

* Not available on all models

Types of Tools

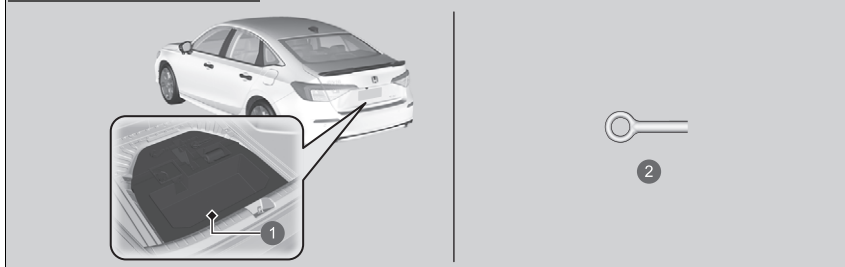


- ① Models with compact spare tyre
- ② Tool Case
- ③ Models with full-size spare tyre
- ④ Jack Handle Bar
- ⑤ Detachable Towing Hook
- ⑥ Jack
- ⑦ Wheel Nut Wrench/Jack Handle

Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the boot.

Models with tyre repair kit



- ① Tool Case
- ② Detachable Towing Hook

If a Tyre Goes Flat

Models with spare tyre

Changing a Flat Tyre

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a spare tyre. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the regular tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into **P**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

» Changing a Flat Tyre

Models with compact spare tyre

Follow compact spare precautions:

Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.

Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 bar, 60 psi)

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h. Replace with a regular tyre as soon as possible.

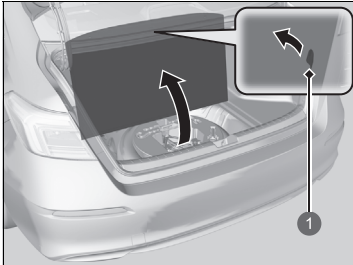
The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the regular rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the regular tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

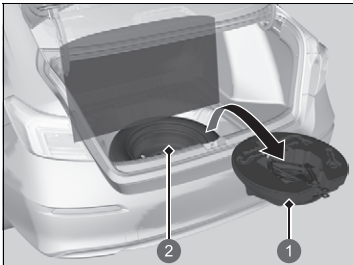
A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.

■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



① Strap



① Tool Case

② Spare Tyre

1. Pull the strap on the floor lid and open the lid.

2. Take the tool case out of the boot.

3. Take the jack, wheel nut wrench, and jack handle bar out of the tool case.

4. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.

► Changing a Flat Tyre

WARNING: The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

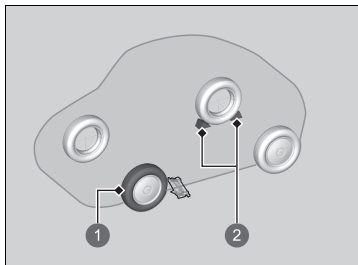
NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

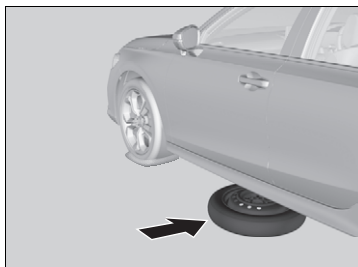
The shape of the tool case varies by model.

Models with compact spare tyre

The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.



- ❶ The tyre to be replaced.
- ❷ Wheel Blocks



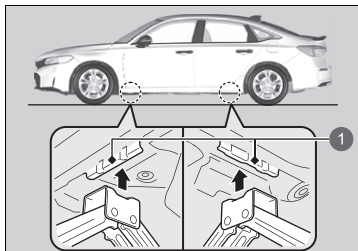
5. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

6. Place the spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.

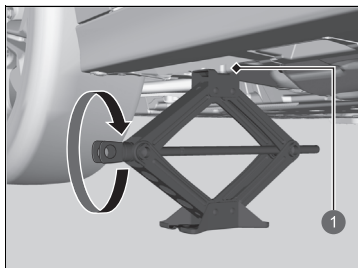


7. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

■ How to Set Up the Jack



① Jacking Point



① Jacking Point

1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.

► Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

► How to Set Up the Jack

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

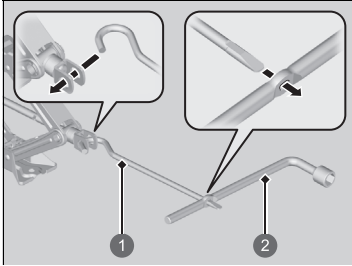
WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

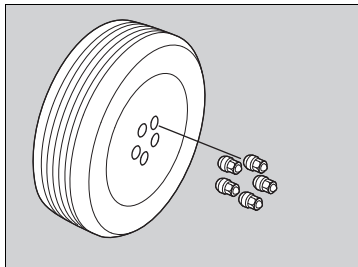
- Do not use while the power system is on.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.



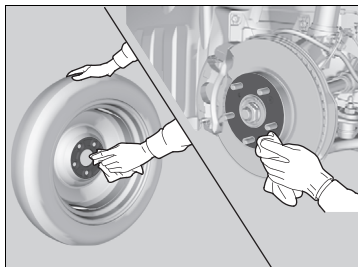
- ① Jack Handle Bar
- ② Wheel Nut Wrench as Jack Handle

3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

■ Replacing the Flat Tyre



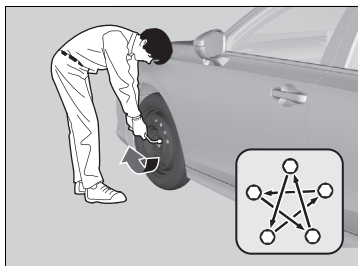
1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.

3. Mount the spare tyre.

4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.



5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack.

Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

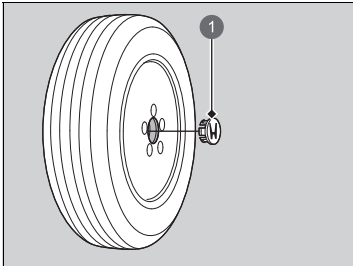
Wheel nut torque:

108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

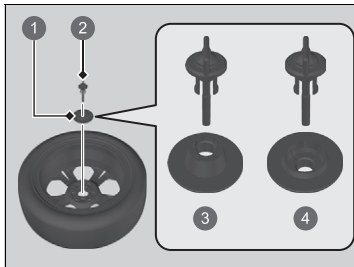
►► Replacing the Flat Tyre

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

■ Storing the Flat Tyre



1 Centre cap



- 1 Spacer Cone
- 2 Wing Bolt
- 3 For compact spare tyre
- 4 For full-size tyre

1. Remove the centre cap.

2. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.

Models with a compact spare tyre

3. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.

Models with a full-size spare tyre

3. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.

All models

4. Securely put the jack, wheel nut wrench, and jack handle bar back in the tool case.
5. Store the case in the boot.

► Storing the Flat Tyre

⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

Models with deflation warning system

■ Deflation Warning System and the Compact Spare Tyre

If you replace a flat tyre with the compact spare tyre, the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few kilometres, **Tire pressure monitor system problem. Check tire pressure. See your dealer.** will appear on the driver information interface and the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on; however, this is normal and is no cause for concern.

Calibrate the deflation warning system when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

🔧 **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 497

Models with tyre repair kit

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

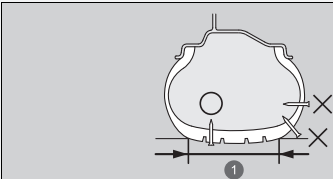
If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into **P**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm.
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.



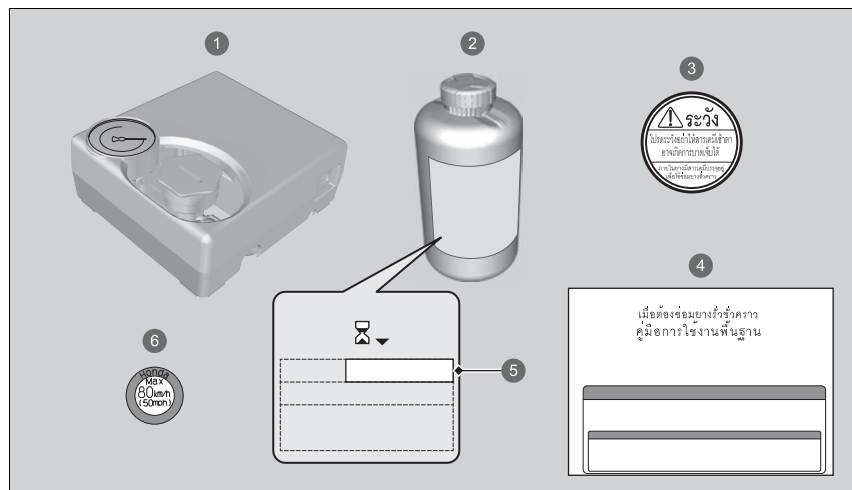
When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 4 mm	Yes
Larger than 4 mm	No

1 Contact Area

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

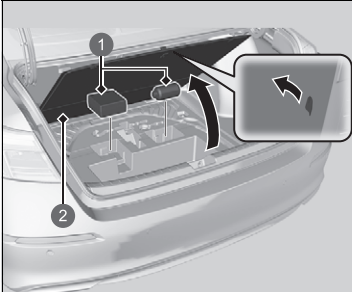
■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre



- ① Air Compressor
- ② Sealant Bottle
- ③ Wheel Label
- ④ Instruction Manual
- ⑤ Expiration Date
- ⑥ Speed Restriction Label

▣ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

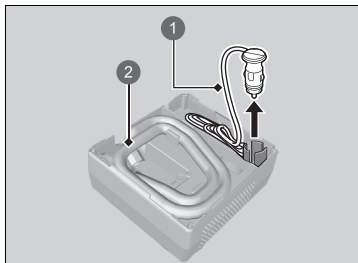
When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.



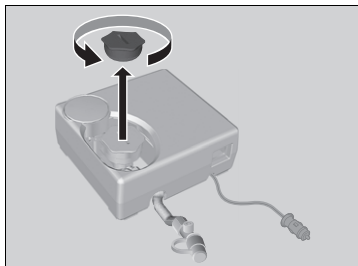
1. Pull the strap on the floor lid and open the lid.
2. Take the kit out of the tool case.
3. Place the kit face up on flat ground near the flat tyre and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

- ① Temporary Tyre Repair Kit
- ② Floor Lid

■ Injecting the Sealant and Air



- ① Plug Cord
- ② Air Compressor Hose



1. Take the air compressor hose and plug cord out of the back of the air compressor.

2. Remove the cap from the air compressor.

► Injecting the Sealant and Air

⚠ WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

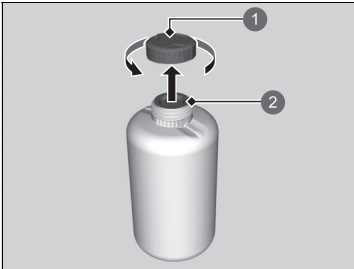
The sealant is latex based and can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe up any spills immediately.

Do not remove the empty bottle after injecting the sealant.

See a Honda dealer for a replacement of sealant bottle and proper disposal of the empty bottle.



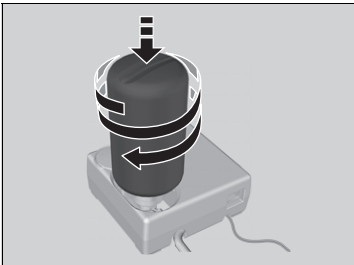
3. Shake the bottle well.



4. Remove the bottle cap.

► Do not remove the sealed cover.

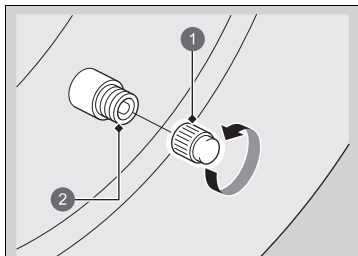
- ① Bottle Cap
- ② Not Removed



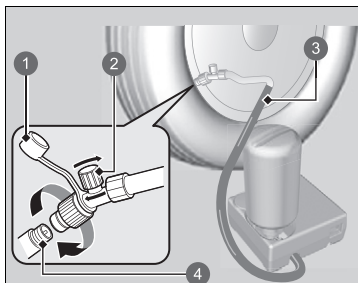
5. Screw the sealed bottle onto the air compressor.

► Screw the bottle tightly so that it does not become loose.

Continued



- ① Valve Cap
- ② Tyre Valve Stem



- ① Hose Cap
- ② Air Valve
- ③ Air Compressor Hose
- ④ Valve

6. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.

7. Screw the air compressor hose onto the tyre valve.
► Make sure the air valve is closed and the air compressor is turned off.

►► Injecting the Sealant and Air

⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

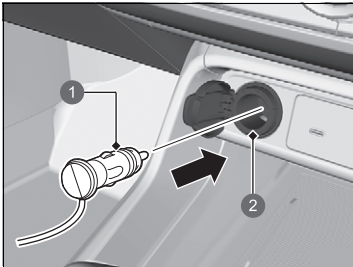
Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Turn the air compressor off when connecting the air compressor hose.

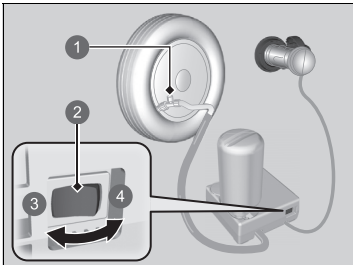
You hear a motor sound coming from the activated air compressor. This is normal.

If the specified air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

If you want to measure the air pressure using a gauge, turn the air compressor off first.



- ① Plug
- ② Accessory Power Socket



- ① Air Valve
- ② Switch
- ③ OFF
- ④ ON

8. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.

► Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.

✎ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 233

9. Turn on the vehicle's power system.

✎ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 103

10. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.

► The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.

► Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

11. After the air pressure reaches to specified pressure, turn off the compressor.

► Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.

► If overinflated, release the air by turning the air valve. Be careful not to spill any sealant.

12. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.

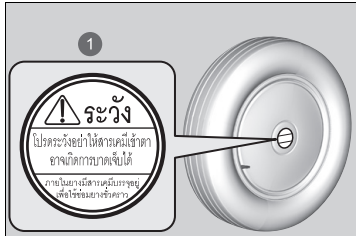
✎ Injecting the Sealant and Air

Inform the use of tyre sealant when you ask a Honda dealer or the road assistant service for replacing or repairing the flat tyre.

This air compressor is designed for the automotive tyre. Check the following:

- The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12-volt DC accessory power socket.
- Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 10 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Make it cool down when using the compressor continuously.



1 Wheel Label

13. Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve. Install the hose cap and valve cap.

► Be careful not to spill any sealant when the hose is disconnected. Wipe away any spills.

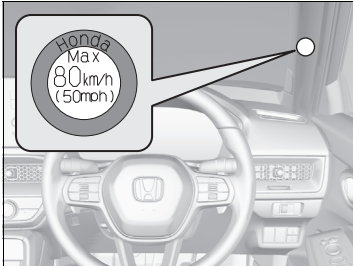
14. Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.

► The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

15. Store the tyre repair kit in the boot.

► Do not remove the sealant bottle from the air compressor.

■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes or 5 kilometres.
► Do not exceed 80 km/h.
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

► Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

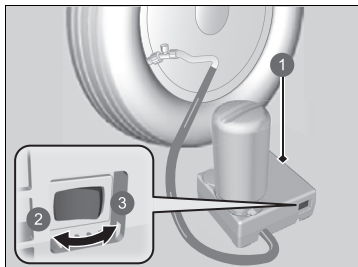
⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Continued



- ① Air Compressor
- ② OFF
- ③ ON

4. Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the compressor.

► Do not turn the air compressor switch on to check the pressure.

5. If the air pressure is

- Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi): Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.

❏ **Emergency Towing** P. 711

- Specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.) or more: Continue driving until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.
- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.): Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.

❏ **Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre**

P. 675

And repeat steps 2 to 4 until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.

► The distance to the nearest service station has to be within about 200 kilometres.

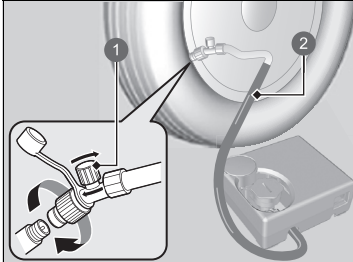
6. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

❏ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

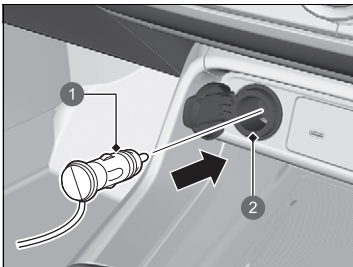
Make sure to store the air compressor with the empty bottle in the boot.

■ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.



- ❶ Air Valve
- ❷ Hose



- ❶ Plug
- ❷ Accessory Power Socket

1. Open the boot floor lid.

► **Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre** P. 666

2. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the tyre to be inflated, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
3. Remove the valve cap.
4. Attach the hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.
 - Make sure the air valve is closed.

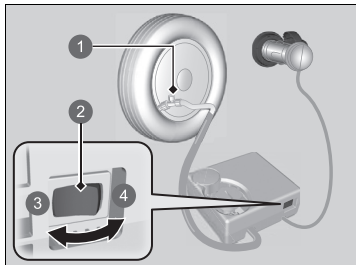
5. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
 - Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
 - **Accessory Power Socket** P. 233
6. Turn on the vehicle's power system.
 - **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 103

►► Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.



- ① Air Valve
- ② Switch
- ③ OFF
- ④ ON

7. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
 - The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
 - If you have started the power system, leave it running while injecting air.
8. Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
9. Turn off the air compressor.
 - Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
 - If overinflated, turn the air valve to deflate.
10. Turn the vehicle's power system off, then unplug the air compressor from the accessory power socket.
11. Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
12. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

►► Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

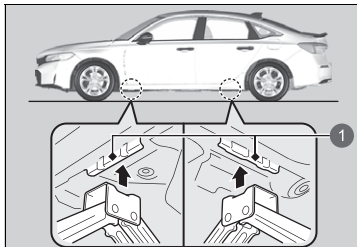
NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 10 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Handling of the Jack

Models with tyre repair kit

Your vehicle has jacking points as shown.
When replacing your tyres, consult a dealer.



① Jacking Points

Power System Won't Start

Checking the Procedure

If the power system won't start, check the following items and take appropriate action.

Checklist	Condition	What to Do
Check if the related indicator or driver information interface messages come on.	The Temperature is too cold for vehicle to operate *1 / Temperature too low for vehicle to operate *2 message appears.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature or move the vehicle to a warmer location.• Consult a dealer if necessary.
	The To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote message appears.	➤ If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak P. 680
Check the fuses.		Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➤ Inspecting and Changing Fuses P. 708
Check the power system starting procedure.		Follow the instructions, and try to start the power system again. ➤ Turning on the Power P. 461
Check the shift position.	The transmission is not in [P] .	Change the shift position to [P] .
Check the immobilizer system indicator.	When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.	➤ Immobilizer System P. 188 ➤ Immobilizer System Indicator P. 119

If you cannot turn on the power system after checking all the items in the list above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1 : Latin American and Philippine models
*2 : Except Latin American and Philippine models

* Not available on all models


If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

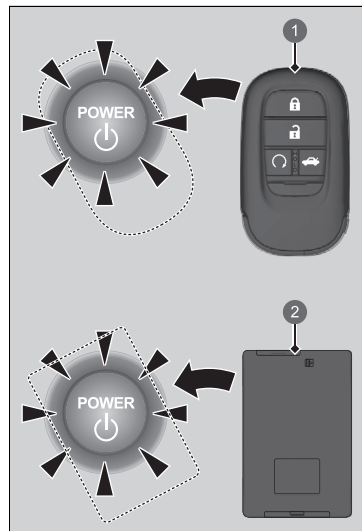
❏ **If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead** P. 684

Depending on the situation, it may be possible to temporarily turn the power system on using the emergency starting procedure.

❏ **Emergency Power System On** P. 682

If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** message appears on the driver information interface, the **POWER** button flashes, and the **READY** indicator*^{1/}  (Ready) indicator*² does not come on, turn on the power system as follows:



① Keyless Remote

② Card Key*

1. Press the **POWER** button.

► The beeper sounds and the **POWER** button flashes for about 30 seconds.

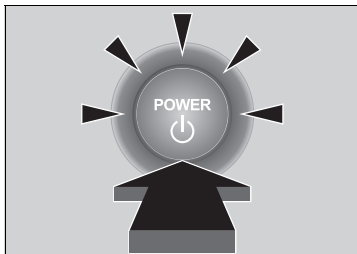
2. Touch the centre of the **POWER** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote or card key* while the **POWER** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote or card key* should be facing you.

► The beeper sounds, and the **POWER** button stays on for about 10 seconds.


*1 : Latin American and Philippine models

*2 : Except Latin American and Philippine models

* Not available on all models



3. Depress the brake pedal and press the **POWER** button while the **POWER** button is on.

- ▶ The **READY** indicator*¹/  (Ready) indicator*² comes on.
- ▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

*1: Latin American and Philippine models

*2: Except Latin American and Philippine models

Emergency Power System On

If the power system cannot be turned on using the normal starting procedure, you may be able to turn it on using the emergency starting procedure below.

Do not use this procedure if it is not an emergency.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. Check that the transmission is in **[P]**, then set the power mode to ACCESSORY.
3. Firmly depress the brake pedal, then press and hold the **POWER** button for at least 15 seconds.

This should be considered a system malfunction even if you are able to turn the power system on using the above procedure.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Emergency Power System On

Refer to the following if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **[P]** position.

❗ **Shift Lever Does Not Move** P. 687

Emergency Power System Off

The **POWER** button may be used to turn the power system off due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the power system disables the power assist the power system provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the power system is stopped. To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into **P** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Except Latin American models

Then, press the **POWER** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

⚠ Emergency Power System Off

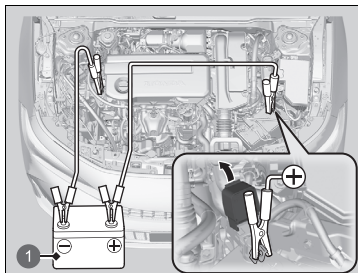
Do not press the **POWER** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the power system to be turned off.

If you press the **POWER** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the bonnet.



1 Booster Battery

1. Open the cover on the positive \oplus terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's 12-volt battery \oplus terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery \oplus terminal.
 - Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
 - When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery \ominus terminal.

Jump Starting Procedure

⚠ WARNING

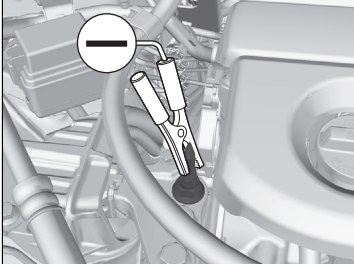
A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

NOTICE

If a 12-volt battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen 12-volt battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the stud bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its RPM slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

► Jump Starting Procedure

12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

Continued

■ What to Do After the Power System Starts

Once your vehicle's power system has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's stud bolt.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

► Jump Starting Procedure

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF***, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*, Road Departure Mitigation* and safety support* indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

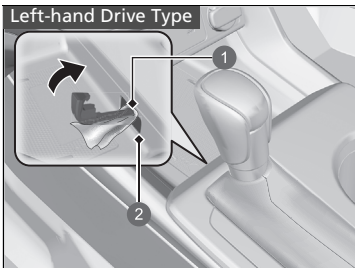
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

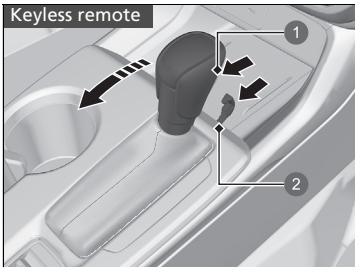
Releasing the Lock

Left-hand Drive Type



- ① Shift Lock Release Slot
- ② Cover

Keyless remote



- ① Release Button
- ② Shift Lock Release Slot

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
3. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote or card key*.

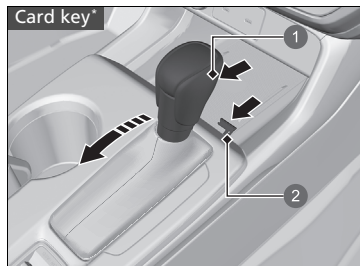
Left-hand Drive Type

4. Wrap a cloth around the tip of the built-in key. Put it into the shift lock release slot as shown in the image, and remove the cover.

All models

5. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
6. While pushing the key in, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into **N**.
 - The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

* Not available on all models



- ① Release Button
- ② Shift Lock Release Slot

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The **Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- The **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ The Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced. Message Appears on the Driver Information Interface

The **Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced.** message appears on the driver information interface when the power system temperature is high.

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
 - ▶ Set the parking brake, and put the transmission into **P**. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. Keep the power mode in ON, and wait until the message disappears.
 - ▶ If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ The Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool. Message Appears on the Driver Information Interface

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
 - ▶ **No steam or spray present:**
Keep the power system on and open the bonnet.
 - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:**
Turn off the power system and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.

» How to Handle Overheating

⚠ WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

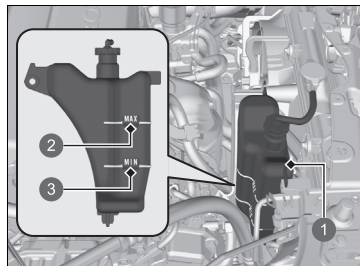
Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

If the **Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced.** appears on the driver information interface, your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.

■ Next thing to do



- ① Reserve Tank
- ② **MAX**
- ③ **MIN**

1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and turn the power system off once **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive.**

Allow engine to cool. message on the driver information interface disappears.

► If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately turn the power system off.

2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.

► If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

► If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, turn the power system on.

If the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.**

message does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

►► How to Handle Overheating

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears



Engine oil pressure low.
Stop engine.
Do not drive.


■ Reasons for the warning to appear

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ What to do as soon as the warning appears

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the power system and let it sit for approximately three minutes.
 - ▶ Add oil as necessary.
2.  **Oil Check** P. 609
3. Start the engine and check the **Engine oil pressure low** warning.
 - ▶ The warning disappears: Start driving again.
 - ▶ The warning does not disappear within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the power system and contact a dealer for repairs.

⌘ If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

▶▶ If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the power system. The power system uses the 12-volt battery to activate. You may not be able to turn the power system on again if you have turned it off with this indicator on.

If the Reduced stopping power Warning Appears

Latin American and Philippine models



Limited stopping power!
Avoid heavy deceleration
and high speed

■ Reasons for the warning to appear

Appears when braking ability is reduced.

■ What to do as soon as the warning appears

Slow down and drive carefully. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Except Latin American and Philippine models



Reduced stopping power.
Avoid heavy
deceleration and
high speed.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on when there is a problem with the emissions control systems or electric vehicle system*1.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

- Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

Argentina, Brazilian, Colombian, Singaporean, Thai and Vietnamese models

- Comes on when there is no petrol in the fuel tank, and goes off after vehicle is refueled, power mode is turned on, vehicle is driven, and the power system is turned off multiple times. If it does not go off, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

►► If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

*1 :Argentina, Brazilian, Colombian, Singaporean, Thai and Vietnamese models

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks




■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. Pull the  deceleration paddle selector several times to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

■ Reasons for the indicator to blink


- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator blinks

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

►► If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.

It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, pull the  deceleration paddle selector to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

If the brake system indicator (red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

►► If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

P. 696

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On



(Red)



(Amber)

■ **If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically**

▣ **Parking Brake** P. 570

- If the brake system indicator (red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
 - To prevent the vehicle from moving, put the transmission into **P**.
- If only the brake system indicator (red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

▣ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If you repeatedly operate the electric parking brake in a short period of time, the brake stops operating to prevent heating of the system and the indicator blinks.
It returns to its original state in approximately 1 minute.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system or Driver Attention Monitor System*1.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn on the power system again. If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
- If **Do not drive** displays on the driver information interface, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

*1 :Except Argentine, Brazilian, Colombian, Indonesian, Thai, and Vietnamese models

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator* Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on. If the compact spare tyre is installed, the indicator will either come on or it will first blink for about one minute, then stay on.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

🔧 **Deflation Warning System*** P. 496

If the compact spare tyre causes the indicator to come on, change the tyre to a regular tyre. The indicator goes off after calibrating the deflation warning system.

■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tyre causes the indicator to first blink, and then stay on, change the tyre to a regular tyre. The indicator goes off after calibrating the deflation warning system.

🔧 **Deflation Warning System*** P. 496

►► If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator* Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

Models without fuse number-stamped on the cover

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



- 1 Tab
- 2 Fuse Box
- 3 Front

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Battery	175 A
	–	–
	–	–
	Fuse Box Option	60 A
2	–	–
	Fuse Box Option 2	40 A
	–	–
	Fuse Box Main	60 A
	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
3	Rear Demister	40 A
	–	–
	Blower Motor	40 A
	–	–
	Electric Servo Brake	40 A
	ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
	RFC	40 A
4	–	–
	IG Main	30 A
	–	–
	Relay Module 2	30 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
	Option 6	30 A
	Front Wiper Motor	30 A
	EPS	70 A
5	Relay Module 1	30 A
	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
	Engine Water Pump	40 A
	Fuse Box Main 2	40 A
6	–	–
7	IG Main 2	30 A
8	–	–
9	–	–
10	Audio Sub*	(7.5 A)
11	USB Charger	10 A
12	–	–
13	–	–
14	Battery IR	10 A
15	–	–
16	–	–
17	Washer Motor	15 A
18	Horn	10 A
19	Back Up	15 A
20	Audio	15 A
21	IGP	15 A
22	Back Up FI-ECU	10 A
23	DBW	15 A
24	RFC Relay	7.5 A
25	PCU EWP	7.5 A

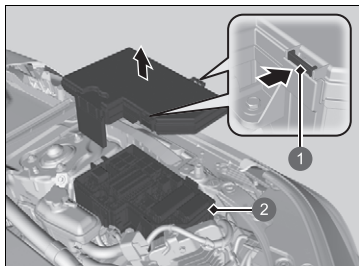
	Circuit Protected	Amps
26	–	–
27	Left Headlight	15 A
28	Injector	15 A
29	Stop lights	10 A
30	Right Headlight	15 A
31	IG Coil	15 A
32	EVTC	20 A
33	Hazard	15 A
34	–	–
35	–	–
36	IG1 Monitor 2	7.5 A
38	IGB	10 A
39	IGA	15 A
40	–	–
41	IGPS (LAF)	10 A
42	IG1 ESB	7.5 A
43	–	–
44	–	–

* Not available on all models

Models with fuse number-stamped on the cover

Located near the 12-volt battery. Push the tabs to open the box.














Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.































① Tab

② Fuse Box

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	 Battery	175 A
	–	40 A
	–	40 A
	 Fuse Box Option	60 A
2	–	40 A
	 Fuse Box Option 2	40 A
	–	30 A
	 Fuse Box Main	60 A
	–	40 A
	–	40 A
	–	40 A
3	 Rear Demister	40 A
	 –	(40 A)
	 Blower Motor	40 A
	 –	(40 A)
	 Electric Servo Brake	40 A
	 ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
	 RFC	40 A
4	–	30 A* ¹
	 –	(30 A)* ²
	 IG Main	30 A
	–	30 A
	Relay Module 2	30 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
	 Option 6	30 A
	 Front Wiper Motor	30 A
	 EPS	70 A
5	 Relay Module 1	30 A
	 ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
	 Engine Water Pump	40 A
	 Fuse Box Main 2	40 A
6	–	–
7	 IG Main 2	30 A
8	–	–
9	–	–
10	 Audio Sub*	(7.5 A)* ¹ (15 A)* ²
11	 USB Charger*	(10 A)
12	–	–
	–	–
13	 –	(10 A)* ²
14	 Battery IR	10 A
15	 –	(10 A)
16	–	–
17	 Washer Motor	15 A
18	Horn	10 A
19	Back Up	15 A
20	Audio	15 A
21	IGP	15 A
22	Back Up FI-ECU	10 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
23	 DBW	15 A
24	 RFC Relay	7.5 A
25	 PCU EWP	7.5 A
26	–	–* ¹
	 –	(7.5 A)* ²
27	 Left Headlight	15 A
28	 Injector	15 A
29	 Stop lights	10 A
30	 Right Headlight	15 A
31	 IG Coil	15 A
32	 EVTC	20 A
33	 Hazard	15 A
34	–	–* ¹
	 –	(7.5 A)* ²
35	–	–
36	 IG1 Monitor 2	7.5 A
38	 IGB	10 A
39	IGA	15 A
40	–	–
41	IGPS (LAF)	10 A
42	IG1 ESB	7.5 A
43	–	–
44	–	–

*1: Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

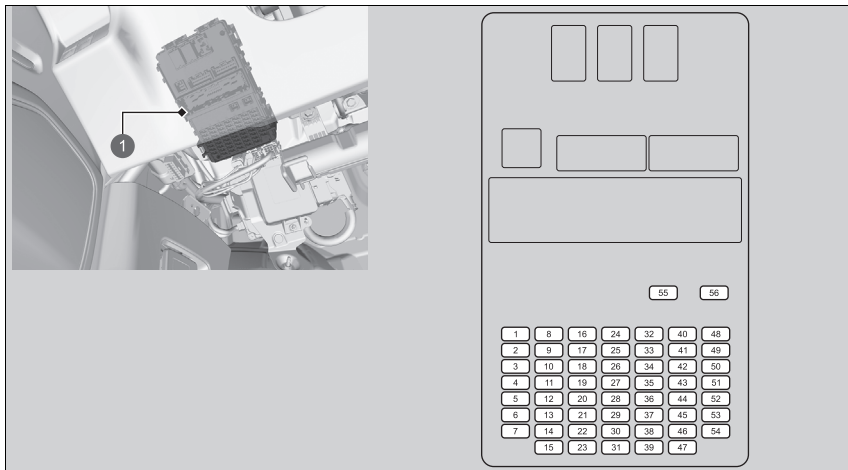
*2: Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

* Not available on all models

Models without fuse label

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



1 Fuse Box

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Driver's Power Window	20 A
2	Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
3	Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
4	Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A
5	Option	10 A
6	SRS	10 A
7	Boot Lid Lock Actuator	10 A
8	–	–
9	Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
10	Door Lock	20 A
11	Meter	10 A
12	Option 3 (Starter Cut)	10 A
13	–	–
14	Option 6 (VB SOL)	10 A
15	Driver's Door Unlock	10 A
16	Sunroof	20 A
17	–	–
18	–	–
19	–	–
20	–	–
21	–	–
22	SMART	10 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
23	Driver's Door Lock	10 A
24	–	–
25	IMG	10 A
26	SRS	10 A
27	IG1 ACG	20 A
28	Option 5	10 A
29	Fuel Pump	15 A
30	Left Side Rear Door Unlock	10 A
31	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
32	–	–
33	–	–
34	–	–
35	–	–
36	Option 3 (Sunshade)	20 A
37	IGA2	15 A
38	–	–
39	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
40	Driver's Power Seat Reclining	20 A
41	Driver's Power Seat Sliding	20 A
42	–	–
43	A/C	10 A
44	Daytime Running Lights	10 A
45	ACC	10 A
46	ACC Key Lock	10 A
47	Left Side Door Lock	10 A
48	–	–

	Circuit Protected	Amps
49	Passenger's Power Seat Reclining	20 A
50	–	–
51	–	–
52	–	–
53	Passenger's Power Seat Sliding	20 A
54	Option 1	10 A
55	Audio AMP	30 A
56	–	–

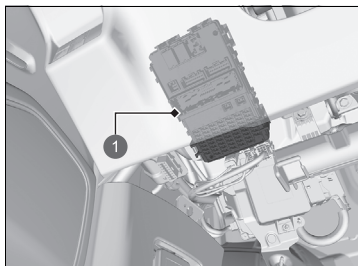
Models with fuse label

Located under the dashboard.

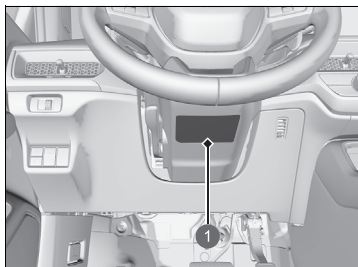
Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

Left-hand Drive Type

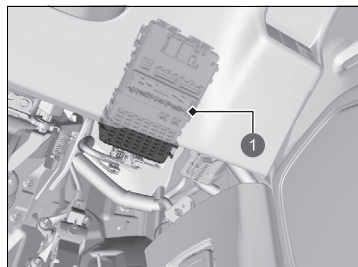


1 Fuse Box

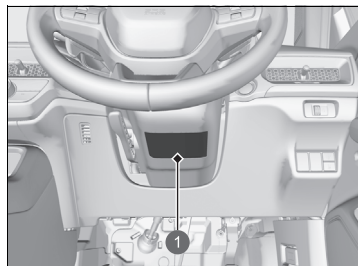


1 Fuse Label

Right-hand Drive Type





















1 Fuse Box

































1 Fuse Label

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

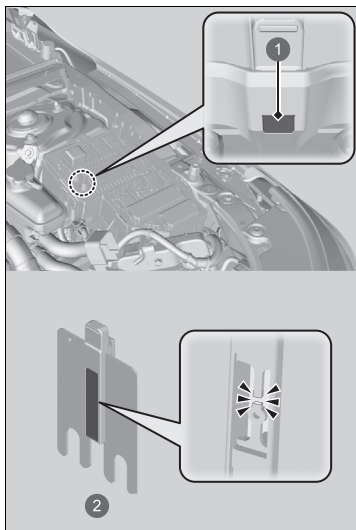
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	 Driver's Power Window	20 A
2	 Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
3	 Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
4	 Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A
5	 Option	10 A
6	 SRS	10 A
7	 Boot Lid Lock Actuator	10 A
8	–	–
9	 Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
10	 Door Lock	20 A
11	 Meter	10 A
12	 Option 3 (Starter Cut)	10 A
13	 –	(10 A)
14	 Option 6 (VB SOL)	10 A
15	 –	(10 A)
16	 Sunroof*	(20 A)
17	 –	(10 A)
18	–	–
19	–	–
20	 Rear Fog Light*	(10 A)
21	 –	(20 A)

* Not available on all models

	Circuit Protected	Amps
22	 SMART	10 A
23	 –	(10 A)
24	 –	(7.5 A)
25	 IMG	10 A
26	 SRS	10 A
27	 IG1 ACG	20 A
28	 Option 5	10 A
29	 Fuel Pump	15 A
30	 Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
31	 Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
32	–	–
33	–	–
34	–	–
35	–	–
36	 Option 3 (Sunshade)*	(20 A)
37	 IGA2	(15 A)
38	–	–
39	 Right Side Door Lock	10 A
40	 Driver's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
41	 Driver's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
42	 –	(10 A)
43	 A/C	10 A
44	 Daytime Running Lights	10 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
45	 ACC	10 A
46	 ACC Key Lock	10 A
47	 Left Side Door Lock	10 A
48	 –	20 A
49	 Passenger's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
50	 –	(10 A)
51	 –	(10 A)
52	 –	(20 A)
53	 Passenger's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
54	 Option 1	10 A
55	 Audio AMP*	(30 A)
56	 –	(30 A)

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



- ① Hole
- ② Main Fuse

1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the main fuse in the engine compartment fuse box.
 - Look at the fuse through the hole.
 - If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.

► Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Models with fuse label

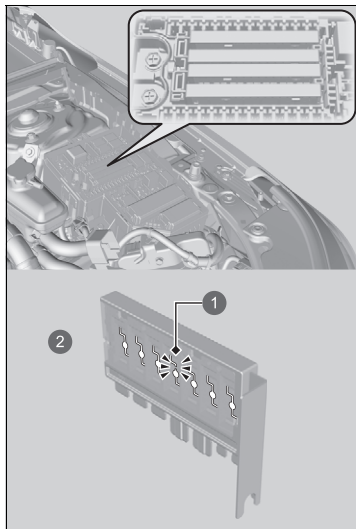
Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label. Replace with a fuse of the same specified amperage.

➤ **Fuse Locations** P. 699

Models without fuse label

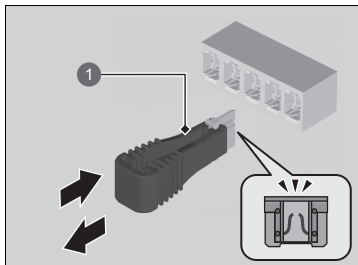
Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.

➤ **Fuse Locations** P. 699



- ❶ Blown Fuse
- ❷ Combined Fuse

4. Check the combined fuses in the engine compartment fuse box.
 - Look into the space between the fuses.
 - If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.



1 Fuse Puller

5. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.

Models with fuse label

- If there is a burned out fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

Models without fuse label

- If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.

► Inspecting and Changing Fuses

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flatbed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

» Emergency Towing

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flatbed equipment.

➤ **Parking Brake** P. 570

NOTICE

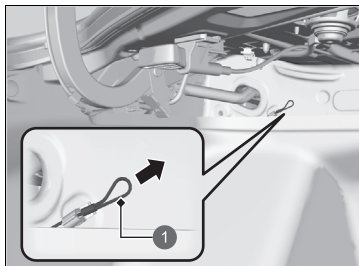
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

■ What to Do If Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

If you cannot unlock the fuel fill door, use the following procedure.



① Release Cord

1. Open the boot.
2. Pull the release cord toward you.
 - ▶ The release cord unlocks the fuel fill door when it is pulled.
3. Open the fuel fill door.

➤ **How to Refuel** P. 590

❖ If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

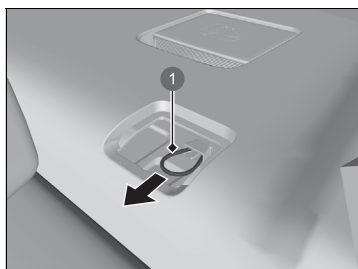
If You Cannot Open the Boot

What to Do If Unable to Open the Boot

If you cannot open the boot, use the following procedure.



- 1 Cover
- 2 Keyless Remote
- 3 Card Key*



- 1 Cord

1. Remove the cover with a key.
 - Wrap a key with a cloth to prevent scratching the cover.

2. Pull the release cord.
3. Replace the cover.

What to Do If Unable to Open the Boot

Following up:

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

* Not available on all models

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications	716
Identification Numbers	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number.....	718
Devices that Emit Radio Waves*	719
Open Source Licence	732

Vehicle Specifications

Model	Civic
Curb Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb ^{*1} 1,412 - 1,429 kg ^{*2} 1,432 kg ^{*3} 1,439 kg ^{*4} 1,440 kg ^{*5} 1,442 kg ^{*6} 1,445 kg ^{*7} 1,449 kg ^{*8}
Maximum Permissible Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb ^{*1, *7} See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb ^{*6} 1,880 kg ^{*2, *3, *5, *9}
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb ^{*6} See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb ^{*7} Front 1,055 kg ^{*1, *2, *3, *5, *9} Rear 835 kg ^{*1, *2, *3, *5, *9}

*1: Vietnamese models

*2: Thai models

*3: Philippine models

*4: Indonesian and Latin American except Brazilian models

*5: Singaporean models

*6: Malaysian models

*7: Jordanian, Lebanese, and Tunisian models

*8: Brazilian models

*9: Indonesian and Latin American models

Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC
Bore x Stroke	81 × 96.7 mm
Displacement	1,993 cm ³
Compression Ratio	13.9 : 1
Spark Plugs	NGK DILZKAR7G11Y

Fuel

Fuel Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unleaded petrol^{*1} Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher^{*2} Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher^{*3}
-----------	---

Fuel Tank Capacity 40 L

*1: Brazilian models

*2: Paraguayan and Thai models

*3: Except Brazilian, Paraguayan and Thai models

12-Volt Battery

Capacity	36AH(5)/45AH(20)
----------	------------------

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	1.5 L
---------------	-------

Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	LED
Headlights (High Beam)	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake Lights	LED
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16 W
Rear Fog Light*	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	21 W* LED*
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Map lights	LED
Ceiling Light	LED
Ambient Lights*	LED
Foot Lights*	LED
Vanity Mirror Lights	2 W
Centre Console Light*	LED
Glove Box Light*	LED
Boot Light	5 W

Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	445 - 495 g ^{*1} 435 - 485 g ^{*2}

*1: Right-hand drive models

*2: Left-hand drive models

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4	
-----------	---------------------------------	--

■ Transmission Fluid

Specified	HEVF-Type 1	
Capacity	Change	2.2 L

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	Singaporean models	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 • ACEA C5 0W-20 	
	Except Singaporean models	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 • API service SN or higher grade 0W-20 	
Capacity	Change	3.7 L
	Change including filter	4.0 L

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2	
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water	
Capacity	5.54 L	
	(change including the remaining 0.62 L in the reserve tank)	

■ Tyre

Regular	Size	215/50R17 91V* ¹ 235/40ZR18 95Y* ²
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Compact Spare*	Size	T125/80D16 97M* ¹ T125/85D16 99M* ²
	Pressure	420 kPa (4.2 bar, 60 psi)
Spare*	Size	215/50R17 91V
	(Full-size tyre) Pressure	Same as the regular tyre. See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	17X7J* ¹
	Regular	18X8J* ²
	Compact Spare*	16X4T
	Spare* (Full-size tyre)	17X7J

*1: Models with 17 inch wheel

*2: Models with 18 inch wheel

For the tyre size and pressure information, see the label on driver's doorjamb.

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric parking brake system

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	4,681 mm ^{*1, *2, *3, *4, *7}	
	4,686 mm ^{*5}	
	4,687 mm ^{*6}	
Width	1,802 mm	
Height	1,415 mm ^{*1, *2, *3, *4, *7}	
	1,425 mm ^{*5}	
	1,432 mm ^{*6}	
Wheelbase	2,733 mm ^{*1}	
	2,734 mm ^{*2, *7}	
	2,735 mm ^{*3, *4, *8}	
	2,736 mm ^{*5}	
	2,737 mm ^{*9}	
Track	Front	1,537 mm ^{*1, *3, *7, *10}
		1,547 mm ^{*4, *5, *11}
		1,543 mm ^{*8}
		1,546 mm ^{*9}
	Rear	1,577 mm ^{*1}
		1,565 mm ^{*3}
		1,575 mm ^{*4}
		1,584 mm ^{*5}
		1,576 mm ^{*7, *10}
		1,569 mm ^{*8}
		1,583 mm ^{*9}
1,586 mm ^{*11}		

*1: Malaysian models

*2: Thai models

*3: Vietnamese models

*4: Indonesian and Singaporean models

*5: Jordanian, Lebanese, and Tunisian models

*6: Latin American models

*7: Philippine models

*8: Brazilian models

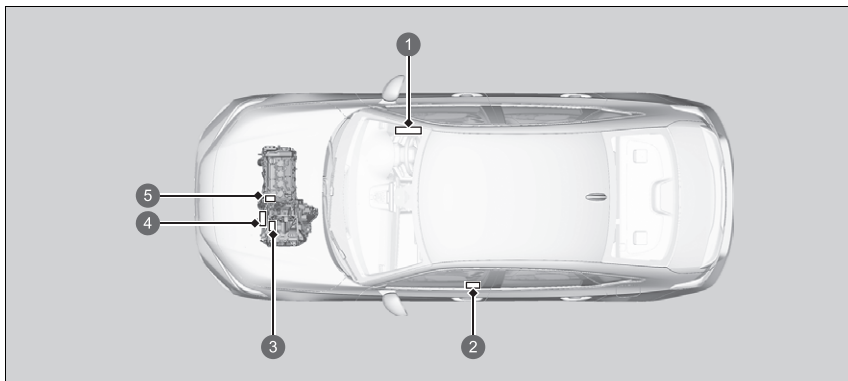
*9: Latin American except Brazilian models

*10: Thai models with 18 inch wheel

*11: Thai models with 17 inch wheel

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, motor number and transmission number are shown as follows.

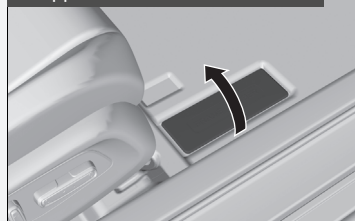


- ① Vehicle Identification Number
- ② Certification Label*/Vehicle Identification Number*/Certification Plate*/Engine Number*
- ③ Transmission Number
- ④ Motor Number
- ⑤ Engine Number

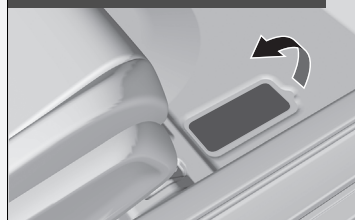
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.

Except African, Middle Eastern, Philippine and Vietnamese models





African, Middle Eastern, Philippine and Vietnamese models



The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Brazilian models

Keyless Access System	
BCM	FOB
<p>Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados. Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL – www.anatel.gov.br</p>  <p>09326-20-02149</p>	<p>Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados. Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL – www.anatel.gov.br</p>  <p>09315-20-02149</p>
<p>Product name: 41580430 www.anatel.gov.br</p> <p>Frequency: 125 KHZ Modulation: ASK Maximum transmitted output: 10mW Reference materials related to Brazilian agencies and laws: https://www.gov.br/anatel/pt-br/regulado</p> <p>ATO 1120/2018; ATO 3481/2019; ATO 950/2018 Standard of measurement to be adopted and relevant metric units in Brazil: Metric system Guidance for user inquiries with the Anatel homepage displayed: Circular n 38/2004/RFCCEC/RFCE-ANATEL (May 2004)</p>	<p>Product name: TP_4 www.anatel.gov.br</p> <p>Frequency: 433.92MHZ Modulation: FSK Maximum transmitted output: 1mW Reference materials related to Brazilian agencies and laws: https://www.gov.br/anatel/pt-br/regulado</p> <p>ATO 1120/2018; ATO 3481/2019; ATO 950/2018 Standard of measurement to be adopted and relevant metric units in Brazil: Metric system Guidance for user inquiries with the Anatel homepage displayed: Circular n 38/2004/RFCCEC/RFCE-ANATEL (May 2004)</p>

* Not available on all models

Continued

Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

Brazilian models

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Este produto está homologado pela Anatel de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados para avaliação da conformidade de produtos para telecomunicações e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicáveis, incluindo os limites da medida da exposição humana referente a campos elétricos, magnéticos e eletromagnéticos de radiofrequência

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL – www.anatel.gov.br

Brazilian models

Hands-Free Telephone System

Product Name: INFOTAIMENT CONTROL BOX
<http://www.anatel.gov.br>

Frequency:

WLAN

2.4GHz (2412MHz 2472MHz)

5GHz(5180MHz 5825MHz)

Bluetooth

2402-2480MHz

Modulation:

WLAN

DSSS,BPSK,QPSK,CCK,OFDM,16QAM,64QAM,256QAM

Bluetooth

TDD, GFSK BbT = 0.5, $\pi/4$ DQPSK,8DPSK

Transmitted output:

WLAN

11b: min 8dBm / typ 12dBm / max 15dBm

11g/n:20(2.4GHz) min 6dBm / typ 10dBm / max 13dBm

11n:20(5GHz)/n 40(5GHz)/a : min 4dBm / typ 8dBm / max 11dBm

11ac:20/ac 40/ac 80/ac : min 0dBm / typ 4dBm / max 7dBm

Bluetooth

Min:-6dBm

Typ:0dBm

Max:4dBm

Designação de Emissões	Faixa de Frequências Tx (MHz)	Tecnologias	Tipo de Modulação	Potência Máxima de Saída (W)
TEL 1M31G1D NATEL	AN 2.400,0 a 2.483,5 NATEL	SALTO EM FREQUÊNCIA	TEL 8DPSK ANA	TEL ANA 0,0011 NATEL AN

Model Name: AH00ICB 2

Reference materials related to Brazilian agencies and laws: <https://informacoes.anatel.gov.br/legislacao/resolucoes/2017/936-resolucao-680>

Standard of measurement to be adopted and relevant metric units in Brazil:

The Brazilian metrics system is based on the SI (international system of units).

Guidance for user inquiries with the Anatel homepage displayed:

<https://informacoes.anatel.gov.br/legislacao/atos-de-certificacao-de-produtos/2020/1447-ato-4084>

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Brazilian models

Telematics Control Unit

Product Name: TSU(Telematis Service Unit)
Frequency/Modulation/Maximum transmitted output:

cpqd **CERTIFICADO DE CONFORMIDADE**
Certificate of Conformity
CPQD 7730

Faixa de Frequências Tx (MHz)	Potência Máx. Saida (W)	Designação de Emissões	Tecnologia	Tipo de Modulação	Taxa Máx. de Tx (Mbps)	SAR (W/kg)
1820 a 1880	0,2387	SM0007W	WCDMA 2000	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM	-	-
1820 a 1880	0,2387	SM0007W	HSDPA 2000	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM	-	-
1820 a 1880	0,1954	SM0007W	HSPA 2000	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM	-	-
703 a 748	0,0899	SM0007W, SM0007W, SM0007W, SM0007W	LTE 700 FDD	QPSK, 16-QAM	-	-
824 a 849	0,2094	SM0007W, SM0007W, SM0007W, SM0007W	LTE 850 FDD	QPSK, 16-QAM	-	-
889,8 a 902,8 a 907,8 a 918,8	0,2094	SM0007W, SM0007W, SM0007W, SM0007W	LTE 900 FDD	QPSK, 16-QAM	-	-
1710 a 1785	0,0894	SM0007W, SM0007W, SM0007W, SM0007W	LTE 1800 FDD	QPSK, 16-QAM	-	-
1920 a 1980	0,0898	SM0007W, SM0007W, SM0007W, SM0007W	LTE 2000 FDD	QPSK, 16-QAM	-	-
2300 a 2400	0,2844	SM0007W, SM0007W, SM0007W, SM0007W	LTE 2300 TDD	QPSK, 16-QAM	-	-
2500 a 2570	0,1968	SM0007W, SM0007W, SM0007W, SM0007W	LTE 2500 FDD	QPSK, 16-QAM	-	-

(-) Ensaio de SAR não aplicável: o equipamento não é terminal portátil.

Possui módulo de RF interno com tecnologia Wi-Fi 802.11 (a, b, g, n, ac), com as seguintes características:

Faixa de Frequências (MHz)	Potência Máxima de Saida (W)	Designação de Emissões	Tecnologias	Tipo de Modulação	Taxa Máx. de Tx (Mbps)	SAR (W/kg)
2.400 - 2.483,5	0,0779	-	DSSS - 802.11b	DBPSK, DQPSK, CCK	11 Mbps	-
	0,0899	-	OFDM - 802.11g	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM	54 Mbps	-
	0,0941	-	OFDM - 802.11n (20MHz)	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM	72,2 Mbps	-
	0,0920	-	OFDM - 802.11n (40MHz)	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM	150 Mbps	-
	0,0941	-	OFDM - 802.11ac (20MHz)	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, 256QAM, 1024QAM	343 Mbps	-
	0,0920	-	OFDM - 802.11ac (40MHz)	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, 256QAM, 1024QAM	343 Mbps	-

(-) Ensaio de SAR não aplicável: o equipamento não é terminal portátil.

FUNDAÇÃO CPQD - CENTRO DE PESQUISA E DESENVOLVIMENTO EM TELECOMUNICAÇÕES
Rua Dr. Ricardo Benedito Mattos, 5000 - Parque II do Pólo de Alta Tecnologia - CEP 13089-902 - Campinas - SP
O CPQD foi designado pelo Anatel para exercer as funções de Organismo Certificador por meio do Ato nº 17.394 (5/7/06).
Para fins de uso e comercialização do produto no Brasil, esse certificado deverá ser homologado pelo Anatel.

4/7

cpqd **CERTIFICADO DE CONFORMIDADE**
Certificate of Conformity
CPQD 7730

Faixa de Frequências (MHz)	Potência Máxima de Saida (W)	Designação de Emissões	Tecnologias	Tipo de Modulação	Taxa Máx. de Tx (Mbps)	SAR (W/kg)
5,725 - 5,850	0,0309	-	OFDM - 802.11a	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM	54 Mbps	-
	0,0309	-	OFDM - 802.11n (20MHz)	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM	72,2 Mbps	-
	0,0201	-	OFDM - 802.11n (40MHz)	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM	150 Mbps	-
	0,0309	-	OFDM - 802.11ac (20MHz)	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, 256QAM	343 Mbps	-
	0,0201	-	OFDM - 802.11ac (40MHz)	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, 256QAM	343 Mbps	-
	0,0302	-	OFDM - 802.11ac (80MHz)	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, 256QAM	433,3 Mbps	-

(-) Ensaio de SAR não aplicável: o equipamento não é terminal portátil.

O produto possui sistema de acesso sem fio em banda larga para redes locais, integrado com as seguintes características:

Faixa de Frequências (MHz)	Potência Máxima de Saida (W)	Vetor Médio de Potência ERP (W)	Designação de Emissões	Tecnologias	Tipo de Modulação	Taxa Máxima de Tx (Mbps)	SAR (W/kg)
5,150 a 5,350	(1) (*) 0,0238	-	-	OFDM - 802.11a	BPSK - QPSK, 16QAM - 64QAM	54 Mbps	-
	(1) (*) 0,0230	-	-	OFDM - 802.11n (20MHz)	BPSK - QPSK, 16QAM - 64QAM	72,2 Mbps	-
	(1) (*) 0,0229	-	-	OFDM - 802.11n (40MHz)	BPSK - QPSK, 16QAM - 64QAM	150 Mbps	-
	(1) (*) 0,0230	-	-	OFDM - 802.11ac (20MHz)	BPSK - QPSK, 16QAM - 64QAM, 256QAM	343 Mbps	-
	(1) (*) 0,0229	-	-	OFDM - 802.11ac (40MHz)	BPSK - QPSK, 16QAM - 64QAM, 256QAM	343 Mbps	-
	(1) (*) 0,0229	-	-	OFDM - 802.11ac (80MHz)	BPSK - QPSK, 16QAM - 64QAM, 256QAM	433,3 Mbps	-

FUNDAÇÃO CPQD - CENTRO DE PESQUISA E DESENVOLVIMENTO EM TELECOMUNICAÇÕES
Rua Dr. Ricardo Benedito Mattos, 5000 - Parque II do Pólo de Alta Tecnologia - CEP 13089-902 - Campinas - SP
O CPQD foi designado pelo Anatel para exercer as funções de Organismo Certificador por meio do Ato nº 17.394 (5/7/06).
Para fins de uso e comercialização do produto no Brasil, esse certificado deverá ser homologado pelo Anatel.

5/7

Telematics Control Unit



CERTIFICADO DE CONFORMIDADE Certificate of Conformity CPQD 7730

Faixa de Frequências (MHz)	Potência Máxima de Saída (W)	Valor Médio da Potência ERP (W)	Designação das Emissões	Tecnologia	Tipo de Modulação	Taxa Máxima de Tx (Mbps)	SAR (W/kg)
5.470 a 5.725	(***) 0,084	0,447	-	OFDM-802.22a	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM	84 Mbps	-
	(***) 0,078	0,454	-	OFDM-802.22b (20MHz)	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM	70.2 Mbps	-
	(***) 0,040	0,558	-	OFDM-802.22c (40MHz)	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM	180 Mbps	-
	(***) 0,078	0,454	-	OFDM-802.22c (20MHz)	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, 256QAM	87.8 Mbps	-
	(***) 0,046	0,658	-	OFDM-802.22c (40MHz)	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, 256QAM	200 Mbps	-
	(***) 0,060	0,555	-	OFDM-802.22a (40MHz)	BPSK, QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, 256QAM	72.3 Mbps	-

(-) Ensaio de SAR não aplicável: o equipamento não tem antena portátil.

*A faixa de 5150-5350MHz é destinada para ambiente indoors. Considerando que o produto será instalado em ambientes veiculares, esta faixa do produto foi configurada em modo slave;

**Os valores de potência da faixa 5150-5350MHz indicados em tabela se tratam de valores de potência média conduzida;

***Os valores de potência média ERP da faixa 5470-5725MHz indicados na tabela acima, consideram os resultados de ensaios de potência média conduzida, somados ao ganho nominal da antena do produto para a faixa em questão; que no caso se trata de 2,49dBi.

O produto suporta protocolo IPv6.

Alimentação: Bateria veicular - 14.4V / 10A.

FUNDAÇÃO CPQD - CENTRO DE PESQUISA E DESENVOLVIMENTO EM TELECOMUNICAÇÕES

Rua 13, Avenida Imbuena, nº 200 - Funchal 610-190, de Alta Tecnologia - CEP 01048-902 - Campinas - SP

O CPQD foi designado pela Anatel para exercer as funções de Organismo Certificador por meio do Ato nº 11.264 (12/10). Para fins de uso e comercialização do produto no Brasil, esse certificado deverá ser homologado pela Anatel.

Model Name: TLHOBINN0D5

<http://www.anatel.gov.br>

Reference materials related to Brazilian agencies and laws:

Documentos normativos/ Technical Standards:

Resolução Anatel nº 757/2022 - Aprova o Regulamento de Condições de uso de Radiofrequências;

Ato nº 315/2020 - Requisitos Técnicos para Avaliação da Conformidade de Estação Terminal de Acesso;

3GPP TS 51.010-1 V6.5.0 (2005-11) - 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group GSM/EDGE Radio Access Network Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Mobile Station (MS) conformance specification; Part 1: Conformance specification (Release 6);

ETSI TS 134 121-1 V9.1.0 (2010-07) - Universal Mobile Telecommunications System (UMTS); User Equipment (UE) conformance specification; Radio transmission and reception (FDD); Part 1: Conformance specification (3GPP TS 34.121-1 version 9.1.0 Release 9);

ETSI TS 134 121-1 V9.4.0 (2011-03) - Universal Mobile Telecommunications System (UMTS); User Equipment (UE) conformance specification; Radio transmission and reception (FDD); Part 1: Conformance specification (3GPP TS 34.121-1 version 9.1.0 Release 9);

3GPP TS 36.521-1 V9.5.0 (2011-06) - 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network; Evolved Universal Terrestrial Radio Access (E-UTRA); User Equipment (UE) conformance specification; Radio transmission and reception Part 1: Conformance Testing; (Release 9);

3GPP TS 36.523-1 - Evolved Universal Terrestrial Radio Access (E-UTRA) and Evolved Packet Core (EPC); User Equipment (UE) conformance specification; Part 1: Protocol conformance specification;

ETSI TS 102 514 V2.11 (2008-02) - Methods for Testing and Specification (MTS); Internet Protocol Testing (IPT); IPv6 Core Protocol; Requirements Catalogue;

RFC 2480 - Internet Protocol, Version 6 (IPv6) Specification; IPv6 READY;

Resolução nº 680/2017 - Regulamento sobre equipamentos de radiocomunicação restrita;

Ato nº 14448/2017 - Requisito técnico e procedimento de ensaio para Equipamentos de Radiocomunicação de Radiação Restrita;

Ato nº 1120/2018 - Requisitos Técnicos de Compatibilidade Eletromagnética para a Avaliação da Conformidade de Produtos para Telecomunicações.

Telematics Control Unit

Standard of measurement to be adopted and relevant metric units in Brazil:

5. Resultado dos Ensaios

5.1 Emissão Radiada (Ato nº 1120 – Item 6.1.1.2)

Definição do Ensaio

Verificar se os níveis de radiação eletromagnética gerada pelo ESE, na faixa de 30 MHz a 1000 MHz, não ultrapassam os limites estabelecidos na Tabela 2 conforme a Classe do mesmo. O ensaio é realizado em uma câmara anecoica blindada, onde o ESE é disposto sobre uma mesa não condutiva de 80 cm de altura (para equipamentos de mesa) ou diretamente no chão isolado por uma superfície não-condutiva (para equipamentos de piso), localizado sobre o plano terra horizontal (Mesa giratória), a uma distância de 3 metros da antena de medição, conforme configuração de teste mostrada na Figura 1. O ESE é exercitado conforme sua finalidade, alimentado em tensão nominal e em caso de utilização de algum equipamento periférico, o mesmo é disposto junto ao ESE.

Para a realização das medidas, inicialmente é realizada uma varredura utilizando detector de pico, onde a antena realiza as medidas em 1 m, 2,5 m e 4 m de altura e o ESE é rotacionado de 0° a 360° em cada uma destas posições. Esta varredura é feita nas polarizações horizontal e vertical. Após esta varredura, as frequências onde ocorreram os maiores níveis de emissão são selecionadas para a varredura fina, onde em cada frequência selecionada é investigada a posição (0° a 360°) e a altura (1 a 4 metros) de maior emissão, na qual é realizada a medição de quase-pico.

Faixa de Frequência [MHz]	Limites [dBµV] - QUASE-PICO			
	Distância 10 m		Distância 3 m (*)	
	Classe A	Classe B	Classe A	Classe B
30 até 230	40	30	50,46	40,46
230 até 1000	47	37	57,46	47,46

(*) Limite a 1 m = Limite a 10 m + 20*log(10/1)

Tabela 2 – Limites para ensaio de Emissão Radiada

Configuração do Ensaio

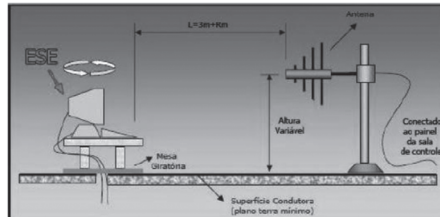


Figura 1 – Configuração para o ensaio de Emissão Radiada

Guidance for user inquiries with the Anatel homepage displayed: <https://informacoes.anatel.gov.br/legislacao/atos-de-certificacao-de-produtos/2020/1447-ato-4084>

623. **Product manual** with useful information for the buyer regarding aspects of safety and suitability of the product for the purposes for which it is intended, as well as:

I - the legal references of bodies and Brazilian legislation;

II - the measurement standards and corresponding units of the metric system adopted in Brazil; and

III - the guidelines regarding the query to be made by the user, indicating the address of the Anatel page on the Internet, for products intended for the end user and consumer of telecommunications services.

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Para mais informações, consulte o site da Anatel: <https://www.gov.br/anatel/pt-br>

Brazilian models

USB Charger/USB Port



Product Name: UCU
Model Name: MX293AC

<http://www.anatel.gov.br>

Reference materials related to Brazilian agencies and laws:

target

Act No.5159

https://sei.anatel.gov.br/sei/modulos/pesquisa/md_pesq_documento_consulta_externa.php?eEP-wqk1skrd8hSlk5Z3rN4EVg9uLJqrLYJw_9INcO4ZwgepWuG_iJ4H8RLa3CbFVZVJVD-x5Z5JZA-EkyRa4IKjMi0eQXIL1RVxdRgZFyaKAlAmbwPAf-lghGGxmflE

Standard of measurement to be adopted and relevant metric units in Brazil: The Brazilian metrics system is based on the SI (international system of units).

Guidance for user inquiries with the Anatel homepage displayed: www.anatel.gov.br

Brazilian models

Wireless Charger

Product name: Wireless Power Charger

Frequency: 0.111Mhz

Modulation: CW

Power: 0.6394μV/m@300m

Model name: WC500HOC121

<http://www.anatel.gov.br>

Reference materials related to Brazilian agencies and laws:

<http://www.gov.br/anatel/pt-br/regulado>

ATO 1120/2018; ATO 5159/2022

Standard of measurement to be adopted and relevant metric units in Brazil: Metric system

Guidance for user inquiries with the Anatel homepage displayed: Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL –

www.anatel.gov.br

Indonesian models

Telematics Control Unit



Within 30 days after the completion of Indonesian Radio Law approval, the photo of the warning mark in the Manual must be submitted to Indonesian institution.




The photo of the warning mark in the manual must be provided by HM.

If HM does not submit photos within 30 days, LGE will receive 3 warnings at 2 week intervals, after which the certificate will be revoked. And for 2 years, LGE cannot apply for SDPPI certification.


Paraguayan models

Keyless Access System		
BCM	FOB	Hands-Free Telephone System
<p>“Este vehículo posee el siguiente componente de radiofrecuencias, homologado por la CONATEL – Paraguay: Controlador de cuerpo integrado, Marca Continental, modelo 41580430 Fabricado por Continental Automotive GmbH</p>  <p>CONATEL NR: 2020-08-I-0566</p> <p>Importer Name: Vicar S.A. Postal address: Avda. Eusebio Ayala Km 4,5 - Asuncion - Paraguay</p>	<p>“Este vehículo posee el siguiente componente de radiofrecuencias, homologado por la CONATEL – Paraguay: Controlador de cuerpo integrado, Marca Continental, modelo TP_4 Fabricado por Continental Automotive GmbH</p>  <p>CONATEL NR: 2020-07-I-0465</p> <p>Importer Name: Vicar S.A. Postal address: Avda. Eusebio Ayala Km 4,5 - Asuncion - Paraguay</p>	<p>Model Name: AH2001 Manufacturer Name: Panasonic Automotive Systems Co., Ltd. CONATEL ID: 2022-03-I-00135 Importer Name: Vicar S.A. Postal address: Avda. Eusebio Ayala Km 4,5 - Asuncion - Paraguay</p>

Argentine models

Keyless Access System		Hands-Free Telephone System
BCM	FOB	
Integrated Body Controller Continental 41580430  H-25331	Radio Frequency Transmitter (keyfob) Continental TP_4  H-25006	 C-24577







Argentine models

Wireless Charger
CONTIENE  H-28167

Singaporean models

Keyless Access System		Card Key	Hands-Free Telephone System
BCM	FOB		
Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440	Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440	Complies with IMDA Standards DA107974	Complies with IMDA Standards DA103787

Thai models

BCM	Keyless Access System FOB	Card Key*
 <p>เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้ ได้รับยกเว้น ไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาตให้มี ใช้ซึ่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม หรือตั้งสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมตามประกาศ กสทช. เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว้นไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาตวิทยุคมนาคมตามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุคมนาคม พ.ศ. 2498</p>  <p>nabp. โทรคมนาคม กำกับดูแลเพื่อประชาชน Call Center 1200 (InswS)</p>	 <p>เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้ ได้รับยกเว้น ไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาตให้มี ใช้ซึ่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม หรือตั้งสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมตามประกาศ กสทช. เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว้นไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาตวิทยุคมนาคมตามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุคมนาคม พ.ศ. 2498</p>  <p>nabp. โทรคมนาคม กำกับดูแลเพื่อประชาชน Call Center 1200 (InswS)</p>	 <p>เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้ ได้รับยกเว้น ไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาตให้มี ใช้ซึ่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม หรือตั้งสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมตามประกาศ กสทช. เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว้นไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาตวิทยุคมนาคม ตามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุคมนาคม พ.ศ. 2498</p>  <p>nabp. โทรคมนาคม กำกับดูแลเพื่อประชาชน Call Center 1200 (InswS)</p>

This telecommunication equipment conforms to Technical Standard or Technical Requirement of National Broadcasting and Telecommunications Commission (NBTC).

This radiocommunication equipment has the electromagnetic field strength in compliance with the Safety Standard for the Use of Radio communication Equipment on Human Health announced by the National Telecommunications Commission.

Thai models

Telematics Control Unit

TLHOBINN0D4






TLHOBINN0D5




เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานหรือข้อกำหนดทางเทคนิคของ กสทช.
 เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพ
 ของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด



Vietnamese models

Keyless Access System			Telematics Control Unit		
BCM		FOB			
<div><div>HONDAVN A00092011</div><div> ICT</div></div>		<div><div>HONDAVN A00092011</div><div> ICT</div></div>	<div><div>HONDAVN A00092011</div><div> ICT</div></div>		

Vietnamese models

Wireless Charger	
<div><div>HONDA TRADING VIETNAM</div><div> ICT</div></div>	

■ Meter Open Source Licence

The software embedded in this product includes open source software. Refer to the following website for details regarding the open source software.

https://www.nippon-seiki.co.jp/global/business_ic_meter/

■ TCU Open Source Licence*

Vietnamese models

Free/Open Source Software Information

This product contains Free/Open Source Software(FOSS).

The licence information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.

<https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/>

Brazilian, Indonesian, Malaysian, Philippine, and Thai models

To obtain the source code under GPL, LGPL, MPL, and other open source licenses that have the obligations to disclose source code, that is contained in this product, and to access all referred license terms, copyright notices and other relevant documents please visit <https://opensource.lge.com>. LG Electronics will also provide open source code to you on CD-ROM for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution (such as the cost of media, shipping, and handling) upon email request to opensource@lge.com. This offer is valid to anyone in receipt of this information for a period of three years after our last shipment of this product.

Numbers

12-Volt Battery

12-Volt Battery Charging System

Indicator	110, 692
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead	684
Maintenance (Checking the Battery)	634
Maintenance (Replacing)	636

12-Volt Battery Charging System

Indicator	110, 692
-----------------	----------

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)	577
------------------------------------	-----

Accessories and Modifications	650
-------------------------------------	-----

Accessory Power Sockets	233
-------------------------------	-----

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	476
--	-----

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow	120, 530
--	----------

Adding

Coolant	611
Engine Oil	610
Washer	617

Additives, Engine Oil	607
-----------------------------	-----

Adjusting

Armrest	225
Clock	168
Front Seats	217
Head Restraints	223
Mirrors	213
Sound	265
Steering Wheel	212

Agile Handling Assist	495
-----------------------------	-----

Air Conditioning System

(Climate Control System)	238
Changing the Mode	240
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	241
Dust and Pollen Filter	642
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode	240
Sensor	243
Synchronization Mode	242
Using Automatic Climate Control	238

Air Pressure	628, 717
--------------------	----------

Airbags

After a Collision	62
Airbag Care	71
Event Data Recorder	1
Front Airbags (SRS)	62
Indicator	70, 113
Sensors	60
Side Airbags	65
Side Curtain Airbags	68

AM/FM Radio	274, 365
-------------------	----------

Ambient Meter	126
---------------------	-----

Android Auto™	294, 384
---------------------	----------

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	577
------------------------------------	-----

Indicator	113
-----------------	-----

Apple CarPlay	288, 379
---------------------	----------

Armrest	225
---------------	-----

Audio Remote Controls	252, 346
-----------------------------	----------

Audio System	246
--------------------	-----

Adjusting the Sound	265, 360
Android Auto™	294, 384
App Shortcut Function	256
Apple CarPlay	379
Audio System Function	250
Audio/Information Screen	350
Basic Operation	250, 344
Clock Setup	262, 357
Customized Features	401
Display Setup	266, 361
Error Messages	438
General Information	440
Google built-in	392
How to Update	267
How to Update Wirelessly	269, 363
How to Update with a USB Device	270
iPod	277, 370
Limitations for Manual Operation	324
MP3/WMA/AAC	280
On-Board Owner's Manual	349
Power Flow	300, 389
Profile Settings	400
Reactivating	248
Security Code	248
Selecting an Audio Source	261, 356
Start Up	249, 342
Status Area	261, 355
System Updates	267, 362
System Updates Settings	268, 364
Theft Protection	248

USB Flash Drives	280, 372, 441
USB Port(s).....	247
User Information.....	396
Wallpaper Setup	263, 358
Wi-Fi Connection.....	287, 378
Audio/Information Screen	255, 350
Auto High-Beam	204
Indicator.....	116
Automatic Brake Hold	574
Indicator.....	110, 574
Automatic Brake Hold System	
Indicator.....	110, 574
Automatic Folding Door Mirror	
Function.....	215
Automatic Intermittent Wipers	208
Average Fuel Economy	134, 153
Average Speed	136, 156

B

Battery	14, 634
12-Volt	634, 716
12-Volt Battery Charging System	
Indicator	110, 692
High Voltage	14, 500
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead	684
Maintenance	
(Checking the 12-Volt Battery).....	634
Maintenance (Replacing).....	636, 639
Belts (Seat)	48
Beverage Holders	230

Bluetooth® Audio	284, 375
Booster Seats (For Children)	101
Boot	186
Lid.....	186
Light Bulb.....	625, 716
Unable to Open.....	713
Brake System	570
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	577
Automatic Brake Hold	574
Brake Assist System	578
Fluid.....	616
Foot Brake.....	573
Indicator (Amber)	110, 696
Indicator (Red).....	108, 109, 695, 696
Parking Brake.....	570
Brightness Control	
(Instrument Panel).....	210, 211
Bulb Replacement	618
Boot Light	625
Brake Light, Taillight, and Rear Turn Signal	
Lights	619
Front Turn Signal Lights.....	618
Headlights.....	618
High-Mount Brake Light.....	623
Position/Daytime Running Lights.....	618
Rear License Plate Light	623
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator	
Lights	618
Taillight, Rear Fog Light, and Back-Up	
Light.....	622
Vanity Mirror Light	624

Bulb Specifications	716
----------------------------------	-----

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas	103
Carrying Luggage	457, 459
Certification Label	718
Changing Bulbs	618
Child Restraint System	75
Booster Seats	101
Child Restraint System for Infants.....	78
Child Restraint System for Small	
Children.....	80
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/	
Shoulder Seat Belt.....	96
Larger Children	100
Rear-facing Child Restraint System	78
Selecting a Child Restraint System.....	81
Using a Tether	98
Child Safety	75
Childproof Door Locks	184
Childproof Door Locks	184
Cleaning the Exterior	647
Cleaning the Interior	644

Climate Control System	238
Changing the Mode.....	238
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	241
Dust and Pollen Filter	642
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode.....	240
Sensors.....	243
Synchronization Mode	242
Using Automatic Climate Control.....	238
Clock	168
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System)	509
Coat Hook	231
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	509
Compact Spare Tyre	656
Console Compartment	229
Controls	167
Coolant (Engine)	
Adding the Coolant	611
Overheating	689
Cooling System	611, 614
Adding to the Reserve Tank	611
Cruise Control	487
Indicator	120
Customize Display	143, 145, 163
Customized Features	303, 312, 401

D

Daytime Running Lights	203
Dead Battery	684
Deceleration Paddle Selector	473
Defaulting All the Settings	320, 420
Deflation Warning System	496
Indicator	115, 698
Initialisation	497
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	241
Demister	209
Devices that Emit Radio Waves	719
Dimming	
Headlights	200
Rearview Mirror	213
Dipstick (Engine Oil)	609
Display Audio	342
Display Audio System	249
Display Setup	266
Door Mirrors	214
Doors	169
Auto Door Locking	185
Auto Door Unlocking.....	185
Door and Boot Open Message.....	47
Keys	169
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside	182
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside	173
Lockout Prevention System	181
Drive Mode Switch	477

Driver Attention Monitor	138, 158
Driver Information Interface ...	130, 144, 147
Switching the Display	130, 147
Driving	455
Braking	570
Cruise Control.....	487
Shifting Position	470
Transmission	469
Turning on the Power.....	461
Dust and Pollen Filter	642

E

e:HEV	13
Elapsed Time	136, 156
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	
Indicator.....	114, 697
Emergency Power System Off	683
Emergency Power System On	682
Emergency Stop Signal	579
Emergency Towing	711
Engine	
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead.....	684
Number.....	718
Oil.....	607
Starting.....	461
Engine Coolant	
Overheating	689

Engine Oil.....	607
Adding	610
Checking	609
Low Oil Pressure Warning	691
Recommended Engine Oil	607
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System.....	697
EV Indicator.....	112
Exhaust Gas Hazard	
(Carbon Monoxide).....	103
Exterior Care (Cleaning)	647
Exterior Mirrors.....	214
F	
Features.....	245
Filter	
Dust and Pollen	642
Flat Tyre.....	656
Fluids	
Brake.....	616
Cooling System.....	611
Transmission.....	615
Windscreen Washer.....	617
FM/AM Radio	274, 365
Fog Lights.....	203
Folding Down the Rear Seats.....	220
Foot Brake.....	573
Front Airbags (SRS)	62
Front Seats	216
Adjusting	217
Front Wide View Camera	568

Fuel.....	34, 589
Average Fuel Economy	134, 153
Economy and CO ₂ Emissions	592
Gauge.....	126
Instant Fuel Economy	134, 153
Low Fuel Indicator	113
Range	134, 153
Recommendation	589
Refueling.....	589
Fuel Economy and CO ₂ Emissions	592
Fuel Fill Cap	34, 590
Fuel Fill Door	34, 590
Fuses.....	699
Inspecting and Changing.....	708
Locations.....	700, 704

G

Gauges	126
Glass (care).....	644, 648
Glove Box.....	228
Google built-in	392

H

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System.....	421
Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History.....	429
Automatic Transferring.....	430
Favourite Contacts	431
HFT Buttons	421

HFT Menus	423
HFT Status Display.....	422
Limitations for Manual Operation.....	422
Making a Call	433
Options During a Call.....	437
Phone Setup	426
Receiving a Call.....	436
Ringtone.....	430
Hands-Free Telephone System	321
Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls	331
Automatic Transferring	332
Favourite Contacts	333
HFT Buttons.....	321
HFT Menus	325
HFT Status Display.....	323
Limitations for Manual Operation.....	324
Making a Call	337
Options During a Call.....	340
Phone Settings Screen.....	327
Phone Setup	328
Receiving a Call.....	339
Ring Tone	332
Hazard Warning Button	6, 7
Head Restraints	223
Headlights	200
Aiming.....	618
Auto High-Beam	204
Dimming.....	200
Operating	200
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone).....	321, 421

High Beam Indicator	116
High Voltage Battery	500
High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge	127
Hill Start Assist System	466
Honda Sensing	35, 506
Hybrid Vehicle e:HEV	13

I

Identification Numbers	718
Engine, Motor and Transmission	718
Vehicle Identification	718
Illumination Control Dial	210, 211
Immobilizer System	188
Indicator	119
Indicators	106
12-Volt Battery Charging System	110
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow	120, 530
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval	121
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	113
Auto High-Beam	116
Automatic Brake Hold	110, 574
Automatic Brake Hold System	110, 574
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	122
CRUISE CONTROL	120, 489

CRUISE MAIN	120, 488
Deceleration Paddle Selector	111
ECON Mode	118, 477
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	114
EV	112
High Beam	116
Immobilizer System	119
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)	121
Lights On	116
Low Fuel	113
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System	115
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	110
NORMAL Mode	118, 477
Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber)	110, 696
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red)	108, 109, 695, 696
POWER SYSTEM/Power System	111
READY/Ready	112
Rear Fog Light	116
Road Departure Mitigation	122
Road Departure Mitigation System Auto OFF	122
Safety Support	123
Seat Belt Reminder	112
Security System Alarm	119
Shift Position	111
SPORT Mode	118, 477
Supplemental Restraint System	113
System Message	117

Transmission System	111
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning	116
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF	114, 494
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System	114, 493
Instant Fuel Economy	134, 153
Instrument Panel	105
Brightness Control	210, 211
Interior Convenience Items	226
Interior Lights	226
Interior Rearview Mirror	213
iPod	277, 370, 440

J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench)	660, 661, 677
Jacking Points	677
Jump Starting	684

K

Key Number Tag	171
Keyless Access System	173
Keyless Lockout Prevention	181
Keys	169
Lockout Prevention	181
Number Tag	171
Rear Door Won't Open	184
Remote Transmitter	179
Kickdown	469

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)	551
LaneWatch	501
Lead Car Departure Notification System	564
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto	453
Lights	200, 618
Auto High-Beam	204
Bulb Replacement	618
Daytime Running Lights	203
High Beam Indicator	116
Interior	226
Light Switches	200
Lights On Indicator	116
Load Limits	459
Locking/Unlocking	169
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking	185
Childproof Door Locks	184
From Inside	182
From Outside	173
Keys	169
Using a Key	180
Lockout Prevention System	181
Low Battery Charge	692
Low Fuel Indicator	113
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength	172
Low Oil Pressure Warning	691
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator	698
Lower Anchorages	91

Lubricant Specifications Chart	717
Luggage (Load Limit)	459
Luggage Floor Box	232

M

Maintenance	593
12-Volt Battery	634
Brake Fluid	616
Cleaning	644
Climate Control	642
Cooling System	611
Oil	609
Precautions	594
Remote Transmitter	639
Replacing Light Bulbs	618
Safety	595
Schedule	597
Transmission Fluid	615
Tyres	628
Under the Bonnet	604
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	110, 694
Map Lights	227
Maximum Permissible Weight	459, 716
Meters, Gauges	126
Mirrors	213
Adjusting	213
Door	214
Interior Rearview	213
Modifications (and Accessories)	650
MP3	280

Multi-View Rear Camera	587
------------------------------	-----

N

Navigation	137, 157
Numbers (Identification)	718

O

Oil (Engine)	607
Adding	610
Checking	609
Low Oil Pressure Warning	691
Recommended Engine Oil	607
Viscosity	607
On-Board Owner's Manual	349
Open the Owner's Manual	349
Open Source Licences	448, 732
Opening/Closing	
Bonnet	605
Boot	186
Power Windows	190
Sunroof	194
Other Interior Convenience Items	233
Outside Temperature Display	128
Overheating	689

P

Paddle Shifters	473
Parking Brake	570
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	110, 696
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	108, 109, 695, 696
Parking Sensor System	582
Passing Indicators	201
Petrol	34, 589
Economy and CO ₂ Emissions	592
Gauge	126
Information	589
Instant Fuel Economy	134, 153
Low Fuel Indicator	113
Refueling	589
Phone	136
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio	284, 375
Pop-up Hood System	72
Pop-up Hood System Care	74
POWER Button	196
Power Flow	300
Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge	132, 150
Power System Won't Start	678
POWER SYSTEM/Power System Indicator	111
Power Windows	190
POWER/CHARGE Gauge	126
Precautions While Driving	467

Pregnant Women	57
Profile Settings	400
Puncture (Tyre)	656

R

Radiator	612
Radio (AM/FM)	365
Radio (FM/AM)	274
Radio Data System (RDS)	368
Range	134, 153
RDS (Radio Data System)	368
READY/Ready Indicator	112
Rear Demister Button	209
Rear Seat Reminder	221
Rear Seats (Folding Down)	220
Rearview Mirror	213
Refueling	589
Fuel Gauge	126
Low Fuel Indicator	113
Petrol	589, 716
Regulations	719
Remote Transmitter	179
Replacement	
Battery	636, 639
Bulbs	618
Fuses	699, 700, 704
Tyre	630, 656
Wiper Blade Rubber	626
Resetting a Trip Meter	134, 153

Road Departure Mitigation	523
On and Off	526

S

Safe Driving	43
Safety Check	47
Safety Labels	104
Safety Message	0
Safety Support	142, 162
Seat Belts	48
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage	56
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners	53
Checking	58
Fastening	54
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt	96
Pregnant Women	57
Reminder	51
Warning Indicator	51, 112
Seats	216
Adjusting	216
Front Seats	216
Rear Seats	220
Security System	188
Security System Alarm Indicator	119
Selecting a Child Restraint System	81
Setting the Clock	168

Shift Lever	31, 470
Operation	31, 471
Releasing	687
Won't Move	687
Shift Position Indicator	111, 471
Shifting (Transmission)	470
Shoulder Anchorage	56
Side Airbags	65
Side Curtain Airbags	68
Spare Tyre	656
Spark Plugs	716
Specifications	716
Specified Fuel	589, 716
Speedometer	126
SRS Airbags (Airbags)	62
Steering Wheel	212
Adjusting	212
Stopping	580
Storage Items	228
Sunroof	194
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)	62
Switches	
(Around the Steering Wheel)	6, 7, 8, 196
System Message Indicator	117
System Updates	267, 362

T

TCU Open Source Licence	732
Temperature	
Outside Temperature Display	128
Temperature Sensor	128, 243
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre	665
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK)	665
Time (Setting)	168
Tools	654
Towing a Trailer	460
Towing Your Vehicle	
Emergency	711
Transmission	469, 470
Creeping	469
Fluid	615
Kickdown	469
Number	718
Operating the Shift Lever	470
Shift Lever Does Not Move	687
Shift Position Indicator	111, 471
Trip Meter	134, 153
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit)	665
Troubleshooting	653
Blown Fuse	699, 700, 704
Brake Pedal Vibrates	39
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door	40
Emergency Towing	711
Noise When Braking	41
Overheating	689
Power System Won't Start	678
Puncture/Flat Tyre	656, 665

Rear Door Won't Open	40, 184
Shift Lever Won't Move	687
Warning Indicators	106

Turn Signals

Indicators (Instrument Panel)	116
-------------------------------------	-----

Turning on the Power

Does Not Start	678
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead	684

Tyres

Air Pressure	717
Checking and Maintaining	628
Inspection	628
Puncture (Flat Tyre)	656, 665
Rotation	631
Spare Tyre	656
Tyre Chains	633
Wear Indicators	629
Winter	633

U

Unlocking the Doors	173
USB Flash Drives	280, 372, 441
USB Port(s)	247
User Information	396

V

Vanity Mirrors	11
Vehicle Identification Numbers	718
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)	493
OFF Button	494
Off Indicator	114
System Indicator	114
Viscosity (Oil)	607, 717
Voice Control Operation	271
Audio Commands	272
General Commands	272
List Commands	273
Navigation Commands	273
Phone Commands	272
Standard Commands	273
Voice Portal Screen	272
Voice Recognition	271
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)	493

W

Wallpaper	263, 358
Warning Indicator On/Blinking	691
Warning Labels	104
Warnings	143, 165
Watts	716
Wear Indicators (Tyre)	629
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle)	661
Wi-Fi Connection	287, 378

Window Washers	207
Adding/Refilling Fluid	617
Switch	207
Windows (Opening and Closing)	190
Windscreen	207
Cleaning	644, 648
Defrosting/Defogging	209, 241
Washer Fluid	617
Wiper Blades	626
Wipers and Washers	207
Winter Tyres	633
Tyre Chains	633
Wipers and Washers	207
Automatic Intermittent Wipers	208
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades	626
Wireless Charger	234
WMA	280
Worn Tyres	628

